THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

Adobe® Photoshop® Elements 3.0: Photographers' Guide

David D. Busch

Adobe® Photoshop® Elements 3.0: Photographers' Guide

David D. Busch

THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

© 2005 by Thomson Course Technology PTR. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system without written permission from Thomson Course Technology PTR, except for the inclusion of brief quotations in a review.

The Muska & Lipman and Thomson Course Technology PTR logo and related trade dress are trademarks of Thomson Course Technology PTR and may not be used without written permission.

SVP, Thomson Course Technology PTR: Andy Shafran
Publisher: Stacy L. Hiquet
Senior Marketing Manager: Sarah O'Donnell
Marketing Manager: Heather Hurley
Manager of Editorial Services: Heather Talbot
Senior Acquisitions Editor: Kevin Harreld
Senior Editor: Mark Garvey
Associate Marketing Manager: Kristin Eisenzopf
Marketing Coordinator: Jordan Casey
Project Editor: Jenny Davidson
Technical Reviewer: Michael D. Sullivan
Course Technology PTR Market Coordinator: Elizabeth Furbish
Interior Layout Tech: Bill Hartman
Cover Designer: Mike Tanamachi
Indexer: Kevin Broccoli
Proofreader: Sara Gullion

Adobe and Photoshop Elements are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Important: Thomson Course Technology PTR cannot provide software support. Please contact the appropriate software manufacturer's technical support line or Web site for assistance.

Thomson Course Technology PTR and the author have attempted throughout this book to distinguish proprietary trademarks from descriptive terms by following the capitalization style used by the manufacturer.

Information contained in this book has been obtained by Thomson Course Technology PTR from sources believed to be reliable. However, because of the possibility of human or mechanical error by our sources, Thomson Course Technology PTR, or others, the Publisher does not guarantee the accuracy, adequacy, or completeness of any information and is not responsible for any errors or omissions or the results obtained from use of such information. Readers should be particularly aware of the fact that the Internet is an ever-changing entity. Some facts may have changed since this book went to press.

Educational facilities, companies, and organizations interested in multiple copies or licensing of this book should contact the publisher for quantity discount information. Training manuals, CD-ROMs, and portions of this book are also available individually or can be tailored for specific needs.

ISBN: 1-59200-437-7

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 2004103479

Printed in the United States of America

04 05 06 07 08 BU 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

Thomson Course Technology PTR, a division of Thomson Course Technology
25 Thomson Place ■ Boston, MA 02210 ■ http://www.courseptr.com

For Cathy

Acknowledgments

Once again thanks to Andy Shafran, who realizes that a book about working with color images deserves nothing less than a full-color treatment, and who knows how to publish such a book at a price that everyone can afford. It's refreshing to work for a publisher who has *actually written* best-selling books on imaging, too. Also, thanks to senior editor Kevin Harreld, for valuable advice as the book progressed, as well as project editor, Jenny Davidson; technical editor Michael D. Sullivan; book/cover designer, Mike Tanamachi; interior designer, Bill Hartman; proofreader, Sara Gullion; and indexer, Kevin Broccoli.

Also thanks to my agent, Carole McClendon, who has the amazing ability to keep both publishers and authors happy.

About the Author

David D. Busch has been demystifying arcane computer and imaging technology since the early 1980s. However, he had a successful career as a professional photographer for a decade before he sat down at the keyboard of his first personal computer. Busch has worked as a newspaper photographer, done commercial studio and portrait work, shot weddings, and roved the United States and Europe as a photojournalist. His articles on photography and image editing have appeared in magazines as diverse as *Popular Photography and Imaging, Petersen's Photo-Graphic*, *The Rangefinder*, and *The Professional Photographer*, as well as computer magazines such as *Macworld* and *Computer Shopper.* He's currently evaluating digital cameras for CNet.

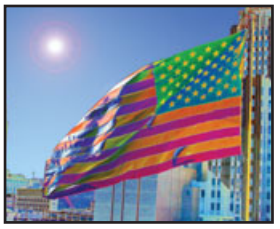
Busch has written more than 75 books since 1983, including the mega-bestsellers *Digital Photography All-In-One Desk Reference for Dummies* and *The Hewlett-Packard Scanner Handbook*. Other recent books include *Digital Photography Solutions, Mastering Digital SLR Photography,* and *Mastering Digital Scanning with Slides, Film, and Transparencies*, all from Course Technology.

He earned top category honors in the Computer Press Awards the first two years they were given (for *Sorry About The Explosion*, Prentice-Hall; and *Secrets of MacWrite, MacPaint and MacDraw*, Little, Brown), and later served as Master of Ceremonies for the awards.

Contents

Preface ix

Introduction x



1 **Adobe Photoshop Elements and Photography from 50,000 Feet** 1

Images in the Digital Domain 2
Transferring Skills 7
Next Up 13

2 **Camera and Lens Effects in Photoshop Elements** 15

Lens Effects 16
Motion Blur 41
Selective Focus 44
Photoshop Elements Photo Filters 47
Next Up 49

3 **Darkroom Techniques with Photoshop Elements** 51

Manipulating Digital Negatives 52
Film Development Techniques 56
Printing Techniques 70
Automatically Crop and Straighten Photos 76
Next Up 77

4 **Secrets of Retouching** 79

Retouching, the Old Way 80
Retouching, the New Way 81
Tackling a Retouching Project 85
Repairing Images with the Healing Brush 96
Canceling Red Eyes 99
Next Up 99

5 **Compositing in Elements 3.0** 101

Your Compositing Toolkit 102
Selection Refresher Course 104
Other Selection Tools 109
Creating a Simple Composite 111
Stitching Two Photos Together 114
Merging Photos the Easy Way 121
Creating a Fantasy Landscape 123
Compositing Close Up 130
Kitten on a Desktop 132
Compositing Possibilities 136
Combining Compositing and Retouching 136
Next Up 139

6 **Correcting Your Colors** 141

Wonderful World of Color 142
Capturing Color Images 150
Color Calibration and Gamma Curves 152
Color Correction 153
Color Correction Made Easy 158
Calibrating Your Monitor 166
Next Up 169

7 **Beyond Black and White** 171

Why Black and White? 171
Your Best Bet for Black and White 175
Converting Color to Black and White 176
Next Up 185

8 **Using Photoshop Elements' Filters** 187

What Are Filters? 187
What Kinds of Filters Are Available? 191
Using Filters 192
Photoshop Elements' Filter Gallery 194
Reproducing Photographic Filters in Photoshop Elements 200
Modifying Images with Photoshop Elements' Filters 206
Next Up 225

9 **Hardcopies Made Easy** 227

Why Prints? 227
Color Prints as Proofs 229
Your Output Options 231
Using Professional Services 240
Getting Set Up 242
A Typical Print Session 242
Printing Multiple Photos with Photoshop Elements 250
Tips for Getting the Best Digital Prints 252
Printers and Digital Cameras 253
Next Up 254

A **Illustrated Glossary** 255

B **What's New in Elements 3.0** 279

I **Index** 283

Preface

If you're serious about photography, you should be serious about Photoshop Elements 3.0, the photo enthusiast's best friend. It doesn't matter whether you're a casual snapshooter or a dedicated photo buff, the latest version of Elements has exciting new features that you'll want to master. Plus, you'll find that approaching Photoshop Elements from a photographer's perspective can put you on the fast track to mastering all the tools Adobe puts at your disposal.

Thinking about this image editor as an extraordinary photography tool can also work for you even if your interest in photography is still on a more casual level. If you specialize in computer technology, art, or graphics, you will find that learning about the imaging techniques that form the basis for each of Elements' capabilities can help you, too. A deeper understanding of photography will help you use the image editor better, while improving those latent photographic skills you didn't know you had. Anyone who fine-tunes and manipulates photos will find that this book makes them a more proficient, well-rounded image worker.

If you feel there isn't enough photography in the average image-editing book, and there isn't enough image editing in the average photography book, the book you're looking for is right in your hands. Whether you're a snap-shooting tyro or an experienced photographer moving into the digital realm, you'll find the knowledge you need here.

Introduction

There's a reason why digital camera icons abound in the splash screens and introductory views of the brand new Photoshop Elements 3.0. Digital photography and Elements were made for each other. However, whether you're using a digital pixel-grabber or a conventional film camera, Adobe's revamped easy-to-use image editor has the tools you need to fine-tune your photos, correct errors in exposure, lighting, or color balance, and go beyond your basic picture to create triumphant prize-winning photographs from shoebox rejects.

Adobe Photoshop Elements 3.0: Photographers' Guide is aimed squarely at those who want to use photography creatively to produce compelling images and want to master all the tools available to them. The emphasis here is on both traditional and leading-edge photographic techniques and how to reproduce or enhance them in Photoshop.

You don't need to be an ace photographer or image-editing expert to create these eye-catching effects. All you need is this straight-forward, "all meat" book that shows you how to use Elements to enhance your images with the kinds of effects you admire. Did you know that with using easy-to-master Photoshop Elements tools you could:

- Work with Photoshop Elements' new Panorama stitching features?
- Match colors between shots taken under wildly different lighting conditions?
- Fix perspective in architectural photos even if you don't own an expensive perspective control lens?
- Add zoom lens blur effects without using a zoom lens?
- Move a storm-ravaged seashore 500 miles inland to the foothills of a mountain range?
- Excise your obnoxious ex-relative from a family reunion photo without resorting to violence?
- Change daylight scenes into moody dusk or ruddy dawn pictures?
- Morph images to blend or distort them?
- Seamlessly extract images from their backgrounds?

This book cuts right to the heart of all of the most misunderstood—but easily applied—tools in the latest version of Elements, examined from a photographer's perspective. It bristles with surprisingly effective examples, simple to follow techniques, and tricks that serve as a jumping-off point to spark your own creativity into action.

While other Elements-oriented "photography" books give lip service to true photography, this book examines each topic from every photographic angle. Which effects are best achieved with a film or digital camera? Which effects are best applied in Elements? How can in-camera techniques and Photoshop Elements augment and enhance each other?

Just browsing through the book can lead you to a half-dozen stunning effects you can re-create in five minutes or less and a wealth of photographic techniques you can reproduce with Photoshop. Invest a few hours, and you'll be able to:

- Process your digital camera's RAW files with Photoshop Elements' new Camera RAW plug-in.
- Even if you don't know color correction or gamma correction from brightness-contrast controls, and think a histogram is a cold remedy, Photoshop has several different ways to bring off-color or dull originals to blazing life, ready for use in Web pages and other applications.
- Build composites that fool the eye or which form gateways to fantasy worlds. Blend multiple images to create a new one in which all the elements work in perfect harmony to create that photo you never could catch with your camera.
- Duplicate darkroom effects not easily accessible to darkroom-challenged digital photographers.

Why This Book?

Because Photoshop Elements is the most popular "non-professional" image editor, there are dozens of books on how to use it. There are already three or four dozen books on digital photography and hundreds more on conventional photography. Yet, oddly enough, only a handful of these combine image editing and photography in any meaningful way. One or two are written for professional photographers and contain little that the average picture taker can use or understand. A few more are dumbed-down, include lots of pretty pictures, but contain techniques that you'll outgrow quickly. Others are weird hybrids that tell you more than you wanted to know about camera technology, CCD, CMOS, and CIS image sensors, how cameras work, the history of digital photography, and *less* than you wanted to know about image editing. I suspect you don't need any convincing that photography is a great idea or detailed comparisons of all the other image editors on the market. Instead, you want to know how photography and Photoshop Elements can work together to give you great pictures that will astound your friends and astonish your colleagues.

I wrote this book for camera buffs, both digital and conventional, and business people who want to go beyond point-and-click snapshooting and explore the world of photography to enrich their lives or do their jobs better. If you've learned most of your camera's basic features and now wonder what you can do with them, this is your dream guide to pixel proficiency. If you fall into one of the following categories, you need this book:

- Individuals who want to get better pictures, or perhaps transform their growing interest in photography into a full-fledged hobby or artistic outlet using Photoshop Elements as a catalyst.
- Those who want to produce more professional-looking images for their personal or business Web site.

- Small business owners with more advanced graphics capabilities, who want to use photography and Photoshop Elements to document or promote their business.
- Corporate workers who may or may not have photographic skills in their job descriptions, but who work regularly with graphics and need to learn how to use digital images for reports, presentations, or other applications.
- Professional Webmasters with strong skills in programming (including Java, JavaScript, HTML, Perl, and so on) but little background in photography.
- Graphic artists and others who may already be adept in image editing, but who want to learn more about Photoshop Elements and its relationship with digital and conventional photography.
- Trainers who need a non-threatening textbook for digital photography classes.

Who Am I?

With a few exceptions, image editing books aren't purchased because the author is famous or is pictured in an attractive photo on the cover. You may have picked this book off the shelf because you found some of the gorgeous, meaty books from Course Technology useful in the past and were looking for more of the same. Then, like most Photoshop Elements book buyers, you flipped through the pages looking for cool pictures or interesting techniques. If I've captured your interest enough to have you reading this far, you probably don't need my life story at this point. However, a little background might be useful to help you understand exactly where this book is coming from.

Before I was seduced by the dark side of technology, I was a professional photographer. I've made my living as a sports photographer for an Ohio newspaper and an upstate New York college; I've operated my own commercial studio and photo lab; and served as photo-posing instructor for a modeling agency. People have actually paid me to shoot their weddings and immortalize them with portraits. I even wrote several thousand articles on photography as a PR consultant for a large Rochester, N.Y., company you may have heard of. Since 1980, I've successfully combined my interests in photography and computers to an alarming degree, bringing forth a few thousand articles, eight books on scanners, and four that encompass photography.

In practice, this means that, like you, I love photography for its own joys, and view technology as just another tool to help me get the images I want to produce. It also means that, like you, when I peer through the viewfinder, I sometimes forget everything I know, take a real clunker of a picture, and turn to Photoshop Elements to help me out of the hole I dug. My only real advantage is that I can usually offer quite detailed technical explanations of what I did wrong and offer a convincing, if bogus explanation of how I intentionally bent technology to my will to correct the error.

You can learn from my mistakes and benefit from what experience I have, so your picture-taking and image editing can travel a more comfortable gain-without-pain route than I took.

How to Use This Book

I'm not going to weigh you down with sage advice about reading this book from front to back, reviewing portions until you understand what I'm trying to say, or remembering to hunt for dozens of icons lodged in the margins that point out the only portions actually worth reading. I don't care if you go through and read just the chapters that interest you, or scan only the odd-numbered pages, as long as you get busy having fun with your camera and Elements. Each of the chapters should stand alone sufficiently well that you can read them in any order. A book that needs its own instruction manual to use hasn't done its job.

I've tried to make your job easier by relegating all the boring parts to the bit-bin long before this book hit the printing press. All you need is the text, some photographs in digital form, Photoshop Elements 3.0, and access to the files used for the exercises in this book. Here's a summary:

- You'll need a Windows PC or Macintosh OS system with enough RAM to run Photoshop Elements comfortably (that is, from 256 MB to a gazillion MB of RAM).
- To ease the learning process, you'll want to work with Photoshop Elements 3.0. Earlier versions can also be used with this book, except, of course, for the sections dealing with new or enhanced features like the Photo Filter and Smart Fix capabilities. However, Adobe has changed or moved a few of the menu items, modified some dialog boxes, and changed some terminology. If you're using Photoshop Elements 2.0, nearly everything applies, but when you see how some of the improvements, like the enhanced Red Eye tool, work you'll probably want to upgrade.
- You'll need digital photos. If you're shooting on film, you or your photolab will need to convert your pictures to pixels before you can use them with Photoshop Elements. It doesn't matter whether you scan the pictures, receive them on a Photo CD, or originate the pictures electronically with a digital camera, Elements will work with them just fine.
- Access to the book's images are on the Web site at: **http://www.courseptr.com**. You can substitute your own photos, of course, but if you want to closely duplicate my work, you'll need to use the same photos I worked with.

Your Next Stop

While I'm not your one-stop source for toll-free technical support, I'm always glad to answer reader questions that relate to this book. Sometimes I can get you pointed in the right direction to resolve peripheral queries I can't answer. You can write to me at *photoguru@dbusch.com*. You'll also find more information at my Web site at **http://www.dbusch.com**. Should you discover the one or two typos I've planted in this book to test your reading comprehension, I'll erect an errata page on the Web site, as well, along with kudos to readers who report anything that, on first glance, might appear to be a goof.

A final warning: I first came to national attention for a book called *Sorry About the Explosion!* This book earned the first (and only) Computer Press Association award presented to a book of computer humor. Since then, my rise from oblivion to obscurity has been truly meteoric—a big

flash, followed by a fiery swan dive into the horizon. So, each of my books also includes a sprinkling of flippancy scattered among all the dry, factual stuff. You aren't required to actually be amused, and you can consider yourself duly cautioned.

Chapter Outline

This section is a brief outline of the chapters in this book. If you want to know exactly where to find a topic that interests you, consult the table of contents or index.

Chapter 1: Adobe Photoshop Elements and Photography from 50,000 Feet
This chapter provides an overview of the origin of Photoshop Elements, its evolution, and an overview of the basic skills that photographers can expect to transfer directly to their Photoshop Elements experience. These include knowledge of composition, use of lenses, selective focus, film choice, and other valuable skills that serve Photoshop Elements users well.

Chapter 2: Camera and Lens Effects in Photoshop Elements
Here, you'll learn how to duplicate creative traditional effects like perspective control, zoom, lens flare, motion blur, and selective focus using Photoshop Elements' built-in tools. These techniques are great to have on hand when you just don't happen to remember to take the exact lens or other accessory you really need on a photo shoot.

Chapter 3: Darkroom Techniques with Photoshop Elements
Those who remember fondly the acid-tinged, humid air of the photo darkroom will love this chapter's tips for reproducing solarization, reticulation, push-processing, and dodging/burning techniques with Photoshop Elements. Best of all, you won't need to ruin expensive film experimenting!

Chapter 4: Secrets of Retouching
This chapter reveals the most valuable secret of retouching: how to avoid the need for it in the first place. However, if you must remove the dust, you'll also find information on how to enhance and repair photos using advanced retouching techniques.

Chapter 5: Compositing in Elements 3.0
Although each chapter explains how to use the Photoshop Elements tools needed for a task, this one delves deeply into the fine art of making selections and extracting images from their backgrounds. You'll also discover how to merge objects smoothly and match lighting, texture, colors, scale, and other factors that scream FAKE when they aren't considered.

Chapter 6: Correcting Your Colors
Color can make or break an image. This chapter offers four ways of adjusting color in terms photographers will understand immediately. If you've ever slipped a CC 10 Cyan filter into a filter pack, or stocked your camera bag with an 85B or 80A conversion filter, you'll appreciate the advice here. However, even if your color correction experience extends no further than using the white-balance control on your digital camera, this chapter has everything you need to correct your colors in Photoshop Elements.

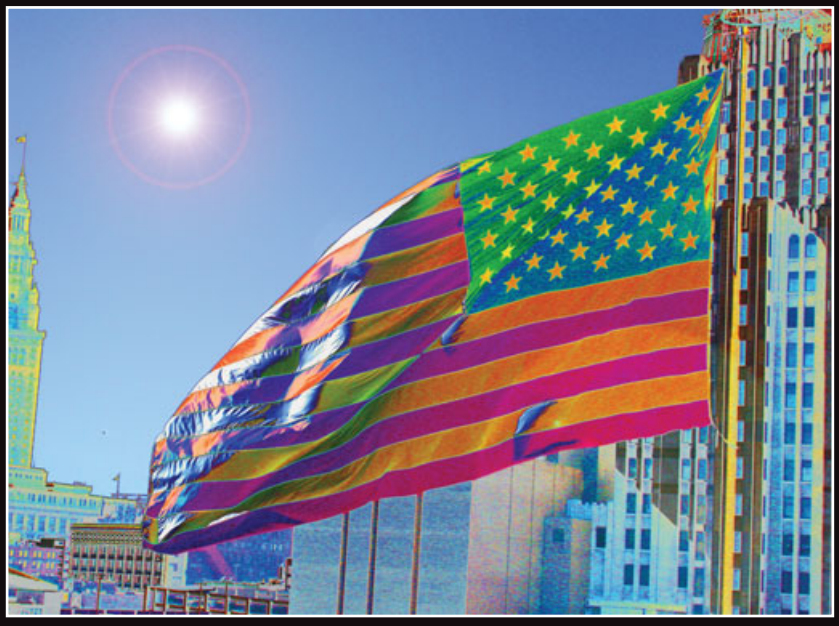
Chapter 7: Beyond Black and White
Photoshop Elements includes a simple command that can magically transform a great color picture into a terrible grayscale image. You'll learn why the most common color-to-black-and-white travesties happen, and how to avoid them.

Chapter 8: Using Photoshop Elements' Filters
This chapter explains how to get the most from Photoshop Elements' built-in filters, with an emphasis on reproducing traditional camera effects, such as diffusion, cross-screen filters, and polarizers. Then, you'll get a glimpse of how Photoshop can transcend conventional photography with some amazing new capabilities.

Chapter 9: Hardcopies Made Easy
You'll find lots of useful information in this chapter that relates traditional printing of film images onto photosensitive paper with the modern digital printing alternatives. Learn about your options, calculate the maximum print size you can expect from a given digital camera resolution, and glean some tips for getting the absolute best digital prints.

Appendix A: Illustrated Glossary
This illustrated compendium of all the jargon words you'll encounter in this book (and a bunch of them you'll run across in the real world) provides a quick reference guide to photography, digital imaging, and Adobe terminology.

Appendix B: What's New in Elements 3.0
This appendix will introduce some of the new features found in Elements 3.0.



1

Adobe Photoshop Elements and Photography from 50,000 Feet

Photoshop Elements 3.0 and digital photography were made for each other. Unlike its "big brother," Photoshop CS, Elements is as easy to use as the average digital camera. It's a powerful image editor that can do just about anything you can imagine, but it has automated modes, like those found in the Quick Fix panel, that make all the changes and settings for you, much like the program and scene modes in digital shooters. Even with all this automation, though, you can tweak your pictures to customize your images so they look exactly as you want them to appear.

First introduced in April, 2001, Elements has always been a great image-editing program—powerful, yet simple to learn, and the new Version 3.0 is even better from the photographer's viewpoint. There's a slick new interface with a dockable tool palette, integrated photo browsing that includes all the features of Adobe Photoshop Album, and fully automatic adjustments for contrast, color, lighting, and many other aspects of your digital pictures.

Many of the improvements in Elements 3.0 are geared specifically for photographers. For example, the application now supports the RAW camera files that some of the more sophisticated digital cameras can produce. Working with RAW files lets you manipulate the unprocessed digital image in Elements, before any of the corrections that are normally applied

in the camera are made. There's also a new "auto divide" feature, which makes it easy to scan a group of pictures at once, and lets Elements separate the individual photos into separate files, and then crop and straighten them automatically.

Even a cursory examination of its feature set reveals that Elements can do just about *anything* you need to do with images. There are lots of capabilities, and many different things to master. Your advantage as a photographer is that you already have an understanding of much of the underlying techniques that make Photoshop Elements what it is. You don't have to rediscover the wheel. In fact, if you're a halfway serious photographer and more than a casual image manipulator, you're ready to shift into overdrive with this book.

This brief chapter, a view of Photoshop Elements, its predecessors, and photography from 50,000 feet, provides an overview that's oriented, like the rest of this book, from a photographer's perspective. You'll learn the evolution of Adobe image editors that resulted in Elements, a program created expressly to meet *your* needs. You'll also discover how you can use what you *already* know to make this application work for you right from the start.

Images in the Digital Domain

Certainly, you can use nothing but Elements' automated features and end up with fine-looking digital photos. But there's so much power in Photoshop Elements that if you're a photographer and don't use all the tools it has to offer, you're putting a crimp in your creativity, and seriously restricting your flexibility. For the devoted photographer, not using Elements' extra features is like limiting yourself to a single zoom setting, or using your digital camera exclusively in fully automatic mode.

Certainly, some incredible images have been created by photographers who work under mind-boggling limitations (a few ingenious pictures taken with pin-hole cameras come to mind). For example, one of the photos shown in Figure 1.1 was taken with a $3,000 "professional" camera, using studio lighting equipment priced at another grand or two. The other photo was taken with a $50 point-and-shoot camera and a flashlight.

Even with inevitable quality loss that comes with offset printing, I'll bet you can tell the difference between the two. However, you will agree that even the cheapie photo is acceptable for many applications, such as, perhaps, display on a Web site. Have I discovered a way to save thousands of dollars? Or have I shown that trying to get by using the bare minimum tools is nothing more than an easy way to impose limitations on your creativity?

Unless you enjoy hobbling yourself as a creative constraint (that's a valid exercise, and one assigned in many photo schools), I'd wager that you'll want to use all the photographic tools at your disposal. Elements is one of them. To my mind, the whole Adobe collection of image editors, from Photoshop Elements to Photoshop CS, are the most important innovation in photography since, say, the zoom lens or through-the-lens viewing, or, in the computer age, the solid-state sensor.

Figure 1.1 *One of these photos was taken with $3,000 "pro" camera, the other with a cheap point-and-shoot camera. Which setup would you rather use?*

The best part about adding this image editor to your repertoire is that many of the skills you acquired working behind the viewfinder are directly transferable to Photoshop Elements. If you have darkroom skills that stood you in good stead before the current transition to digital photograph, so much the better. I'll list some of these valuable skills later in this chapter.

Photographers who adopt digital imaging and Photoshop Elements as their primary tools have a commanding advantage over those who approach Adobe's popular image editor from the computer or traditional art realms. Terms like *lens flare*, *motion blur*, and *grain* are familiar to you. If you are a more advanced photographer, you probably understand techniques like *solarization*, or perhaps even graphic reproduction concepts like *halftones*, *mezzotints*, or *unsharp masking*. Those whose perspective is more pixel- than photography-oriented must learn these terms the hard way.

To see what I mean, examine Figure 1.2. Many photographers will recognize the traditional photographic effects used to create that image. (Bear with me for a moment if you are not steeped in photographic technical minutiae.) The "sun" image appears to have a halo caused by lens flare with the telephoto or zoom lens used to take the picture. The odd flag colors could be produced by partially exposing transparency film during development, a technique which reverses some colors to produce an effect called solarization. The rich colors were a direct result of the photographer's choice of a film stock known for vivid colors. And, of course, the flag and buildings appear compressed in space because that's what telephoto lenses do.

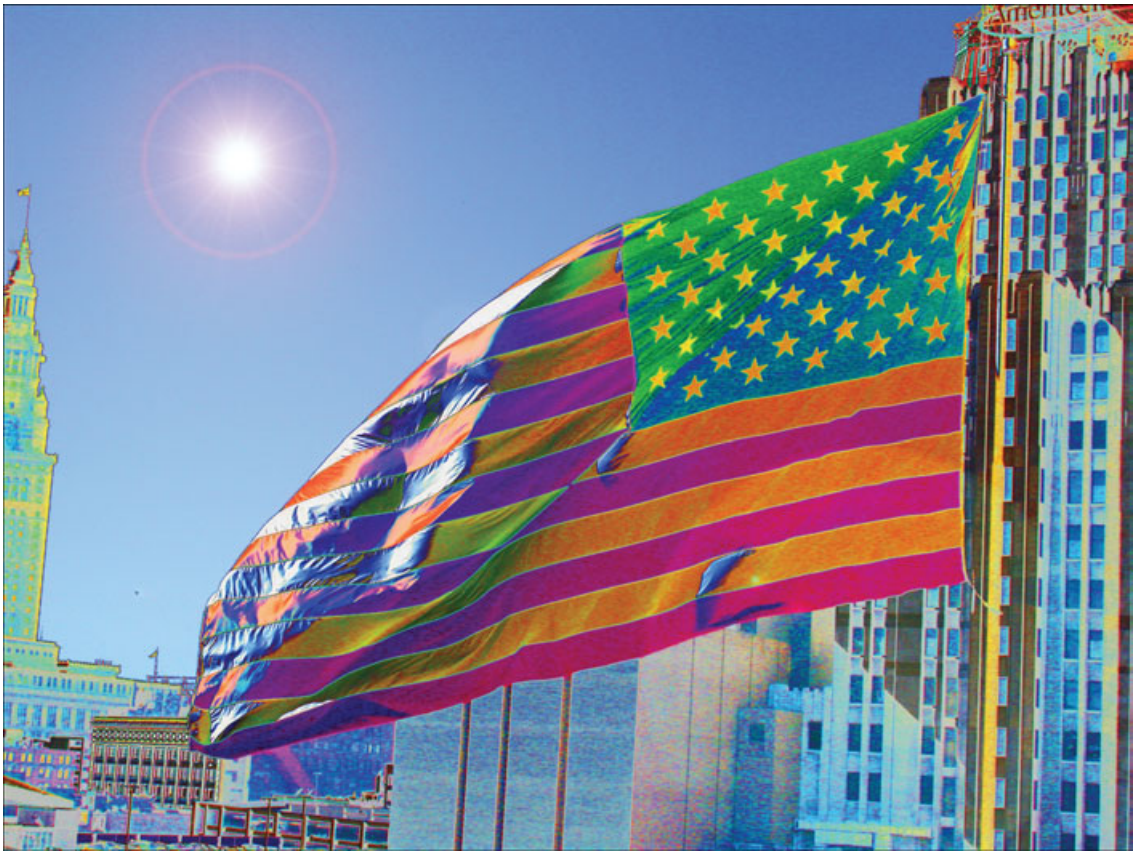


Figure 1.2 *Can you find all the traditional photographic techniques used to produce this picture?*

The advantage photographers have is that they've seen all these techniques before, and have probably used them. The ability to reproduce every one of these effects within Elements is a powerful additional tool. In truth, Figure 1.2 never saw a piece of film. It was taken with a digital camera using the "normal" (non-telephoto/non-wide-angle) zoom setting, cropped tightly in Elements to simulate a telephoto picture, and then a "sun" added, and flag colors manipulated to create the image you see here.

Don't panic if your photographic interests don't run to camera techniques or darkroom magic. Even if your photography skills emphasize other worthy areas of expertise, such as composition or the mechanics of camera operation, you'll still find Elements a comfortable fit with what you already know, and a great tool for applying what you plan to learn in the future. From its earliest beginnings, Adobe's image editors were modeled on photographic concepts. Many features incorporated into the latest version of Elements have their roots in photography, such as the new Lens Blur effect, the seamless panorama photos you can achieve by stitching photos together, and various filter effects that mimic standard photographic filters.

Evolution or Revolution?

Although Photoshop Elements 1.0 wasn't introduced until 2001, its origins go back to the very beginnings of image editing as we know it. Like photography itself, the Photoshop family of image editors was born in a dark room. Thomas and John Knoll, sons of an Ann Arbor, Michigan college professor, worked in their photo enthusiast father's basement darkroom and grew to love the Apple computer he brought home for research projects.

By the mid 1980s, Thomas and John were working with imaging on a professional basis. Thomas was doing Ph.D work in digital image processing, and John was approaching a career at Industrial Light and Magic, the motion picture computer graphics firm in California. One big problem the brothers saw, was that the most advanced graphics-oriented consumer and business personal computer of the time—the Macintosh—couldn't manipulate full-color images properly.

They set out to fix that. The product that was to become Elements' big brother, Photoshop, went through various incarnations, and a few copies of an application by that name were actually distributed by a company called BarneyScan Corporation with their slide scanner. Finally, the Knolls licensed their product to Adobe Systems, Inc., then known primarily for its PostScript and font technology, and a drawing program called Adobe Illustrator. Photoshop 1.0 was released to the world in January, 1990.

You can see the original tool palette of Photoshop 1.0 along side its great-great-great grandchild, Photoshop Elements' counterpart in Figure 1.3. Although the icons have been moved around or combined (and the latest Mac OS has added a 3D look), it's amazing how little has changed. The 24 tools in the original palette are all still in use today. Nine of the tools shown in the Photoshop 1.0 palette have been nested together under five multi-purpose icons, the Airbrush has become a checkbox on the Options toolbar, and a few, such as the Type and Brush tools, have been transmogrified so much they have little in common with their ancestors. Photoshop Elements 3.0 even lets you dock the palette at the left side of the window, so the tools are arranged in a handy, single column. The latest version of Photoshop CS doesn't even have that feature!

Figure 1.3 *Photoshop's original tool palette (left) and its latest Elements version (right) share more features than you might expect.*

The original Photoshop wasn't the first image editor for the Macintosh by any means, and actually drew a great deal on the concepts and interface popularized by Apple's own MacPaint as early as 1984. There were programs with names like PixelPaint, ImageStudio, and SuperPaint, and, notably, Silicon Beach's Digital Darkroom. But the precocious Photoshop was the first program to really grab the imagination of photographers and the publications that employed them.

Happily, reasonably priced color scanners became available (earlier color scanners could cost up to a million dollars each, making them practical only for the largest newspapers and magazines). Scanners supplied Photoshop with ample fodder for its magic, and vast numbers of publications adopted Macs and Elements as key tools within a very short period of time. By then, the key battles in the imaging war were over and Photoshop was all but crowned the victor.

Adobe augmented its darkroom paradigm with some other powerful advantages. The first of these was a program interface that made it possible to seamlessly incorporate add-on mini-programs called plug-ins, developed by Adobe and third-party developers. Although plug-ins first appeared in Digital Darkroom, Photoshop's already commanding lead in the image-editing market made the ability to use *Photoshop compatible plug-ins* a must-have feature for competing products of the time, such as PixelPaint and Fractal Design Painter.

The final battle was won in April, 1993 when Adobe released a version of Photoshop 2.5 for Microsoft Windows 3.x. There had been earlier image editors for PC-compatibles that (barely) worked under Windows, or which used proprietary DOS-based interfaces. But once Photoshop became a cross-platform tool available to both the Macs that were dominant in the graphics and photographic industries, as well as to die-hards in the Windows realm, there was really almost no reason to use anything else for sophisticated image-editing tasks.

The only really valid reason for choosing another image editor was cost or the need to avoid a steep learning curve. As the professional and advanced amateur image editor of choice, Photoshop has been priced at $600 or more, and the time required to learn to use it is almost legendary. For the last decade or more, those who owned color scanners who weren't graphics professionals have wanted a less expensive, less complex program to use. In the past few years, digital camera buyers have had the same yearning. Not everyone who uses a scanner or digital camera needs a $600 image-editing program (although the actual cost can be much lower if you upgrade from another application).

So, Adobe has provided a series of low-cost, reduced learn-up image editors available for $99 or less, and often bundled with scanners and cameras at no extra cost to the hardware purchaser. A program called Photoshop LE (for Limited Edition) has served that function in several different incarnations. Photoshop LE was often considered just a thinly-disguised "last year's" version of Photoshop, with a few features (such as the History palette's multiple Undo capabilities, or the Action palette's macro features) disabled. Co-existing with Photoshop LE was Adobe PhotoDeluxe, first introduced in 1996, with an even simpler interface and even more restricted capabilities. PhotoDeluxe was considered a beginner program, with training wheels, for those who wanted to edit some images, but didn't want to become involved with learning how to use a complicated program. Many of its capabilities were point-and-click automated features, with few options.

Photoshop Elements combined the best features of Photoshop LE and PhotoDeluxe, offering serious image workers a program built on the flagship Photoshop's underpinnings, but with easier operation and a higher degree of automation. Elements has been able to do many of the things possible with the full version of Photoshop, and a few things, such as easy red-eye reduction, that Photoshop could not. Some features, such as the File Browser introduced with

Elements 2.0 in August, 2002, and Version 3.0's dockable tool palette, appeared in Photoshop Elements first before they found their way into Photoshop itself.

Today, Photoshop Elements is the most logical toolkit for the beginning or intermediate photographer's foray into the digital darkroom. Indeed, the term *digital darkroom* has become a generic description. You'll find it used in Web sites, books, and magazine articles by pixel pushers who've never set foot in an actual darkroom. (Alas!) And, as an interesting footnote, the rights to the Digital Darkroom trademark were purchased by MicroFrontier after Silicon Beach was purchased by Aldus Corporation, which in turn, ironically, was bought out by Adobe.

Each new version of Elements has improved on the last, offering new capabilities. The best news is that, unlike an Office suite that shall remain nameless, Photoshop Elements has generally escaped "feature bloat," which has been described as features few need and which are added purely to justify an upgrade. You may not need all of Elements' features now, but, as you grow in experience and skills, you'll find that those "mystery" features may prove to be lifesavers for you farther down the road. As sophisticated as it has become, there's very little fat in Photoshop Elements. Interestingly enough, Elements 3.0 is the first version that offers slightly different versions for Windows and Macintosh computers. Despite the popularity of the Mac for graphics, Adobe has decided that the digital camera owners who will be using Elements will be predominantly Windows users, so the Windows version has a few features the Mac release lacks.

Transferring Skills

Whether you acquired your photographic skills working with film cameras, or entirely from shooting digital pictures, they can be transferred to Elements in a variety of ways, as befits the multifaceted nature of photography itself. Photography has always been part art, part craft, and part technology. Some of the earliest photographers were originally trained as artists, and used their cameras to produce landscapes, portraits, and other works from a classical artistic perspective.

Modest skills as an artisan were also helpful, for many of the earliest cameras were hand-built by the photographers themselves. Even as mass produced cameras became available, photographers continued to craft their own custom-built devices and accessories. Today, you'll still find that some of the coolest gadgets for photography are home-brewed contraptions. (You'll find a few of them as special projects in my book *Mastering Digital Photography*, from Muska & Lipman/Course Technology.)

Early photographers also had to be something of a scientist, as the first photographers experimented with various processes for coating and sensitizing plates and film, exposing images by the illumination from electrical sparks. The first-ever photograph, made by Nicéphore Niépce in the early 19th century, was created on a piece of pewter coated with what was, for all intents and purposes, asphalt. As late as the mid 20th century, serious photographers were still dabbling in photographic chemistry as a way to increase the sensitivity and improve the image quality of their films through refined darkroom technology. Now that many chemical tricks can be reproduced digitally, photo alchemy has become the exception rather than the rule.

In the 21st century, acquiring the skills a photographer needs is not as difficult as in the 19th century, although a basic familiarity with computer technology has become something of a prerequisite for using microprocessor-driven digital and conventional film cameras. Digital photography has made picture taking easier in many ways, but opened new realms of expertise for photographers who choose to pursue them. But, while photography has become more automated, don't underestimate the wealth of knowledge and skills you've picked up. A great deal of that expertise is easily transferable to Elements. The things you already know that will stand you in good stead when you advance to computer-enhanced photo manipulation in Photoshop Elements fall into 10 broad categories. I'll run through them quickly in the next sections.

Basic Composition

Compositional skills, so necessary for lining up exactly the right shot in the camera, are just as important when you're composing images in Elements. Indeed, Elements lets you repair compositional errors that escaped your notice when you snapped the original picture. If you want your subjects in a group shot to squeeze together for a tighter composition, Elements lets you rearrange your subjects after the fact. The ability to recognize good composition and put it into practice with Elements is an invaluable skill that not all image-editing tyros possess.

Lens Selection

The choice of a particular lens or zoom setting can be an important part of the creative process. Telephoto settings compress the apparent distance between objects, whereas wide angles expand it. Faces can appear to be broader or narrower, depending on lens selection. If you understand these concepts, you'll find you can apply them using Elements' capabilities, too.

Selective Focus

Choosing which objects in an image are in focus, and which are not, is a great creative tool. With a conventional or digital camera, you need to make the decision at the time you take the photo. To complicate things, digital cameras often make *everything* reasonably sharp regardless of what lens settings you use. With Elements, selective focus is not only easier to apply, but can be used in a much more precise, repeatable, and easily modified way. Figure 1.4 shows a close-up photo, at top, in which the background is fairly blurry but still obtrusive. The version on the bottom was processed in Elements to create an even blurrier, darker background that shows off the flower more dramatically.

Choosing the Right Film

Selecting the right film can be as important as choosing an appropriate lens. Some films are known for their bright, vibrant colors. Others are considered more accurate or capable of better reproducing flesh tones. Some films are sharper or have finer grain. Others are more sensitive to light and make it possible to shoot pictures in near darkness, or when very short shutter speeds are needed to freeze action. Your digital camera, too, probably provides the equivalent of film choice in the ISO (sensitivity) options, or various sharpness and color saturation settings. Elements can help when you choose the wrong film, or don't set your digital camera's controls

Figure 1.4 *Elements can make techniques like selective focus more precise and easier to apply.*

exactly right. Your image editor will let you boost colors or tone them down, disguise noisy grain or emphasize it, and compensate for images exposed under less than ideal lighting.

Darkroom Techniques

There's a reason why earlier programs had names like Digital Darkroom. The number of darkroom techniques that have been directly transferred to Elements is enormous. From the Dodging and Toning tools to all the tremendous range of masking techniques, dozens of Elements capabilities have direct counterparts in the darkroom. If you've used a darkroom, you'll be right at home in Elements, but even if you haven't dipped your fingers into stopbath, you'll find this image editor performs its manipulations in a logical, photography-oriented way.

Retouching

When I started in photography, retouchers were true artists who worked directly on film negatives, transparencies, or prints with brush and pigment. Elements enables those with artistic sentiments who lack an artist's physical skills to retouch images in creatively satisfying ways. You can remove or disguise blemishes, touch up dust spots, repair scratches, and perform many tasks that were once totally within the purview of the retouching artist.

Compositing

Would you like to transplant the Great Pyramid of Egypt to downtown Paris? Or perhaps you're just interested in removing your ex-brother-in-law from a family photo. Photographic masters of the past spent hours figuring ways to combine images in the camera, or spent days sandwiching negatives or transparencies, cutting film or prints to pieces, or using other tedious tasks to build great images from multiple originals. Compositing still requires skill with Elements, but you can do things in a few hours that were virtually impossible to achieve only 20 years ago. The scene shown in Figure 1.5 doesn't exist in the real world, but it took me only five minutes to fake it using Elements, using the original photos shown in Figure 1.6.

Figure 1.5 *It took only five minutes to create this composite in Elements.*

Figure 1.6 *These are the original photos used to produce the composite shown in Figure 1.5.*

Color Correction

With traditional photography, color correction is achieved in several ways. You can put filters over the lens of your camera to compensate for a slight bluish or reddish tint to the available light. Other filters can correct for the wacky lighting effects provided by some fluorescent lamps. Some color correction can be done when making a print. Elements has advantages over most traditional methods: it's fast, repeatable, and reversible. You can fiddle with your image editor's capabilities as much as you like, produce several corrected versions for comparison, or really dial up some outlandish color changes as special effects. If you don't like what you come up with, return to your original image and start over.

Creative Use of Black and White

Black-and-white photography, like blues music, seems to enjoy a resurgence every five or ten years. In truth, neither black-and-white imagery nor blues ever goes anywhere: it's only widespread public perception of them that changes. Monochrome photos are a great creative outlet, letting you strip down your pictures to the basics without the intrusiveness and bias of color. Elements is a great tool for working with black-and-white images, both those that were originally conceived and created in monochrome as well as those that were derived from color images. Indeed, Elements offers some powerful tools for transforming a full-color image into black and white, mimicking specialized films and filters in flexible ways. In most cases, these procedures offer much more flexibility than you'd get shooting in black-and-white mode with your digital camera, too.

Filters

Let's not get started on filters, just yet. In traditional photography, filters are handy gadgets you place in front of the camera's lens to produce a variety of effects. These can range from multiple images to split-field colorization (that is, blue on top and reddish on the bottom of an image, or vice versa) to glamour-oriented blur filters. Using third-party add-ons like those from Andromeda or Alien Skin, Elements can reproduce virtually any optical effect you can get with glass or gelatin filters, plus hundreds more that are impossible outside the digital realm. If you've used filters with your film camera, and perhaps purchased a set of the Cokin series, you'll love what Elements can do.

Next Up

Now that we've taken a look at photography, as it relates to Adobe Photoshop Elements and the rest of the Adobe image-editing family from 50,000 feet, it's time to skydive down to treetop level, and below, to investigate some of the techniques you can use to improve your images at the pixel level. The next chapter explores camera and lighting effects in Elements.

2

Camera and Lens Effects in Photoshop Elements

Photography is not the only artistic endeavor in which the tools can hold as much fascination as the process itself, or even the end result. Serious cabinetmakers may be just as proud of their sophisticated new hollow chisel mortiser as they are of the drop-front desk crafted with it. In the same vein, it's common to meet a photographer who feels you can never be too rich, too thin, or have too many lenses.

You don't actually *need* a dozen lenses, a bag full of filters, or enough light sources to illuminate the Statue of Liberty to take great pictures. Many of you probably get along very well with nothing more than the zoom lens or electronic flash built into your camera. But whether you're a photo gadget freak or a photo gadget phobe, Elements has some tools you'll find extremely useful. Built into your favorite image editor are capabilities that let you duplicate many camera and lighting effects.

Simulating traditional photographic techniques in Elements is useful for several reasons. First, even if you own every lens or piece of lighting gear known to civilization, you may not always have your prized gadget with you when you need it. For example, I've traveled to Europe carrying just one camera body, a 35mm and a 105mm lens. More recently, I've gone on trips with a digital camera, its built-in zoom lens, and a stack of memory cards as my sole still

photography equipment. My intent in both cases was to shoot video, and I wanted to keep my ancillary equipment to a minimum. It's also possible that you had a particular piece of equipment available but didn't think to use it, or were unable to put it to work in a fast-moving shooting situation.

A second reason to use Elements to mimic traditional photographic techniques is that you simply don't have the interest in or budget for a particular item, but, from time to time, would still like to take advantage of its capabilities. Many photographers who generally work with a single zoom lens (including the one built into their digital camera) might want a fisheye picture on occasion. Elements can help.

This chapter will show you how to mimic many traditional camera and lens effects using Elements. In each section, I'll describe the traditional camera technique first to give you an idea of what the technique is supposed to do. Then, I'll follow with some instructions on how to duplicate, or improve on, the effect in Elements.

Lens Effects

Elements can duplicate the look of many different lenses, particularly some of those specialized optics that cost an arm and a leg, even though you probably wouldn't use them more than a few times a year. For example, I happen to own two fisheye lenses (7.5mm and 16mm versions), a perspective control lens, several zoom lenses, and a massive 400mm telephoto. Other than the zooms, I don't use any of these very often. I use even fewer lens add-ons with my digital cameras. For example, one of my digital cameras has a non-removable 28mm to 200mm (35mm equivalent) lens that suffices for 95 percent of my shots with that camera. My digital SLR came equipped with a 27mm to 105mm (equivalent) zoom lens, and I have a compact 105mm to 300mm (equivalent: it's really a 70mm to 200mm zoom) lens. So, if I happen to encounter a shooting situation that is beyond the capabilities of these basic lenses, I often end up taking a straight photograph and using Elements to apply the special effects.

Perspective Control

Most of the pictures we take, whether consciously or unconsciously, are taken head-on. In that mode, the back of the camera is parallel to the plane of our subject, so all elements of the subject, top to bottom, and side to side, are roughly the same distance from the film or digital sensor. Your problems begin when you tilt the camera up or down to photograph, say, a tree, tall building, or monument. The most obvious solution, stepping backwards far enough to take the picture with a longer lens or zoom setting while keeping the camera level, isn't always available. You may find yourself with your back up against an adjacent building, or standing on the edge of a cliff.

Indeed, it's often necessary to use a wide-angle setting and *still* tilt the camera upwards to avoid chopping off the top of your subject. Figure 2.1 shows the relationship between the back of the camera and a monument when the camera is held perpendicular to the group. Notice that both the top and bottom of the subject are cut off.

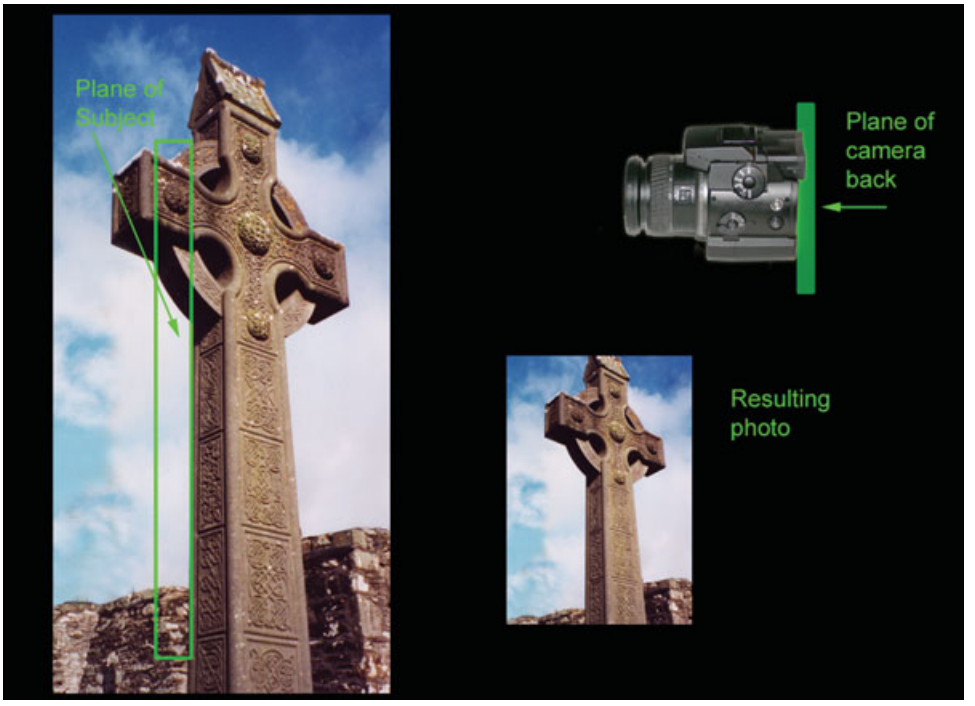


Figure 2.1 *When the back of the camera is parallel to the plane of the subject, it's sometimes impossible to include the entire subject in the photo.*

Switch to wide-angle mode and tilt the camera to include all of the subject, and you get the distorted photo shown in Figure 2.2. The monument appears to be falling back, and the base appears proportionately larger than the top, because it's somewhat closer to the camera.

The traditional workaround to this dilemma is one that's generally available only to those who do a great deal of architectural photography. The solution for 35mm photographers is to use something called a perspective control lens, an expensive accessory which lets you raise and lower the view of the lens (or move it from side to side; perspective control can involve wide subjects as well as tall) while keeping the camera back in the same plane as your subject. A more sophisticated (and expensive) solution requires a professional camera called a view camera, a device that usually uses 4 × 5-inch (or larger) film, and has lens and film holders that can be adjusted to any desired combination of angles. Those who can't afford such gadgets, or who own digital cameras without interchangeable lenses, appear to be left out in the cold.

That's where Elements comes in. You can make some reasonable adjustments to the perspective of an image within your image editor. Often, the manipulations are enough to fully or partially correct for perspective distortion. There are two methods you can use in Photoshop Elements, and we'll look at both of them.

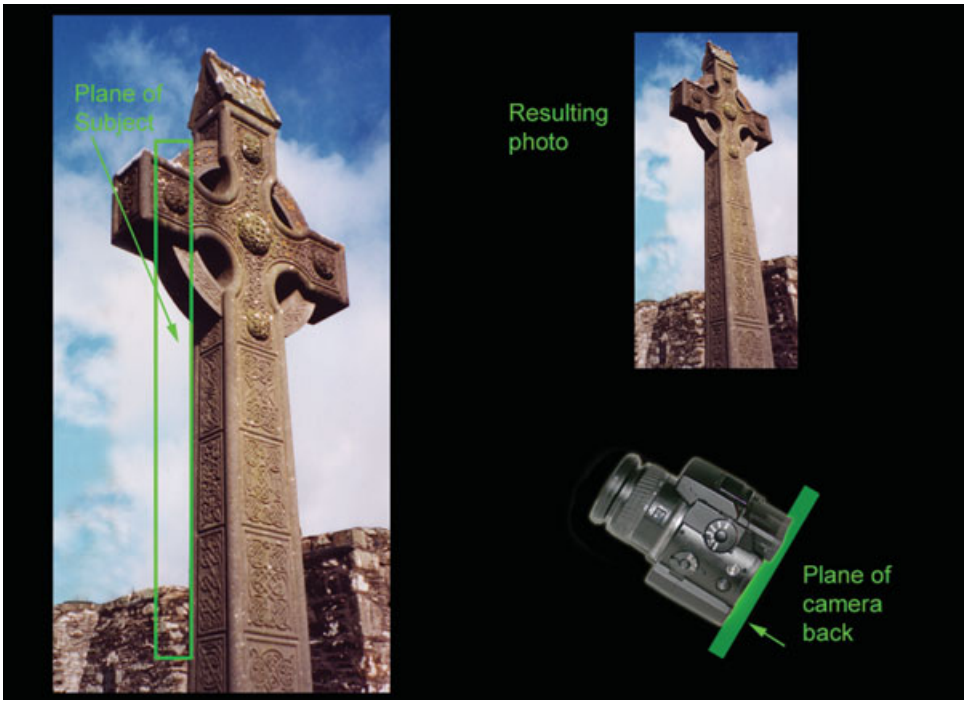


Figure 2.2 *In wide-angle mode, tilting the camera makes the monument look like it's falling backwards.*

Easy Correction with the Grid

This section explains a basic perspective correction method you can use to fix a selection in your photo, using Elements' Grid as an aid. The procedure assumes that your image is oriented correctly (that is, it doesn't need to be rotated). Just follow these steps using the original image medinaceli.jpg from the Web site, or use an image of your own.

1. Open the file medinaceli.jpg in Elements. The image will look like the one shown in Figure 2.3.
2. Choose View > Fit on Screen to allow the enlarged image to fit comfortably on your screen.
3. Choose View > Grid to display Elements' grid overlay on your image, as shown in Figure 2.4.
4. If your grid's squares are too large, use Edit > Preferences > Grid to define a grid layout. I chose one line every 200 pixels for this project.
5. Use the Rectangular Marquee tool to select only the image of the tower, not the blank space you created around it.
6. Choose Image > Transform > Perspective to activate Elements' distortion feature.

Figure 2.3 *This arch appears to be falling backwards, because the camera was tilted up to shoot the picture.*

Figure 2.4 *The Grid helps line up your image as you change its perspective.*

7. Drag the corner selection handles until the lines of the arch are lined up with the grid.
8. Crop the image to arrive at the final version, shown in Figure 2.5.

Figure 2.5 *The final cropped image should look like this.*

Zoom

Zooming while making an exposure became popular in the 1960s as a way of adding movement to an otherwise static image. The technique is fairly easy to achieve with a conventional camera, especially one with manual controls: simply take a picture using a shutter speed that is slow enough to let you zoom your lens during the exposure. Depending on how quickly you can zoom with your left hand on the lens barrel after you've pressed the shutter release with your right hand, a motion-zoom of this type can be made successfully at speeds from 1/30th second or slower.

Zoom in or out, as you prefer, and use a tripod with longer exposures if you want the smoothest effect. While the image will be blurred as it changes in size from the minimum/maximum zoom settings, there can be a relatively sharp image at some point in the zoom (usually the beginning or end) if you pause during the zooming. An electronic flash exposure, most easily made (automatically) at the beginning of the exposure, can also provide a sharp image to blend with your zoom blurs.

Many digital camera owners are pretty much left out in the cold, because motorized zooms aren't fast enough to produce a blur effect except for very long exposures. You can achieve this effect if you have a higher-end digital camera with manual zooming control. If not, don't worry. Elements can come to your rescue with its own built-in zoom-blur effect. Try the following technique:

1. Locate the basketball.jpg file from the Web site, or use your own image. My sample image looks like Figure 2.6. The photo happens to be a cropped portion of a digital camera image taken under available light at about 1/500th second and f4. Notice how the girls' hands are a little blurry, but everything else is static and frozen in time. I thought it would be interesting to keep the basketball sharp, but add a little zoom blur to the players.
2. Create a duplicate of the image's basic (background) layer by choosing Layer > Duplicate. Elements will automatically transfer its focus to the new layer, making it the active layer you'll be working with.
3. Press A on the keyboard to activate Elements' Selection Brush, which allows you to "paint" a selection using ordinary brush tools.

Figure 2.6 *The picture looks like this prior to adding the zoom effect.*

CHOOSE MASK OR SELECTION

In the Options bar you'll find the Mode drop-down list that lets you choose whether the Selection Brush paints a selection or paints masked (unselected) areas. I usually choose to paint a selection, but the choice is yours.

4. Paint an area around the basketball using a soft, 100-pixel brush chosen from the drop-down palette at the left side of the Options bar. Paint an area about 125 percent of the diameter of the ball itself.
5. We actually want to select everything in the image except the ball, so if you are in the habit of painting selections, like I am, invert the selection by pressing Shift + Ctrl/Command + I. That leaves the ball masked, and everything else selected.
6. Choose Filter > Blur > Radial blur from the menu to produce the Radial Blur dialog box shown in Figure 2.7. Choose 85 for the Amount, Zoom as the Blur Method, and Best as the Quality level. While you can shift the point around which Elements will zoom by dragging the crosshair in the middle of the preview box, the sample picture already has the main subject centered right where the zoom will go.
7. Click OK to apply the zoom. Your image will look like Figure 2.8.
8. In the Layers palette shown in Figure 2.9 (you may have to choose Window > Layers to access it), drag the Opacity slider to reduce the amount of zoom-blur and restore some of the original image by revealing the original, unblurred image in the background layer underneath your current working layer. That makes the blur effect less overwhelming, and makes your original image a bit more recognizable. I scaled back the blur to 71 percent to create the version shown in Figure 2.10.

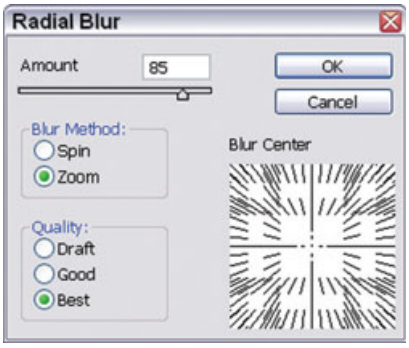


Figure 2.7 *Choose your settings in the Radial Blur dialog box.*

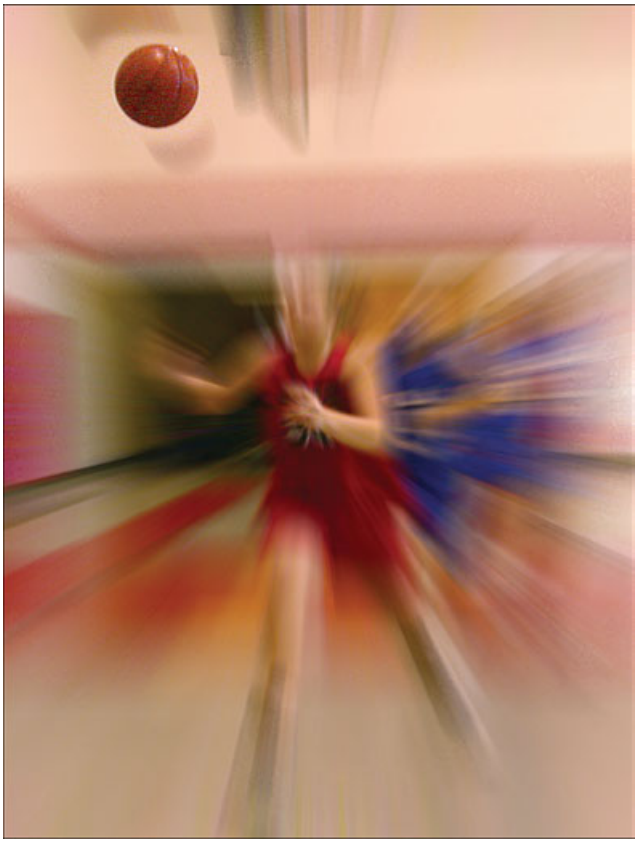


Figure 2.8 *The zoom effect has been applied full-strength to all of the image except for the basketball.*

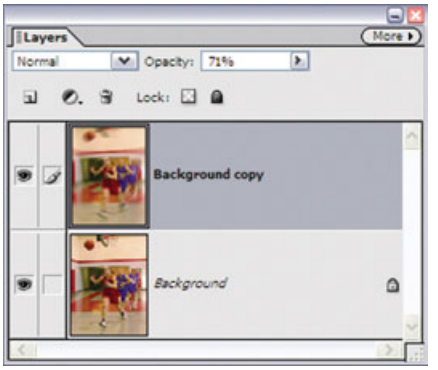


Figure 2.9 *Reduce the opacity of the blurred layer to attenuate the effect.*

Figure 2.10 *Fading the zoom blur to 71% makes the image a little more recognizable.*

9. Be a little creative if you like. I took the fully blurred image from Figure 2.8 and pasted it onto the original image from Figure 2.6. Then, I used an eraser with a large, soft brush to selectively erase part of the blurry layer, creating an image that is sharp in the center, and becomes dramatically zoomed everywhere else. You can see the final image in Figure 2.11.

Zoom blurring works especially well with sports events, rock concerts, and other fast-moving situations where a little blur can liven up a photo.

Figure 2.11 *Combining a blurred image with the original selectively gives you a picture that looks like this.*

Telephoto Effects

Elements can help you compensate for that long telephoto you can't afford, or which isn't available for your digital camera. Telephotos are great for bringing your subject closer when you can't get close physically. Telephotos also compress the apparent distance between objects that are actually more widely separated than they appear to be. Tele lenses are often used in those car-chase sequences you see in the movies. From the head-on view, it looks like the hero is weaving in and out of cars that are only a few feet apart. In real life, they were probably separated by 40 feet or more, and crammed together through the magic of a telephoto lens.

Unfortunately, most digital cameras don't have really long telephoto lenses available. Some digital models may have skimpy 3:1 zoom lenses that simulate at their maximum the view you'd get with, say, a short 105mm or 135mm lens on a conventional 35mm camera. Some semi-pro models offer 10:1 zooms (or better) that still don't bring you close enough. The so-called

"digital" zoom built into many models does offer more magnification, but they do nothing more than enlarge a selection of pixels in the center of the sensor to fill your entire image area. You don't actually gain any additional information. You can purchase add-on telephotos for most digital cameras, but these can cost hundreds of dollars and you might not use them very often. You might as well do the job in Elements, where you can enlarge and sharpen your image in real-time under your full control. If you have a digital camera with 5-6 megapixels or more, this can work quite well.

The key to successfully mimicking a long telephoto with Elements is to start with the sharpest original picture possible. Follow these suggestions to get your best picture:

- Set your digital camera to its highest megapixel rating, and use the least amount of compression possible. If your camera has an SHQ, Extra Fine, TIFF, or RAW setting, you'll find these will give you the sharpest original image.
- Use the sharpest film (conventional camera) or lowest ISO setting (digital camera) you can, given the lighting conditions and your subject matter. That might mean using an ISO 100 film (or its digital equivalent setting) for a scenic photo, or an ISO 200-400 film or setting for an action picture.
- If your camera has manual settings or can be set to Shutter Priority mode (in which you choose the shutter speed and the camera sets the lens opening), use the shortest shutter speed you can. I've found that even a brief 1/500th second exposure can still be blurred by camera motion in the hands of someone who isn't accustomed to holding the camera *really* steady. A short exposure will stop subject motion, too.
- Consider using a tripod, if you have one available, to steady your camera. At the very least, try bracing the camera against a rigid object, such as a tree, building, or rail.
- Use your longest optical lens or zoom setting (not digital zoom!) to provide the most magnification you can in your original picture.

Figure 2.12 represents a combination of best possible/worst possible scenario. On the plus side, I managed front row seats just behind and above the dugout on the third-base side for this professional softball game. Unfortunately, when the action started, I had a zoom lens that topped out at the equivalent of 105mm, so my picture wasn't the close-up look I really wanted.

Yet, because I had enough megapixels to play with, I was able to crop the photo and get the result you can see in Figure 2.13. Because it focuses on the pitcher, it packs a lot more excitement than the original grab shot.

For an absolutely worst-case scenario, check out Figure 2.14, which shows the view from the $7.00 seats at Jacobs Field in Cleveland, with a box drawn around the view I wish that I'd had. Fortunately, the rowdy gang of kids I'd brought with me couldn't tell the difference between these seats and the $40 Lower Box accommodations, so it was money better diverted to hot dogs, even if my photo opportunities suffered.

Figure 2.12 *A great seat and a short telephoto lens provide this "big picture" view.*

Figure 2.13 *Cropping the image provides a telephoto effect.*

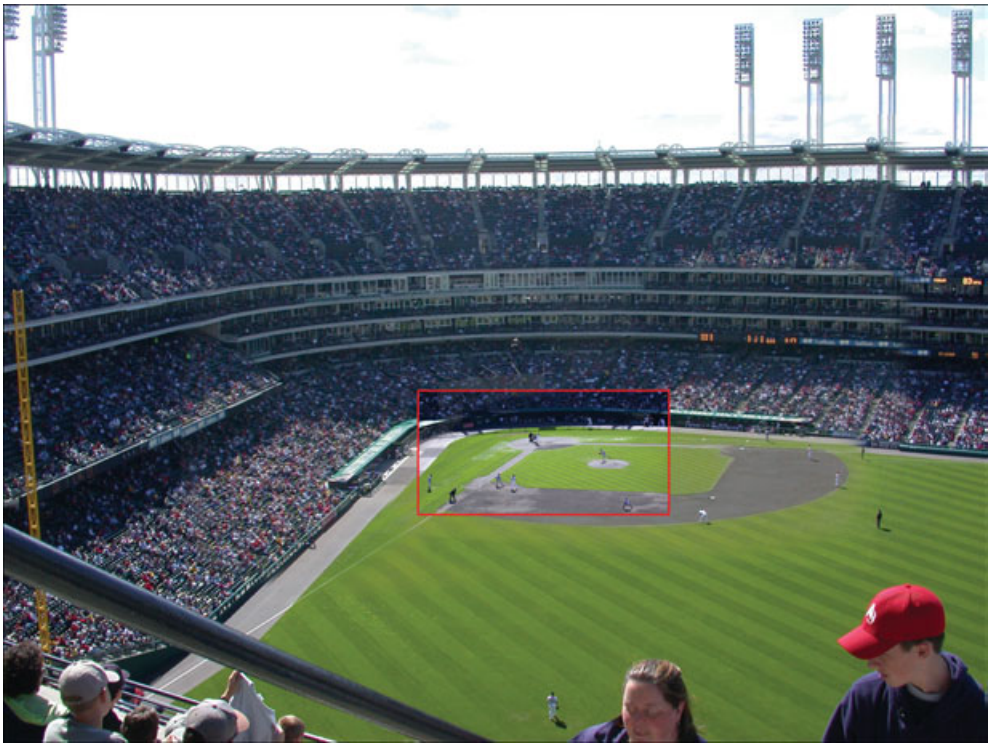


Figure 2.14 *This is the sort of picture you can expect to take 380 feet from home plate.*

The original was a full-frame digital image taken with a digital camera with a mere 3.3 megapixels. I zoomed in as far as I could with the 4X zoom lens, loaded the resulting image into Elements, and applied Elements' Filter > Sharpen > Unsharp Mask filter, which lets you "dial in" the amount of sharpness you want, using the dialog box shown in Figure 2.15.

UNSHARP MASKING

Unsharp masking is derived from a conventional photographic technique, and, despite its name, is used to sharpen images. The technique was first applied to images made on 4×5 and larger sheet film. In the darkroom, a film positive is made from the original film negative, a sort of reversed negative in which all the parts of the image that were originally black are black, and all the parts that were white are white. This positive is slightly blurred, which causes the image to spread a bit (like any out-of-focus image). When the positive and negative are sandwiched together and used to expose yet another image, the light areas of the positive correspond very closely to the dark areas of the negative, and vice versa, canceling each other out to a certain extent. However, at the edges of the image, the blurring in the positive produces areas that don't cancel out, resulting in lighter and darker lines on either side of the edges. This extra emphasis on the edges of the image adds the appearance of sharpness. Figure 2.16 might help you visualize how this works.

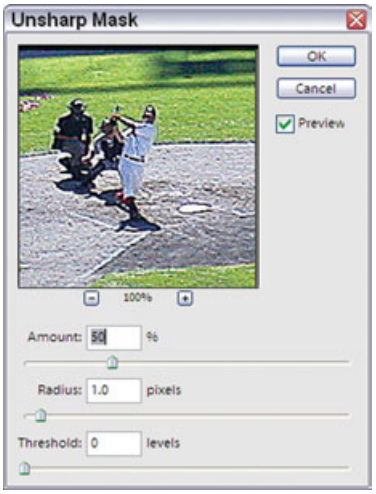


Figure 2.15 *The Unsharp Mask dialog box allows you to dial in the amount of sharpness you want.*

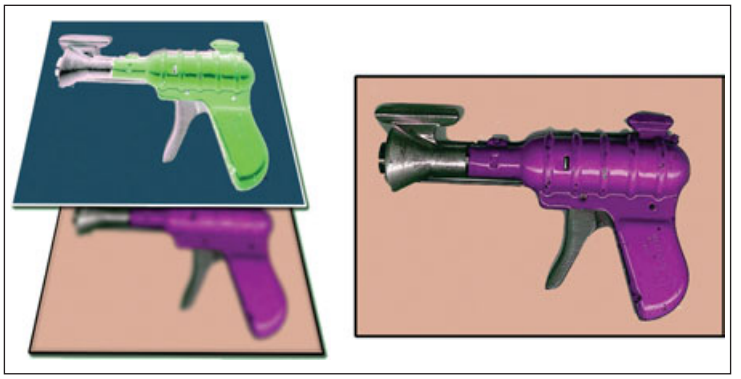


Figure 2.16 *A blurred positive and negative image (left) are combined to produce a new, sharpened negative that can be used, in turn, to print an image like the one at right.*

It's fairly easy for Elements to create the blurry positive "mask" and then match it with a negative image of the original picture. As a bonus, you end up with greater control over the amount of blur in the mask, the distance around the edges that are masked, and a threshold level (relative brightness) at which the effect begins to be applied. The Unsharp Mask filter is similar in many ways to the Sharpen Edges filter, but with this enhanced control. There are three slider controls:

- The Amount slider controls the degree of edge enhancement applied. You can vary the sharpening effect from 1 percent to 500 percent, and view the results in the Preview window as you work.
- The Radius slider determines the width of the edge that will be operated on, measured in pixels, with valid values from .1 (very narrow) to 250 pixels (very wide). You can preview the results visually, but use a few rules of thumb to decide how much to move this control. The main thing to keep in mind is the original resolution of your image. Low-resolution images (under 100 dpi) can't benefit from much more than one- to three-pixels worth of edge sharpening, while higher resolution images (300 dpi and up) can accommodate values of 10 or more. You'll know right away if you have set your values too high. You'll see thick, poster-like edges that aren't realistic, accompanied by a high degree of contrast. You may, in fact, actually *like* the weird appearance, but you've left the realm of sharpening and ventured into special effects at this point.

- The Threshold slider sets the amount of contrast that must exist between adjacent pixels before the edge is sharpened. Sharpness is actually determined by how much the contrast varies between pixels in an area, as shown in Figure 2.17, a super-enlargement of the clock face in the tower that holds Big Ben (which itself is actually a bell) in London. Low contrast equals a blurry, soft image, while high contrast tends to mean a sharp, hard image. You can see that the pixels on either side of the enlargement are exactly the same size, but that the contrast between them is greater on the left ("sharper") side.

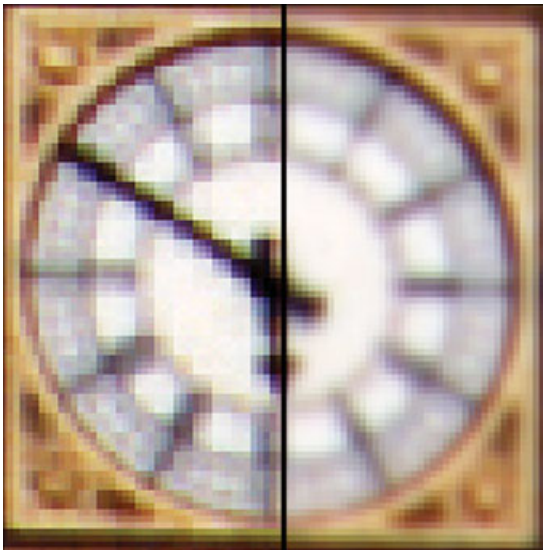


Figure 2.17 *The pixels are the same size, so the resolution must be the same. Yet, the more contrasty half of the image, on the left, looks sharper than the lower-contrast image on the right.*

When working with the Threshold slider, values from 0 to 255 can be used. A very low value means that edges with relatively small contrast differences will be accentuated. High values mean that the difference must be very great before any additional sharpening is applied. Normally, you'll need this control only when the default value produces an image with excessive noise or some other undesirable effect. To be honest, in all the years I've used it, changing the Threshold slider produces effects that were hard to predict, because they varied widely depending on how the other two controls were adjusted, and the nature of the image itself. Your best bet is to set the Amount and Radius sliders first, then experiment with Threshold to see if you like the results any better.

Figure 2.18 shows my baseball picture after I experimented with the Unsharp Mask filter to optimize the sharpness. The view is still not as good as a front row seat, but then, I didn't have to pay a lot for my tickets or tote around a mammoth telephoto lens, either. If nothing else, Elements helped me create a souvenir of an exciting game.

Figure 2.18 *Elements simulated a long telephoto lens by helping sharpen this tightly cropped image.*

Compressing Distances

As I mentioned earlier, telephoto lenses also are used to compress apparent distances. The good news is that this effect, sometimes called "telephoto distortion" has nothing to do with the lens itself. It's simply an effect caused as you move farther away from a subject.

For example, if you are photographing a series of fenceposts that are spaced 10 feet apart, and you're standing 10 feet from the first post, the second post will be twice as far away (20 feet), the third one three times as far away (30 feet), and the fourth one four times as distant at 40 feet.

Now move 50 feet away from the first post. The second post will now be only 1.2X as far from you as the first post (60 feet instead of 50), the second will be 1.4X as far, the third 1.6X as far, and the fourth one 1.8X the distance. The apparent distance between them will be much less in your photograph. However, the fence posts will be *waaay* down the road from you, so if you use a telephoto lens to bring them closer, you'll see the images as relatively compressed together, as shown in Figure 2.19. The exact same thing happens if you take the picture with a much shorter lens and enlarge it. The distances are relatively compressed. The figure shows an image of the town walls around the city of Avila, Spain, at left, and an enlargement taken with the same lens at roughly the same position, but cropped and enlarged in Elements so only the last six towers are visible. You can see how compressed the distances between the towers appear when the picture is blown up.

Figure 2.19 *An enlargement of a portion of the photo at left produces a "compressed" image at right.*

Telephoto perspective can flatten images in which the distance between the objects is not so obvious. Figure 2.20 shows a wide view of the Spanish town of Segovia, taken from the tower of the city's famous castle (it's the one always shown in those "castles in Spain" posters). When the image is cropped to its center portion, buildings in the foreground that are 100 yards from the cathedral in the background appear as if they butted right up against its base. Elements helps you re-create this telephoto effect without the need for a telephoto lens.

Figure 2.20 *A normal lens shot doesn't show the compression effect of a telephoto…*

Figure 2.21 *…but cropping the image more tightly does produce a compressed look.*

Of course, you might not have any medieval walls, cathedrals, or fence posts around to try out the telephoto compression effect on your own. However, you can probably reproduce something similar to what you see in Figure 2.22, which used nothing more than some red peppers, a plain background, and a camera mounted on a tripod.

The version on the left was taken with a wide-angle lens with the camera only a foot or so from the peppers. Although both vegetables are roughly the same size, the rear pepper appears to be a bit smaller, because the wide-angle lens stretches the distance between them. In the right-side version,

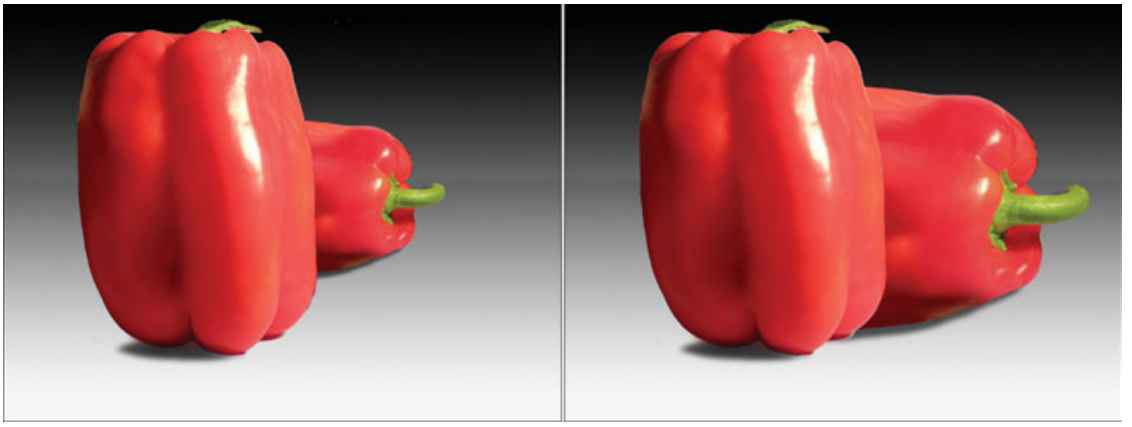


Figure 2.22 *Here, the wide-angle look (left) and telephoto view (right) are dramatically different. Elements can produce the same effect.*

the camera was set on the lens' longest telephoto position, and then the tripod was carefully moved back until the front pepper appeared to be about the same size as before. The hindmost pepper now appears to be much closer to its mate (even though it hasn't moved an iota) and is more nearly the same size, because the tele lens has compressed the distance between the two.

You'll find that shooting from a distance and then enlarging in Elements produces exactly the same effect as using a telephoto lens. All you need are enough pixels to make the degree of enlargement you want practical.

Fisheye Lens

Fisheye lenses were originally developed as a way to provide a hemispherical view in unreasonably tight places, generally for technical reasons, such as examining the insides of a boiler, or for photographing things like the sky's canopy for astronomical research. Because of their specialized nature, they tended to cost a fortune to buy, but that didn't stop photographers of the 1960s who were looking for a way to come up with novel images. My own first fisheye lens was a second-generation Nikon optic, an improved 7.5mm lens that replaced the original 8mm Nikon fisheye, and which required locking up the single lens reflex's mirror and using a separate viewfinder. I later got Nikon's 16mm "full frame" fisheye lens, which did not produce a circular image like the original.

Today, fisheye lenses are available as prime lenses for conventional cameras, or as attachments for many digital cameras, but they're still not something you'd want to use everyday. So, you might want to try Elements' equivalent effect. Figure 2.23 shows you an image of a dandelion in its original perspective (left) and transformed into a fisheye view with Elements (at right).

Figure 2.23 *A dandelion (left) and its fisheye version (right). It's hard to see the difference, because the original subject was already round in shape.*

Because the original image was already circular, the fisheye look shows up only as an abstract effect. You can get additional fisheye views working with more conventional subjects. Try the following technique.

1. Load the file toledoview from the Web site, or use your own image. The sample image looks like Figure 2.24.

Figure 2.24 *This is a view of a military academy located in Toledo, Spain.*

2. Use the Elliptical Marquee tool to create a circular selection in the center of the image. Hold down the Shift key as you drag to create a perfect circle.
3. Choose Filter > Distort > Spherize to produce the dialog box shown in Figure 2.25. Set the Amount slider to 100% to produce the maximum amount of spherization (to coin a term). Click OK to apply the modification.

TIP

Although I continue to use the "old school" commands for clarity, and to differentiate when we copy/paste and cut/paste, you can always copy a selection directly to a new layer by pressing Ctrl/Command + J. It's faster.

4. With the circular section still selected, copy the selection and paste onto a new layer (press Ctrl/Command + C to copy and Ctrl/Command + V to paste).
5. Use Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast and move the Brightness and Contrast sliders each to the right to lighten the fisheye view and increase its contrast.
6. Use Filter> Sharpen > Unsharp Mask to sharpen up the fisheye view a bit.
7. In the Styles and Effects palette (you may have to choose Window > Styles and Effects to make it visible), choose Layer Styles and Outer Glows from the drop-down lists, as shown in Figure 2.26, and drag it onto the fisheye view's layer. (Note: I've dragged the Styles and Effects palette out of the Palette Well for clarity, but you can keep it in the Well at all times for quick access, if you like.)
8. With the circular area still selected, click on the original image (background) layer and press Shift + Ctrl/Command + D to invert the selection so it includes only the area outside the fisheye view.
9. Use the brightness and contrast controls (Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast) again to darken the area surrounding the fisheye, providing greater contrast. Your image should now look like Figure 2.27.

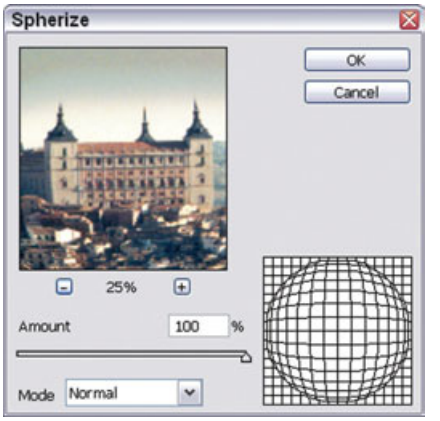


Figure 2.25 *The Spherize dialog box lets you apply fisheye effects to an image.*

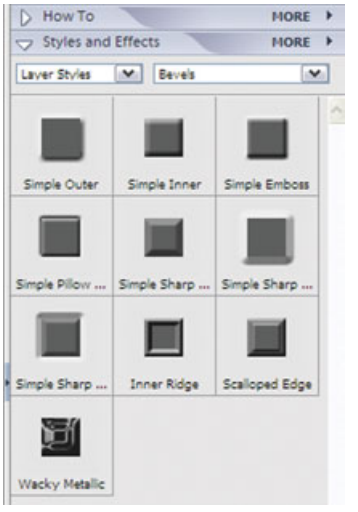


Figure 2.26 *Choose an Outer Glow from the Styles and Effects palette.*

Don't be afraid to experiment. Figure 2.28 shows the same picture with some additional tweaking. On the left, I added a glass lens filter, like the one provided in Kai's Power Tools. For the other image, I applied the Spherize filter a second time to the first fisheye view, making it even more distorted.

Figure 2.27 *After lightening the fisheye view and darkening the surroundings, the image looks like this.*

Figure 2.28 *The image on the left looks like a crystal ball, thanks to a glass lens filter. The image on the right has had the Spherize filter applied a second time, producing a more exaggerated look.*

Lens Flare

In computer terms, lens flare is a bug that became a feature. Like grainy, high-contrast film images, lens flare started out as an undesirable image defect that was eventually embraced as a cool artistic effect. As you might expect, Elements can duplicate this look with great versatility.

Lens flare is generally caused by light bouncing around within the elements of a lens in uncontrolled ways. A bright light source within the picture area, such as a spotlight or the sun, can generate flare. Very bright lights that are outside the area you've framed can also cause a kind of overall flare that reduces the contrast of your image. Lens hoods are designed to keep this stray light from reaching your lens' glass, thus improving contrast and making your images appear sharper and snappier.

Some kinds of lenses are more susceptible to lens flare than others. Telephoto lenses have a narrow field-of-view, and light from outside that view can be objectionable. That's why telephotos virtually always are furnished with a lens hood, usually one custom-designed to precisely exclude illumination from outside the intended perspective of the lens. There is less you can do with normal and wide-angle lenses, as their much wider field-of-view automatically takes in every stray light source. However, lens hoods are a good idea for these lenses, as well. Even my ultra-wide 16mm fisheye has stubby fingers of a vestigial lens hood mounted on its outer edge.

The design of a lens also is a factor. Zoom lenses or any lens with many, many elements, as well as lenses with very large front surfaces, are virtual magnets for image-obscuring stray light. With some lenses and certain shooting environments, flare is almost unavoidable. That may be why so many photographers have decided to grin and bear it by incorporating lens flare into their pictures as a creative element. Elements lets you put the lens flare exactly where you want it, with precisely the degree of flare that you desire. The algorithm the program uses is based on one developed by original Elements developer and Industrial Light and Magic guru John Knoll for his utility FlareMaker. Follow these steps to see for yourself how lens flare can be used.

1. Load the Sunset file from the Web site. The image, a moody, somewhat bland, sunset picture, is shown in Figure 2.29.
2. The first thing to do is brighten the picture a little and give it more zip. Choose Enhance > Adjust Color > Hue/Saturation. Move the Hue slider to -33 and the Saturation slider to +65. Click OK and you'll end up with a more vivid image, like the one shown in Figure 2.30. Your picture may look a little garish and contrasty right now, but the lens flare steps that follow will compensate for that somewhat by reducing the contrast.

Figure 2.29 *This sunset picture could use a little livening up.*

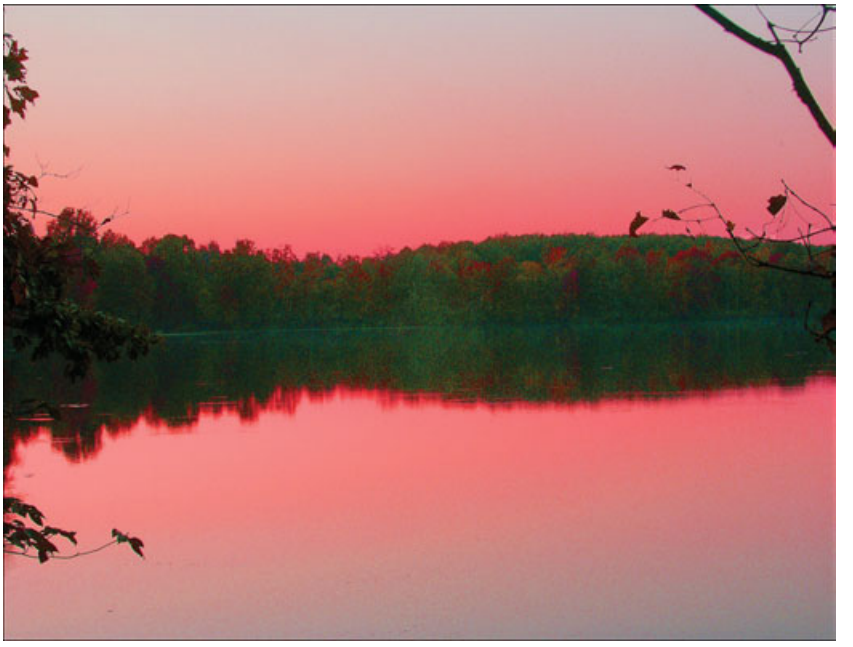


Figure 2.30 *Adjusting the saturation and hue of the image provides a bit more zip.*

3. Choose Filter > Render > Lens Flare to produce the dialog box shown in Figure 2.31.
4. You can choose to imitate the lens flare typically produced by four different types of lenses, a 50-300mm zoom, as well as 35mm and 105mm prime (single focal length) lenses. New to Photoshop Elements is a Movie Prime choice, which duplicates the flare effect of many motion picture camera lenses. Start off by selecting the 105mm prime lens. You can also adjust the amount of flare by moving the Brightness slider, and drag the cross hairs shown in the preview window around to precisely position the center of the flare.
5. Click OK to apply the flare. Your image will look like Figure 2.32. You can see the effects of the 35mm and 50-300mm zoom lens settings in Figure 2.33 and Figure 2.34.

Experiment with different brightness settings to achieve different effects. You can also apply the lens flare only to a selected portion of your image to keep the glare from obscuring some parts of the image.

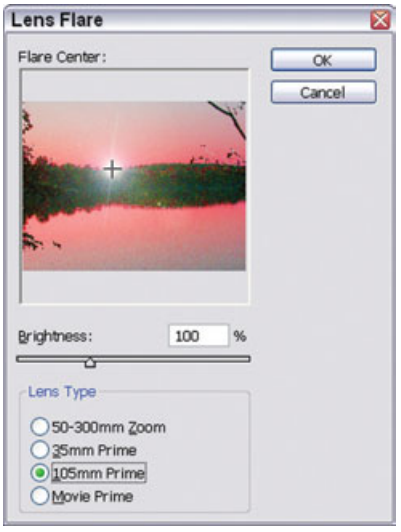


Figure 2.31 *The Lens Flare dialog box offers a choice of four different lens types.*

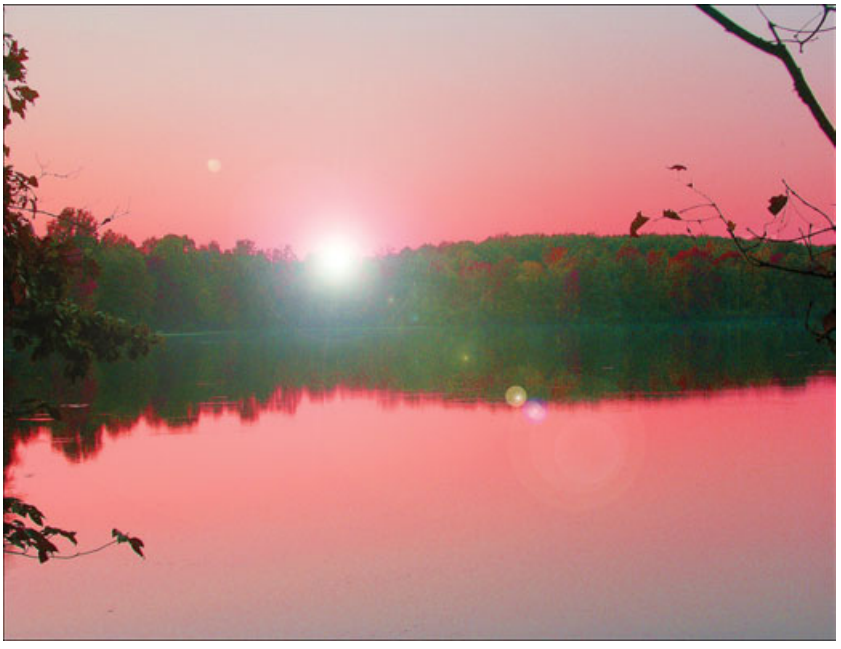


Figure 2.32 *Elements' 105mm Lens Flare filter inserts a setting sun into the photograph.*

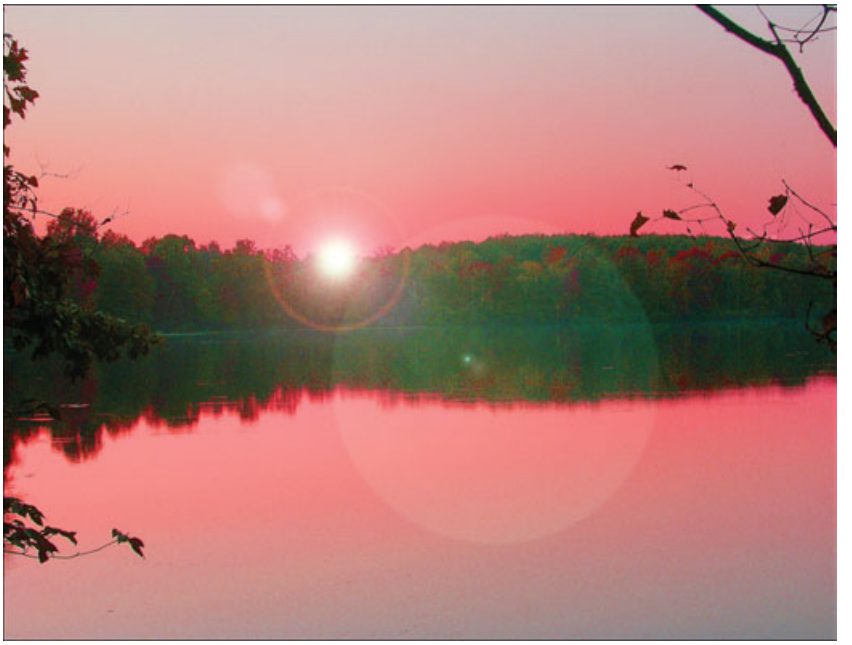


Figure 2.33 *The 35mm Lens Flare effect looks like this.*

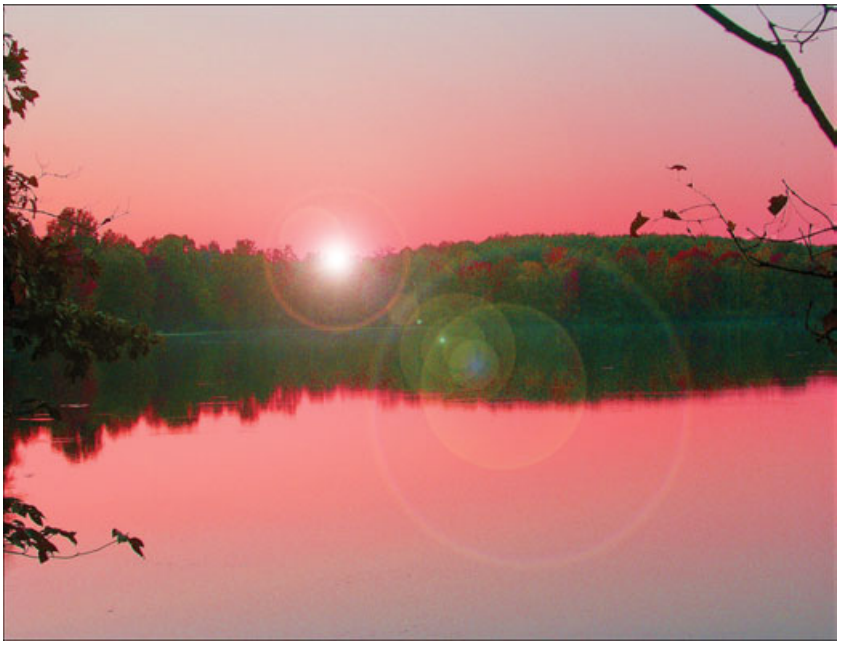


Figure 2.34 *The 50- 300 Zoom Lens Flare option produces its own special effect.*

Motion Blur

The goal of neophyte action photographers is to freeze action, stopping everything in its tracks. Once you learn some reliable ways to accomplish that miracle, it soon becomes evident that people or things frozen in time tend to look a little bit like statues, and not particularly realistic or exciting from an action standpoint. We *expect* a little blur in our sports photography, especially if the blur of motion is used effectively.

If you know what you're doing (or even if you don't), capturing images with just enough blur to make them look alive is not that difficult, with either digital or conventional cameras. Among the techniques at your disposal:

- Choose just the right shutter speed for the action at hand. Don't use a speed that's so slow that your subjects will be terminally blurry, and avoid super-short shutter speeds that freeze everything. With experience, you'll learn which shutter speeds work with which kinds of motion.
- Learn to move your camera with the action (a technique called panning), which reduces the relative speed of your subject to the camera, allowing you to capture action with a slower shutter speed. As a bonus, panning often blurs the background enough to add the kind of motion blur you want to achieve.
- Understand the dynamics of motion. Objects crossing the camera's field-of-view blur more than those headed directly towards the camera. Some parts of an object, such as the wheels of a moving car or the feet of a running athlete, move faster than the rest of the subject, adding inevitable (or even desirable) blur. Subjects closer to the camera blur more than those located farther away. You can learn a lot more about these topics (from the camera's point of view) in my book *Mastering Digital Photography*.

Understanding these concepts can help you duplicate them within Elements, too, as another example of how photographic experience can help you when it comes time to edit your images. Try the exercise which follows to see some of the ways in which you can add motion blur to your images.

1. Load the soccerblur.jpg image from the Web site. The original image is shown in Figure 2.35.
2. Select the soccer ball using the Elliptical Marquee tool. Hold down the Shift key to select a perfect circle. Press the cursor arrow keys to nudge the selection a bit, if necessary, so it encompasses the entire soccer ball.
3. Choose Filter > Blur > Radial Blur. This is the same filter you used earlier to produce a zoom effect. This time choose Spin as the blur type, and move the Amount slider until the soccer ball has a bit of a blur to it, as shown in Figure 2.36. The Radial Blur dialog box is shown in Figure 2.37.

Figure 2.35 *This image is sharp and unblurred, and looks as if the soccer players were statues.*

Figure 2.36 *First, add some radial blur to the soccer ball, as if it were spinning.*

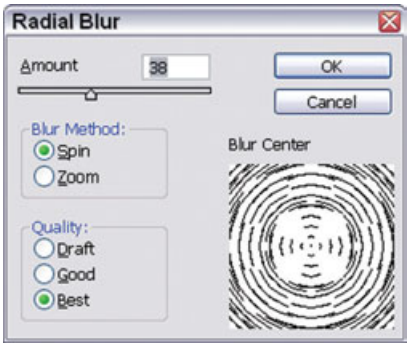


Figure 2.37 *Choose the Spin option for the Blur Method.*

4. Press A to choose the Selection Brush, and using a 65-pixel soft brush "paint" a mask onto the right halves of the bodies of the players on each side of the kicker. These players are running towards the left side of the frame, so we want to add a little blur to the right sides of their bodies.
5. Now choose Filter > Blur > Gaussian Blur. Move the Radius slider to about 3 pixels and click OK to apply the blur.
6. The relevant portion of your image should now look like Figure 2.38.

Figure 2.38 *Next, add some motion blur to the players who appear to be running towards the left.*

7. Repeat steps 4 and 5, only paint over the entire body of the girl at the left side of the frame, to apply blur over her form completely. The finished shot looks like Figure 2.39.

Figure 2.39 *Finally, add overall blur to the girl at the far left to produce this final image.*

Keep in mind the dynamics of motion when applying blur. In some cases, you might want to blur only your subjects' feet and/or hands. Add some blur to the wheels of a locomotive to give it a feeling of speed and power. Put streaks behind a skyrocket rising into the heavens.

Selective Focus

Selective focus is one of the most valuable creative tools at your disposal, allowing you to isolate or feature various parts of your composition. For example, by throwing the background out of focus, you can place emphasis on the subject in the foreground. The techniques of selective focus, using depth-of-field (the amount of the image that is in relatively sharp focus), should be familiar to every photographer.

- Use longer lenses, which inherently have less depth-of-field, to give yourself great control over what's in focus and what is not.
- Digital cameras with smaller sensors use lenses with shorter focal lengths, producing much more depth-of-field for a particular image magnification.
- Move in close to take advantage of the reduced depth-of-field at near range.
- Use larger lens openings to reduce the amount of depth-of-field. Note that many digital cameras lack both very large and very small lens openings. For example, some may have only lens openings between f2.8 and f5.6.
- Use manual shutter speed settings or the aperture priority mode of your camera to allow use of those larger lens openings.
- Filters, slower films, lower ISO settings on your digital camera, and other aids can help control the lens opening you use and, thus, the amount of depth-of-field you're working with.
- Learn the dynamics of focus, such as how two-thirds of the depth-of-field at any particular distance and lens opening is applied to the area behind your subject, and only one-third to the area in front of it.
- Preview the amount of area in focus using your single lens reflex camera's depth-of-field preview, or your digital camera's LCD screen.

I'll explain how to apply selective focus the old-fashioned way, useful for versions prior to Photoshop Elements 3.0. Figure 2.40 is a digital camera picture of a kitten, taken at close range. The background is already fairly blurry, but it's still distracting and we can do better. For this image, I used the Selection Brush we've already deployed several times in this chapter, and painted a selection that included only the cat, taking special care around the edges of the feline.

SELECTIVE FOCUS AND DIGITAL CAMERAS

Elements is a life-saver for digital camera users eager to apply selective focus techniques, because digital camera lenses inherently provide much, much more depth-of-field for a given field-of-view than a conventional film camera.

The depth-of-field bonus of digital cameras comes from the relatively short focal length lenses they use. The maximum "telephoto" setting of a typical digital camera may be 32mm (producing the same field-of-view as a 150mm lens on a 35mm camera). However, the depth-of-field provided by the digital camera at that setting is much closer to that of a wide-angle lens than to a telephoto lens. As a result, it may be very difficult to use selective focus with a digital camera, unless you're taking a picture very, very close to your subject. Photoshop Elements can fix that!

Figure 2.40 *Even digital cameras can achieve selective focus when shooting close up. But we can do better.*

Then, I applied Elements' Unsharp Mask filter to sharpen the cat even more, and followed that with an application of Elements' Blur tool to the non-cat portions of the image to increase the out-of-focus appearance of the background. As a final touch, I put the Dodge tool to work to lighten the cat's eyes. You can see the final image in Figure 2.41.

Figure 2.41 *Blurring the background while sharpening the cat produces a more dramatic selective focus effect.*

Photoshop Elements Photo Filters

Photoshop Elements has a new Photo Filters effect hidden in the Filter >Adjustments menu. It's primarily of use to photographers who want to apply familiar filter effects to their image, rather than use the program's color correction facilities. Or, it can be used to quickly add filter-like color for special effects.

For example, films are produced (even today) balanced for a particular kind of light source. The most common films are designed to produce accurate colors when exposed under daylight illumination, but a few professional films are balanced for the much more orange light produced by incandescent lamps. Back in the olden days, most photographers owned a set of filters that would convert one kind of illumination to the other (at the cost of an f-stop or two of exposure). A tungsten-balanced film can be exposed under daylight if a Kodak Wratten 85B filter is used to correct the light.

Even if you're not using film, you can get this kind of wrong color if your white balance is set incorrectly. If you manually set your white balance for incandescent light and then take pictures under daylight, you'll end up with the same bluish pictures a film photographer gets when using indoor film in outdoor illumination.

In both cases, Elements' Photo Filter adjustment can provide a quick fix. You can also add Wratten 80- and 82-series filters to go the other way, correcting outdoor film (or white-balance settings) for incandescent illumination. The Filter > Adjustments > Photo Filter dialog box looks like Figure 2.42.

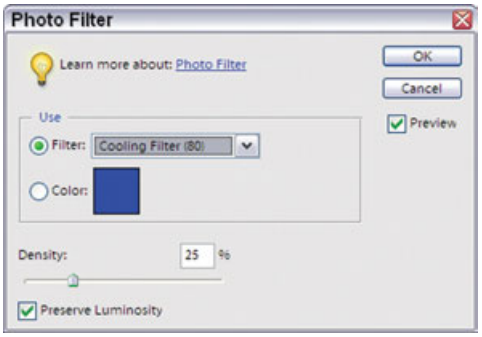


Figure 2.42 *The Photo Filter dialog box has 18 different color filters to choose from.*

You can choose any of 18 different filters, or click the color patch in the dialog box and select a custom hue from Elements' Color Picker. You can also specify the degree of density for the filter (increasing or decreasing the effect) and direct Elements to change only the color, while preserving the brightness of the original image. Figure 2.43 shows an action picture taken under incandescent illumination, and then corrected using Elements' 80-series Photo Filter. While I think Elements' traditional color correction techniques (described more completely in Chapter 6) are better, you can have some fun with this new Photo Filter capability.

If you know in advance that you want a special color effect, you can sometimes apply color filters using a digital camera's built-in effects filter capabilities. Check out your camera's instruction manual to see if you have that option.

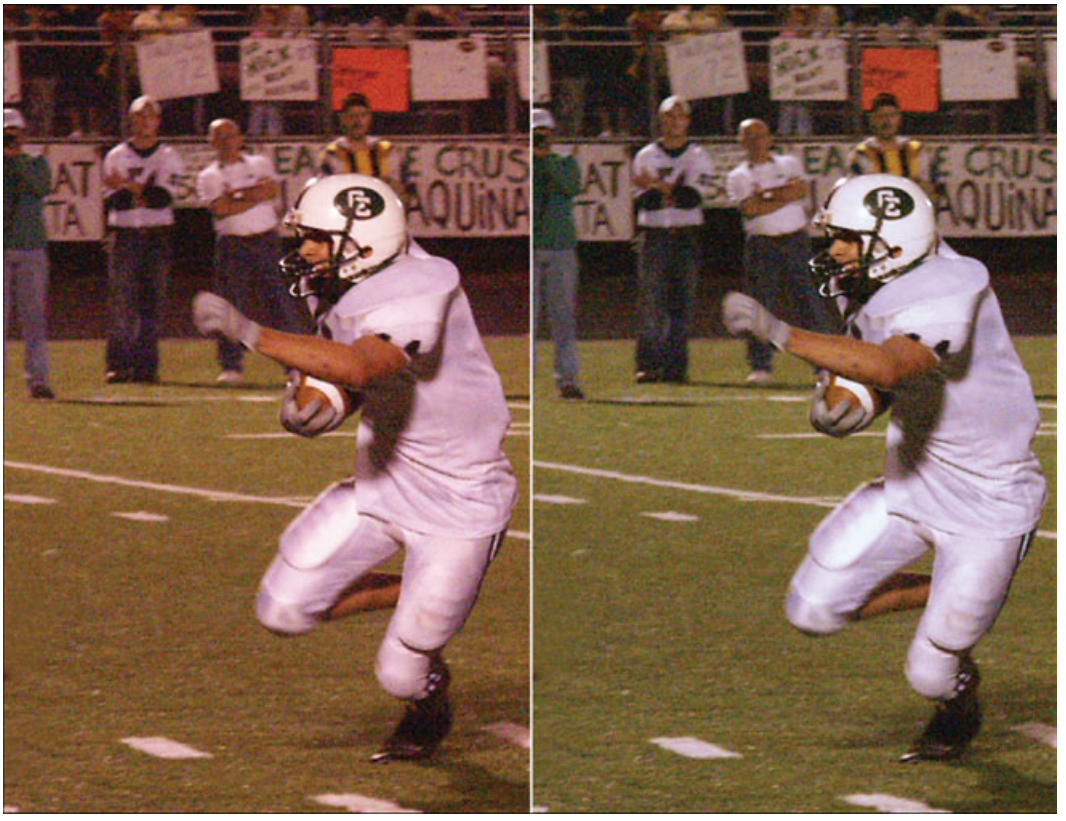


Figure 2.43 *Shot under incandescent illumination, this photo has been corrected using Elements' Photo Filter capability.*

Next Up

We'll encounter other lens and camera techniques in some of the other chapters. But next, it's time to venture into the digital darkroom to learn how to reproduce time-honored processing techniques with Elements.

3

Darkroom Techniques with Photoshop Elements

The photographic darkroom seems certain to follow the non-automatic camera into oblivion. The semi-serious amateur photographer, who set up and used a basic darkroom outfit to gain greater control over his or her photographic output today, if still using film, can fine-tune images at the local retail photofinisher's minilab/kiosk setup. More serious shooters who put in regular hours in the darkroom have probably switched to sophisticated digital cameras. Today, darkrooms are used primarily by those who absolutely must use film, or who enjoy the traditional techniques for producing fine art photos, extreme enlargements, or other specialized kinds of prints.

For virtually all of my pre-digital life, I maintained a darkroom, starting with the 16 square-foot bedroom closet I converted into a black-and-white and color printing lab while still in high school. Even today, I have a Beseler 23c enlarger set up in my basement (although I haven't used it in years) and a 5 × 7 enlarger out in my garage that hasn't been fired up in more than a decade. For most of us, the fun and drudgery of laboring in the murk of a musty darkroom, surrounded by humid, acid-tinged odors and an eye-straining pale yellow glow, are distant memories. Yet, despite an environment that would drive a claustrophobe nuts, miracles were created in the darkroom, and magical images often emerged from behind the heavy black curtain or rotating door.

Fortunately, there's no need to throw the spectacular images out with the stopbath water. Photoshop Elements includes a whole raft of features that let you re-create the most useful darkroom techniques quickly and repeatably, without risk of wasting film, paper, or chemicals. You can even manipulate your digital "negatives" using your digital camera's RAW format.

This chapter will show you some of the advanced darkroom techniques that you can put to work using Elements' awesome capabilities.

Manipulating Digital Negatives

Although you may be working with images scanned from film or print, it's almost equally likely that much of your Elements fodder will come from pictures captured with a digital camera. If that's the case, you should know that your digital camera may be capable of producing three different types of image files, all of which are well-suited for enhancing within Photoshop Elements. You can learn more about them in my books *Mastering Digital Photography* and *Mastering Digital SLR Photography*. I'll provide a summary in this section of some of the information detailed in those books.

All digital cameras produce by default JPEG files, which are the most efficient in terms of use of space. JPEG files can be stored at various quality levels, which depend on the amount of compression used. You can opt for tiny files that sacrifice detail or larger files that preserve most of the information in your original image.

Many advanced cameras can also save in TIFF format, which, although compressed, discards none of the information in the final image file. However, both JPEG and TIFF files are quite different from the original information captured by the camera. They have been processed by the camera's software as the raw data is converted to either JPEG or TIFF format and saved onto your flash memory card or other camera media. The settings you have made in your camera, in terms of white balance, color, sharpening, and so forth, are all applied to the raw image data. You can make some adjustments to the image later using Photoshop Elements, but you are always working with an image that has *already been processed*, sometimes heavily.

The information captured at the moment of exposure can also be stored in a proprietary, native format designed by your camera's manufacturer. These formats differ from camera to camera, but are called Camera RAW, or just RAW for convenience. Your camera's vendor may apply a special name or file extension of its own to this format, such as Nikon's .nef or Konica Minolta's .mrw nomenclature. These "digital negatives" contain all the original information grabbed by your camera's sensor with no compression, sharpening, or other processing. Many cameras cannot save in RAW format; you'll find this feature on the higher-end amateur, semipro, and professional cameras.

Each camera vendor's products save images in a proprietary RAW format, which, in some cases (such as Nikon and Canon) are TIFF files with special information embedded. Other cameras produce more esoteric RAW files. All RAW files require special software provided by the camera vendor or a third-party application that can interpret the files.

Photoshop Elements 3.0's RAW Support

Photoshop Elements, like Photoshop CS, now includes a Camera RAW plug-in (which was formerly an extra-cost option available only for Photoshop) that works quite well. It can be used only with the particular digital cameras that Adobe supports, typically from Nikon, Canon, or Konica Minolta.

The list of officially supported cameras at the time this book was published is a long one, shown in Table 3.1. You can also expect that camera models introduced after Photoshop Elements 3.0 from the same vendors are also supported. Plus, you may find that some older cameras not officially supported, such as the Kodak DCS-460, are nevertheless compatible. You can find the latest updates that list compatible cameras at www.adobe.com.

Table 3.1 RAW Camera Formats Supported by Photoshop Elements

Camera Vendor	*Models Supported*	
Canon	EOS-1D	EOS-1Ds
	EOS-1D MARK II	EOS 10D
	EOS D30	EOS D60
	EOS 300D	(Digital Rebel/Kiss Digital)
	PowerShot 600	PowerShot A5
	PowerShot A50	PowerShot Pro 1
	PowerShot S30	PowerShot S40
	PowerShot S45	PowerShot S50
	PowerShot G1	PowerShot G2
	PowerShot G3	PowerShot G5
	PowerShot Pro70	PowerShot Pro90 IS
Nikon	D1	D1H
	D1X	D100
	D2H	D70
	D2X	Coolpix 5700
	Coolpix 8700	Coolpix 5000 (with firmware version 1.7)
Konica Minolta	DiMAGE A1	DiMAGE A2
	DiMAGE 5	DiMAGE 7
	DiMAGE 7i	DiMAGE 7Hi
	Maxxum 7D	
Fujifilm	FinePix F700	FinePix S5000 Z
	FinePix S7000 Z	FinePix S2 Pro
Olympus	E-10	E-1
	E-20	C-5050 Zoom
	C-5060 Zoom	C-8080 Wide Zoom
Leaf	Valeo 6	Valeo 11
	Valeo 22	
Contax	N Digital	

Table 3.1 RAW Camera Formats Supported by Photoshop Elements (continued)

Camera Vendor	*Models Supported*	
Kodak	DCS 14n DCS720x DCS Pro SLR/n	DCS Pro 14nx DCS760
Leica	Digilux 2	
Panasonic	DMC-LC1	
Pentax	*ist D	
Sigma	SD9	SD10
Sony	DSC-F828	

Using the Camera RAW Plug-In

Elements' Camera RAW plug-in is one of the import modules found in the File menu. To open a RAW image in Photoshop Elements, just follow these steps:

1. Transfer the RAW images from your camera to your computer's hard drive.
2. In Elements, choose Open from the File menu.
3. Select a RAW image file. (You can also choose a RAW image from a media card or other storage, or even just drag it to the Elements application to open the file.) The Camera RAW plug-in will pop up, showing a preview of the image, like the one shown in Figure 3.1.

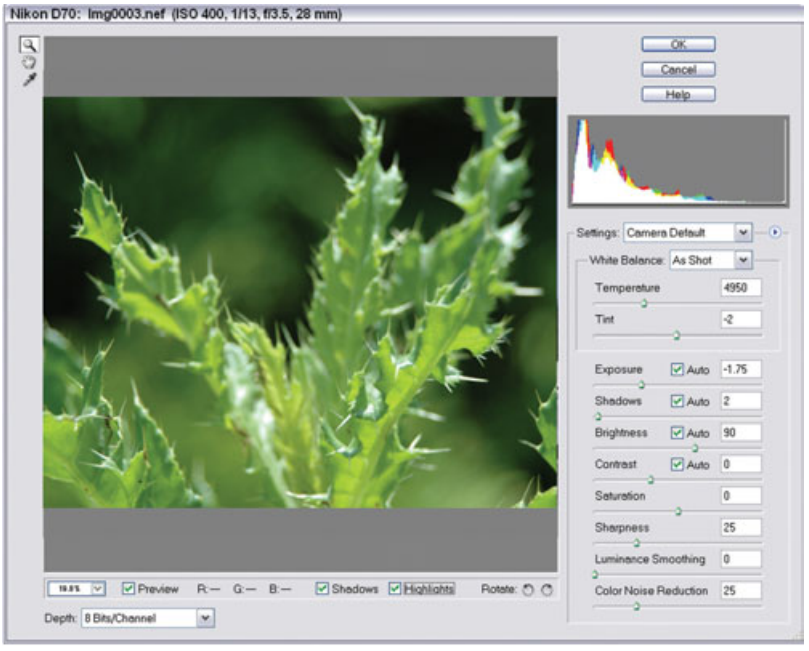


Figure 3.1 *Photoshop Elements' Camera RAW filter provides a wealth of options.*

4. If necessary, rotate the preview image using the Rotate Preview buttons just below and to the right of the preview window.
5. Zoom in and out using the Zoom tool.
6. Make other adjustments (described in more detail below).
7. Click OK to load the image into Elements using the settings you've made.

Elements' Camera RAW plug-in lets you manipulate many of the settings you can control within your camera. I'm using the Nikon D70 as an example here. Your camera probably has similar RAW file settings that can be worked with. Here are some of the most common attributes you can change. This is an overview only. Check your Elements HELP files for more detailed information on using these controls. I'll also be providing you with information on color correction, exposure compensation, saturation, and other parameters in later chapters of this book. I'll address these topics with respect to Photoshop Elements, but the same concepts apply to the manipulations you can make within the Camera RAW plug-in. Note that the Camera RAW plug-in within Elements provides fewer choices than the same plug-in when used with Photoshop CS. That's because some of the settings are not considered particularly useful to Elements users who probably chose this image editor at least partially to avoid some of the complexity Photoshop provides.

- *Depth*. Here you'll choose 8 bits or 16 bits per color channel. Photoshop Elements now supports a few functions using 16-bit channels, so you might want to preserve the full color depth of information available. Some camera files automatically default to the 16-bit option. Most of the time you'll want to convert to 8-bit channels for compatibility with all of Elements' features.
- *White balance*. You can change this to a value such as Daylight, Cloudy, Shade, Tungsten, Fluorescent, or Flash, or leave it at As Shot, which would be whatever white balance was set by your camera (either automatically or manually). If you like, you can set a custom white balance using the Temperature and Tint sliders.
- *Exposure*. This slider adjusts the overall brightness and darkness of the image. Watch the histogram display at the top of the column change as you make this adjustment, as well as those for the four sliders that follow.
- *Shadows*. This slider adjusts the shadows of your image.
- *Brightness*. This slider adjusts the brightness and darkness of your image, similarly to the Exposure slider, except that the lightest and darkest areas are clipped off, based on your Exposure and Shadow settings, as you move the control.
- *Contrast*. This control manipulates the contrast of the midtones of your image. Adobe recommends using this control after setting the Exposure, Shadows, and Brightness.
- *Saturation*. Here you can manipulate the richness of the color, from zero saturation (gray, no color) at the –100 setting to double the usual saturation at the +100 setting.
- *Sharpness*. This slider applies a type of unsharp masking using a sophisticated algorithm that takes into account the camera you're using, the ISO rating you used, and other factors. If you're planning on further editing the image in Photoshop Elements, Adobe recommends not applying sharpening to the RAW image.

- *Luminance Smoothing/Color Noise Reduction*. Both these sliders reduce the noise that often results from using higher ISO ratings. Each control works with a different kind of noise. Luminance noise is the noise caused by differences in brightness, whereas color noise results from variations in chroma.
- *View "Problem" shadows/highlights*. There are two boxes at the bottom of the dialog box that will let you display potential problem areas in the shadows and/or highlights of your image. When marked, shadows or highlights that may lose detail when the image is opened will be highlighted.

Additional controls available within Photoshop CS include:

- *Color Space*. It's possible your digital camera lets you choose from among several different color space profiles, such as Adobe RGB or sRGB. The RAW file will be saved by the camera using the camera's native color space. You can change to another color space.
- *Pixel Size*. Usually, you'll choose to open the image at the same resolution it was recorded at. If you plan to resample to a larger or smaller size, you might find that carrying out this step on the RAW file yields better results because of the new algorithm incorporated in this version of the plug-in.
- *Resolution*. This is the resolution that will be used to *print* the image. You can change the printing resolution to 300 or 600 pixels per inch (or some other value) to match your printer.
- *Lens Tab settings*. These are technical adjustments you can use to compensate for weaknesses in your lens' design. Most of us don't have the slightest idea what these are, which is why we're using Photoshop Elements instead of Photoshop CS in the first place.
- *Calibrate Tab settings*. These settings let you make calibrations in the way the Camera RAW plug-in adjusts hues, saturation, or shadow tints. If you consistently find your images end up too red, blue, or green, or have a color cast in the shadows, Photoshop CS users can make an adjustment here.

Film Development Techniques

Some of the most interesting, and, unfortunately, permanent, visual special effects can be achieved by doing abusive things to your film during development, including exposing your latent images to light, boiling the film, overdeveloping it, or plunging it into icy cold water. Back when film was popular, these techniques found their way into many darkroom workers' repertoire. As you might guess, none of these processes are very forgiving. Developing the film a few seconds too long, exposing it to a bit too much light during processing, raising the temperature of the developer a few degrees too much, or any of a dozen other "errors" can change the results you get dramatically. After you've tried out the effects that follow, you'll wish you had Elements' Undo features available for conventional film processing.

Solarization

Solarization is a process which, like the reticulation technique discussed in the next section, started out as a disastrous error that some photographers soon adopted as a creative technique.

Wildly popular as a means of adding a psychedelic look to photos of rock bands in the late '60s, solarization lives on as a creative tool in Photoshop Elements. Before I show you how to achieve this effect, let's have a little refresher for those who may have seen traditional solarization many times, but are a little uncertain on how it is achieved. You may be a little surprised.

First of all, what we usually call solarization isn't necessarily the same phenomenon as what was initially given the solarization tag at all. First discovered in the 19th century, solarization was originally a particular appearance caused by extreme overexposure, which reversed some tones of an image, such as the glare of the sun reflecting from a shiny object. No chicanery in the darkroom was required. In the 20th century, some photographers, including Ansel Adams and Man Ray, took advantage of this technique to produce some memorable pictures in which the brightest object in their images, the sun, appeared as a completely black disk. At the time those innovators worked, an exposure of five to ten times normal was required to create the solarization effect. Modern films are designed to resist solarization and require an exposure at least 10,000 times as strong to generate the effect, making overexposure solarization something of a rarity.

A somewhat different look, sometimes called the *Sabattier effect* to differentiate it from overexposure solarization, was discovered to occur when partially developed film or paper is exposed to light and then more completely developed. This happens frequently when a clumsy third party (or the chagrined photographer) accidentally turns on a light at the wrong time. The resulting image is part positive and part negative, an interesting mixture that gives it a psychedelic look. Color or black-and-white film as well as prints can all be solarized, but finding the right combination of development and "accidental" exposure is tricky and difficult to repeat. For that reason, in the conventional photography realm you'll most often see descriptions of how to solarize prints, because, if you spoil a print, you can easily make another and solarize it, as well. However, the most striking solarization effect comes from manipulating film, and that can get expensive very quickly. Fortunately, Photoshop Elements lets you experiment to your heart's content, and takes all the error out of trial and error.

Figure 3.2 *This image has lots of bright colors, making it great for solarization effects.*

Using Elements' Solarize Filter

Follow these steps to solarize an image using the Solarize filter. Start with the Clown Filter image from the Web site, or use your own photo. I chose this particular image, shown in Figure 3.2, because it has lots of bright, saturated colors that clearly demonstrate the effects of solarization.

1. Select Filter > Stylize > Solarize. This filter is a single-step filter with no dialog box or settings to make.
2. You'll get a dark, murky image with some tones reversed. Immediately apply Enhance > Auto Levels to produce the more viewable picture shown in Figure 3.3.
3. The black background is still a little disconcerting, so you might want to use the Magic Wand selection tool to select the background, then hold down the Shift key and click inside the black areas within the largest filter on the right side of the image, too. Then choose Filter > Adjustments > Invert to convert the black background to white, as shown in Figure 3.4.
4. Although the Solarize filter doesn't have any controls, you can still customize your solarization. Choose Enhance > Adjust Color > Adjust Hue/Saturation (or press Ctrl/Command + U) to produce the Hue/Saturation dialog box shown in Figure 3.5.
5. Move the Saturation slider to the right to increase the richness of the colors, according to your taste.
6. Move the Hue slider to the left or right to modify the colors to get an effect you like.
7. Click OK to apply your changes.

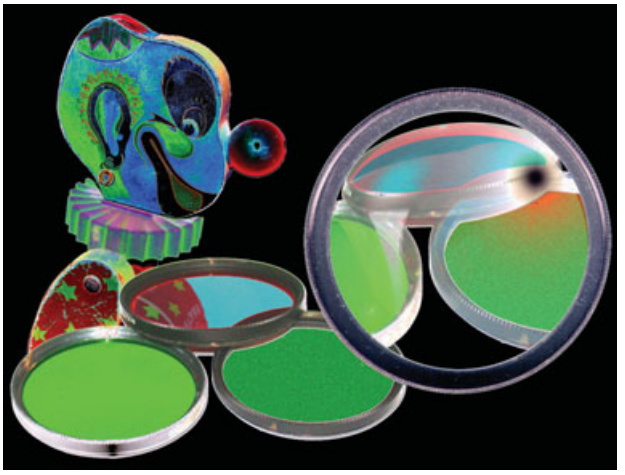


Figure 3.3 *This solarized image has its levels adjusted automatically.*

Figure 3.4 *Inverting the colors of the background produces a more viewable image like this one.*

Reticulation

Reticulation is another one of those darkroom processes that can either ruin your film or generate some "I meant to do that"-style images. It results from rapid temperature changes during development. As you probably know, conventional photographic film consists of a silver-rich (and relatively soft) gelatin emulsion coated on a thin, but tough substrate such as polyester. When developing black-and-white film is moved from a warm developer to a significantly cooler solution, the soft gelatin warps in strange-looking patterns and the grain in the image increases dramatically. The result is an interesting texture that can be used as a creative tool.

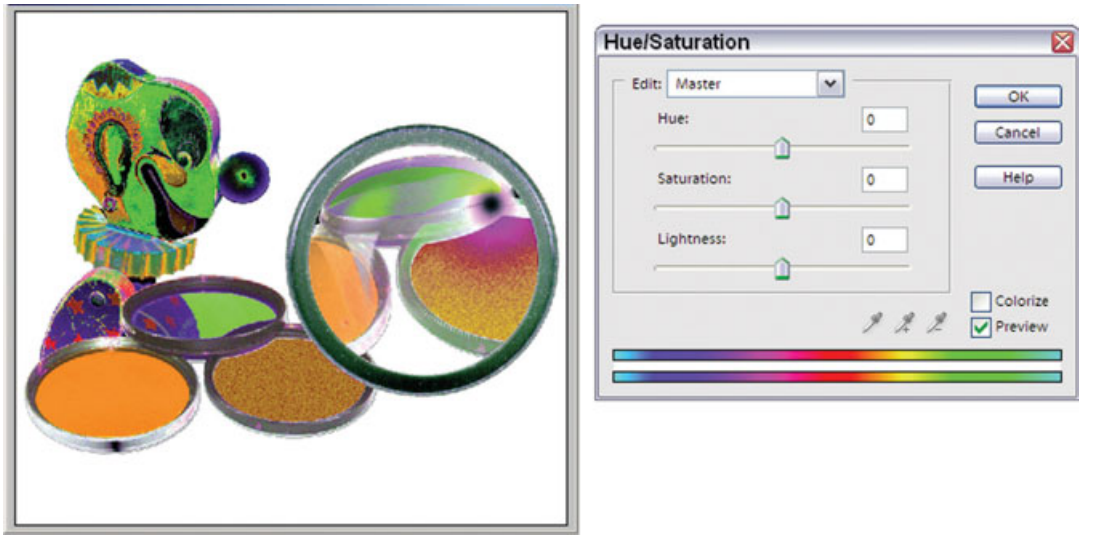


Figure 3.5 *Use the Hue/Saturation dialog box to enrich the colors.*

Like solarization, reticulation effects are difficult to plan or duplicate. In the darkroom, a slow-working developer is used at, say, 100 degrees instead of the more usual 68 to 75 degrees, and its action is stopped by plunging the film into ice-cold water or acidic stop bath, prior to normal fixing and washing. Done properly, and with a bit of luck, you'll end up with some interesting film effects. With bad luck, you may end up with emulsion that slides right off your film substrate, as has happened to me a few times.

There's no such danger when using Photoshop Elements to produce reticulation. While this effect is considered a black-and-white process (rapid changes in temperature ruin color film in ways that are rarely artistic), I'm going to show you a way to get the same look in full color. We're going to use an image called Tower, shown in Figure 3.6, which you'll find on the Web site. Or, you can use your own image. When you've loaded your image into Elements, just follow these steps.

1. Choose Layer > Duplicate Layer to create a copy of the main tower layer.

Figure 3.6 *Start with this image to begin the reticulation process.*

2. Choose Filter > Sketch > Reticulation to produce the Reticulation dialog box of the Filter Gallery, as shown in Figure 3.7.
3. Change the Density slider to a value of 9, Foreground Level to 22, and Background Level to 22 (although you're free to experiment with different settings).
4. Click OK to apply the filter. You'll find that the texture looks very much like real reticulation. If you'd like to see reticulation in color, you need to merge this reticulated black-and-white version with the original color image in the layer below.

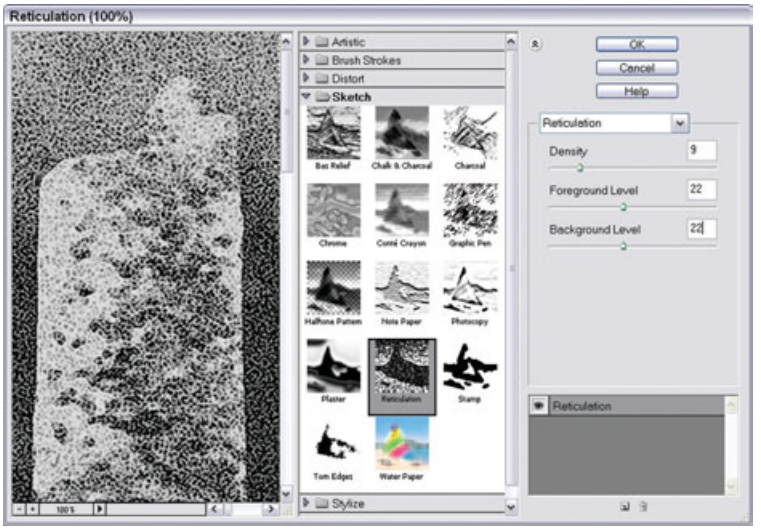


Figure 3.7 *Change the Density, Foreground Level, and Background Level controls.*

5. To create a color reticulation, make sure the black-and-white reticulated layer is selected in the Layers Palette, then choose Color Dodge from the drop-down layer modes list at the top of the palette, as shown in Figure 3.8. This merging mode allows the color of the underlying layer to show through, while retaining the reticulated texture of the layer on top.

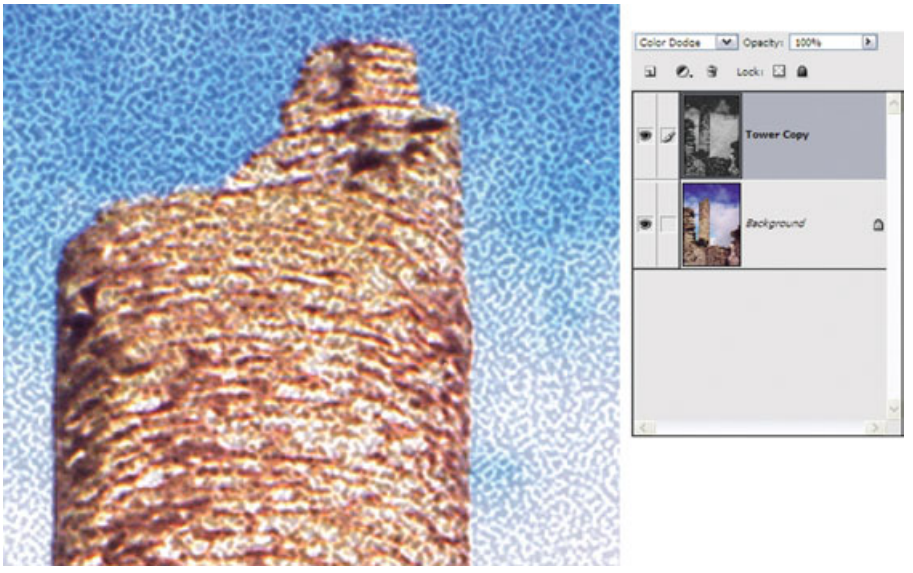


Figure 3.8 *Use Color Dodge to merge the black-and-white reticulated image with the color image in the layer below.*

High-Contrast Images

Many years ago, some well-meaning soul discovered that super-high-contrast images had an interesting, minimalist look that stripped images down to their bare bones. Andy Warhol, although not best known as a photographer, used this effect in his work, including his famous Marilyn Monroe series. Indeed, high contrast images are easy to achieve simply by using lithographic films intended for reproducing line art.

Litho films have a built in "threshold" that must be exceeded before an image is formed. That is, if a portion of an image is below the brightness threshold of the film, it won't register at all. If the portion of an image is above that threshold level, it is recorded as black. Figure 3.9 shows a black-and-white image at left, with a high-contrast version at right. While this example could have been produced using lithographic film, Photoshop Elements lets you do much the same thing without resorting to special films and litho developers.

Figure 3.9 *A normal black-and-white image (left) and a high-contrast version (right).*

High-contrast images can be created in color or black and white, and can consist of just two or three tones (for example, black and white, or white and a color or two) or may encompass more tones to create a poster-like effect. The important thing to remember when choosing a subject for a high-contrast image is to make sure that the most important part of the subject matter has one of the lightest tones in an image. As the contrast is boosted, the dark tones and most midtone areas will become black, while the very lightest tones will remain white. If your key subject matter is too dark, it will turn black along with the other mid- and deep-tones and not be visible in your finished image.

You can easily create high-contrast images by manipulating Elements' brightness and contrast controls. Select Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast, and then manipulate the brightness and contrast sliders to get the effect you want. The contrast control determines the

number of different tones in the final image. A typical black-and-white image contains up to 256 different tones; moving the contrast slider to the right reduces that number gradually until, when it reaches 100%, you're left with only black and white. The brightness control adjusts the lightness of all the tones in an image, making the darkest tones brighter and the lightest tones gradually so bright they merge into white. Figure 3.10 shows a series of six versions of the same image, with the contrast set at 25%, 35%, 50% (top row), and 65%, 75%, 85% (bottom row). If you compare the individual images side by side, you can easily see how details are gradually lost as the increase in contrast moves them across the threshold boundary and they change from gray to black or white.

In Figure 3.11 you can see the effect of adjusting the brightness control. The image at top left is the basic head shot at the 50% contrast level. The next three have brightness set for 25%, 50%, and 75%. Learn to use these controls to provide the exact look you want. Often, a 100% black/white image is not the best looking one.

Figure 3.10 *Here are six versions of the same image with the contrast set at 25%, 35%, and 50% (top row), and 65%, 75%, 85% (bottom row).*

Figure 3.11 *Here, the brightness has been adjusted from 25 to 75%.*

High Contrast with Levels

You can use Elements' Levels dialog box to give yourself a lot more control over your high-contrast image than the Brightness/Contrast controls alone. This can be especially important when you're working with a color image, because you can adjust the contrast of each of the three primary RGB colors separately.

The Levels dialog box, shown in Figure 3.12, provides a different way of adjusting brightness and contrast. The graph is called a histogram and is used to measure the numbers of pixels at each of 256 brightness levels. Each vertical line in the graph represents the number of pixels in the image for each brightness value, from 0 (black) on the left to 255 (white) on the right. The vertical axis measures that number of pixels at each level. There are three triangles at the bottom of the graph, representing the black point (darkest shadows), midtone point, and white point (the brightest highlights). How these are used will become clearer shortly.

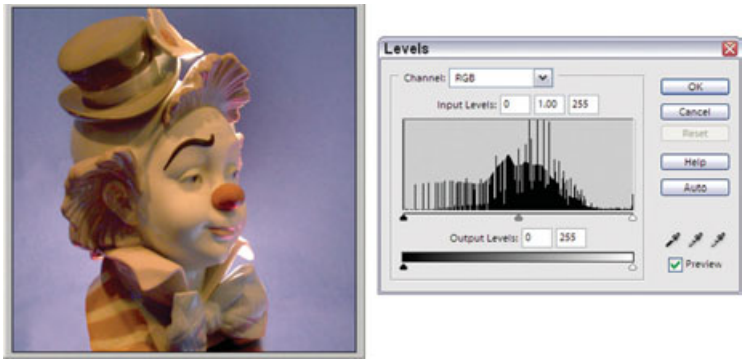


Figure 3.12 *The Levels dialog box is used to adjust brightness and contrast using a histogram.*

This histogram shows that most of the pixels are concentrated in the center of the histogram, with relatively few very dark pixels (on the left) or very light pixels (on the right). If we wanted to make the best use of the available tones, we'd move the black triangle on the left to a point that better represents where the darkest pixels are in the image, and the white triangle on the right to a point that represents where the image actually contains some light pixels, as shown in the upper dialog box in Figure 3.13. The result would be a "better" image, producing a histogram more like the lower one shown in the figure. Notice that the tones are spread more evenly in the graph.

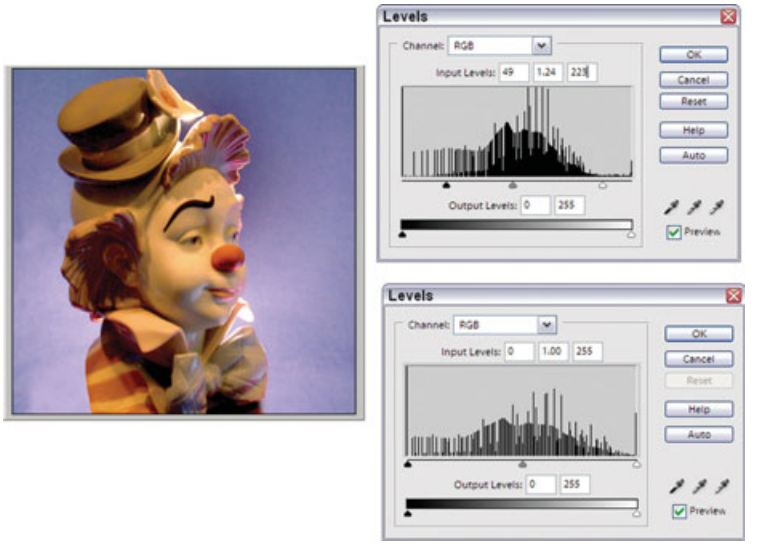


Figure 3.13 *Adjusting the black, midtone, and white points distributes the tones more evenly.*

Ah, but when working with high-contrast images, the concept of "better" differs slightly from the ideal. Instead, if we pulled the three triangles together, as shown in Figure 3.14, the brightest and darkest tones in the original image are ignored, and the emphasis is placed on a narrow range of midtones, producing the results you see. Move the white, midpoint, and black sliders to experiment with

different effects. Concentrating them at the left side of the histogram produces a high-contrast, very light image, while bunching them up at the right side of the histogram produces a high-contrast, dark image, as you can see in Figures 3.15 and 3.16.

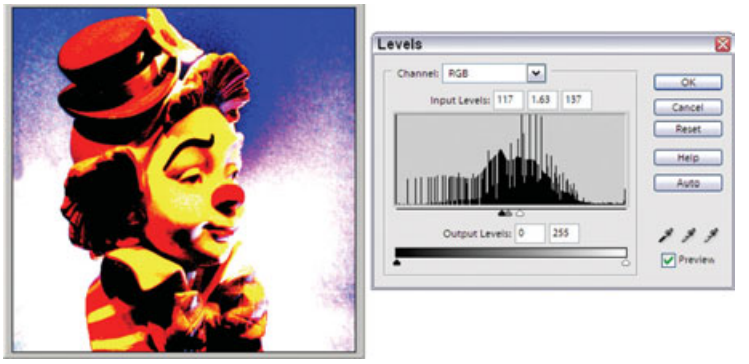


Figure 3.14 *Clustering the black, midtone, and white point triangles together produces a high-contrast image.*

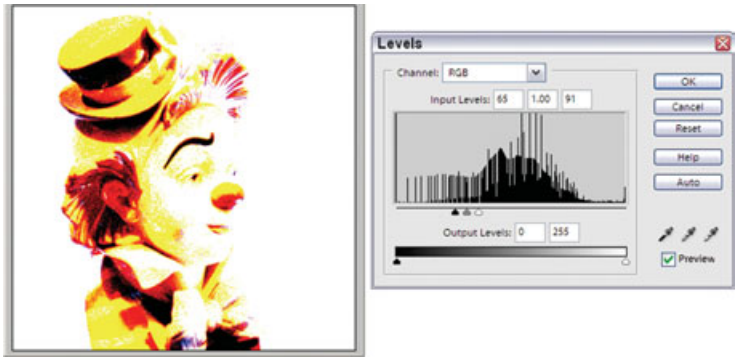


Figure 3.15 *Clustering the points on the left side produces a high-contrast, light image.*

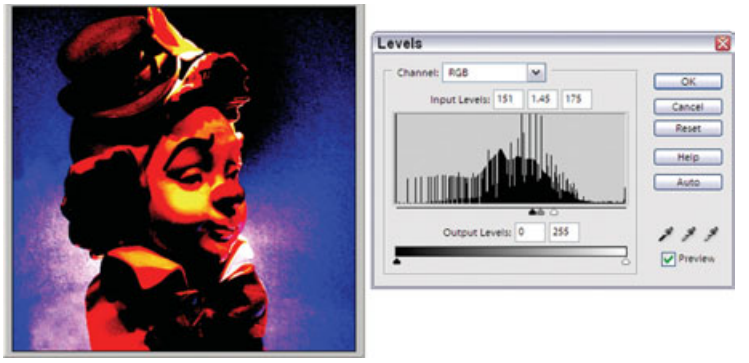


Figure 3.16 *Clustering the points on the right side produces a high-contrast, dark image.*

You can see that experimenting with the Levels controls can produce a wide variety of high-contrast results. You can even apply the level adjustments to each of the individual red, green, and blue color channels to create spectacular color effects even as you adjust the contrast.

WORKING WITH ADJUSTMENT LAYERS

For maximum flexibility, create an Adjustment layer using Levels as the control (select Layer > New Adjustment Layer > Levels) to let you play with the levels without making any permanent changes in your image. The Adjustment layer appears in the Layer palette with a special icon, shown in Figure 3.17. You can access the layer's Levels dialog box at any time by double-clicking the icon. When you're satisfied with the result, flatten the image before saving. Adjustment layers can be used with the Brightness/Contrast and Hue/Saturation controls you've also used in this chapter.

Figure 3.17 *Access an Adjustment layer by clicking its icon in the Layer palette.*

High Contrast with Elements' Posterize Command

Photoshop Elements' Posterize command can also be used to create high-contrast images. Its dialog box (accessed by choosing Filter > Adjustments > Posterize) has only one parameter: You type in the number of different tones in your final image. In practice, once you include more than about 16, the image tends to look like an ordinary photograph. Figure 3.18 shows our clown rendered in 4, 8, 12, and 16 different levels.

Figure 3.18 *Elements' Posterize command produces effects like these at 4, 8, 12, and 16 different levels of color.*

Grainy Images

Film grain is an inescapable fact of life in conventional photography, as clumps of silver grain are roughly the equivalent of the pixel in digital imaging. Generally speaking, the larger the grains of silver in a film, the more sensitive that film is to light, and the better able it is to capture images in reduced lighting or with faster shutter speeds and/or smaller lens openings. In the never-ending quest to increase the exposure "speed" of films, grain has been a frequent byproduct. Given the "if you can't beat 'em, join 'em" attitude of photographers, grain itself has found a place as a creative tool. Grain can mask defects in a person's face and, like high contrast (which often goes hand-in-hand with grainy pictures) reduces an image to its bare essentials.

In conventional photography, extra grain can be produced in several different ways. You can use a faster, inherently grainer film, or underexpose your film and then use longer processing times to make the grains that were exposed (usually the largest, clumpiest grains) visible. Warm developer solutions or even "grainy" overlays used to add grain to an image as it is printed are other options.

Photoshop Elements offers several different ways of creating grain effects. Figure 3.19 shows the dialog boxes for Add Noise, and Mezzotint filters. Figures 3.20 and 3.21 show the dialog box for the Film Grain and Grain filters. (Note that the different size of these dialog boxes results from the Film Grain and Grain filters being included in Photoshop Elements' new Filter Gallery, while the Add Noise and Mezzotint filters use the old-style dialog boxes.) All these work best with black-and-white images, as adding grain effects to color photos generally produces unnatural-looking results.

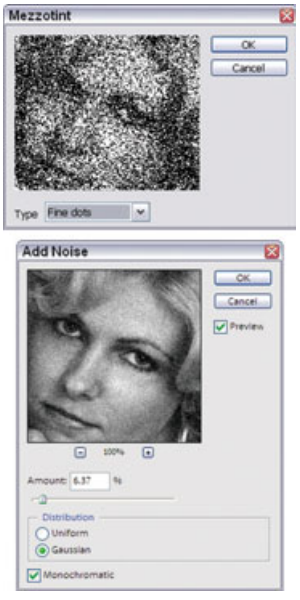


Figure 3.19 *The Mezzotint and Add Noise filters each produce different grain effects.*

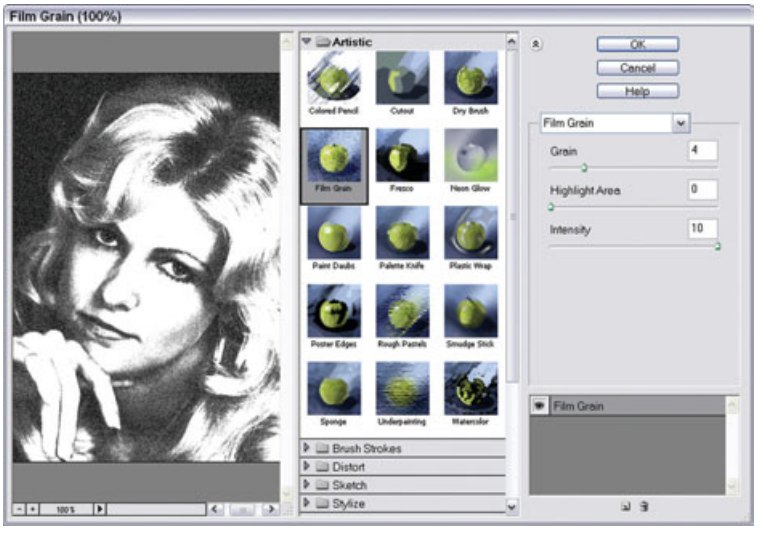


Figure 3.20 *Another look can be achieved with the Film Grain filter.*

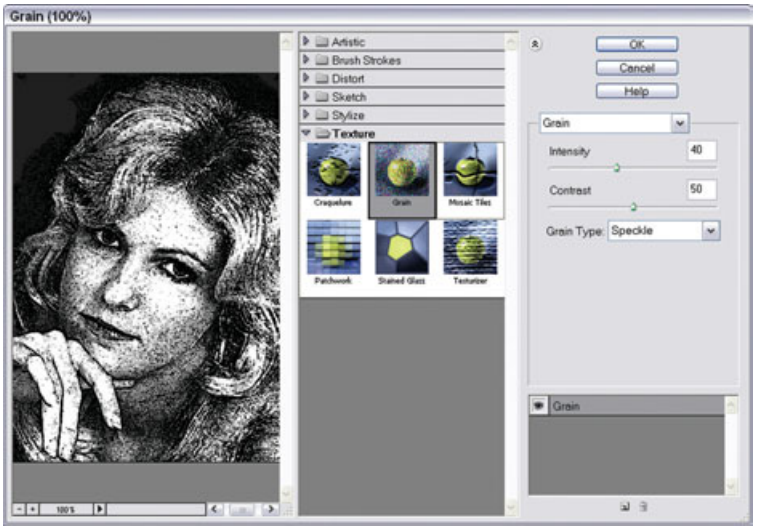


Figure 3.21 *The Grain filter produces a fourth look.*

Mezzotint

The Mezzotint filter is another technique borrowed from traditional printing, in which a special overlay is placed on top of a photograph to add a pattern during duplication. Digital filters offer much the same effect with a little less flexibility, since the range of mezzotints you can achieve with Elements is fairly limited. Only dots (fine, medium, grainy, or coarse), lines, or strokes (in short, medium, and long varieties) can be applied. You can rotate your image, apply this filter, and then rotate it back to the original orientation if you want to change the direction of the lines or strokes.

Add Noise

The Add Noise filter has one slider, a pair of radio buttons, and a checkbox. You can select an Amount from 1 to 999 (the default value is 32). This value is used to determine how much the random colors added to the selection will vary from the color that is already present (or from the gray tones, if you're working with a monochrome image).

Choose either Uniform or Gaussian distribution of the noise. Uniform distribution uses random numbers in the range from 0 to the number you specified with the Amount slider. The random number is then added to the color value of the pixel to arrive at the noise amount for that pixel. Gaussian distribution uses a bell-shaped curve calculated from the values of the pixels in the selected area, producing a more pronounced speckling effect.

Mark the Monochromatic box to apply the noise only to the brightness/darkness elements of the image without modifying the colors themselves. This can reduce the "color specks" effect that often results from applying noise to a color image.

Film Grain

This filter has three slider controls. You can adjust the amount of Grain, the size of the Highlight area, and the Intensity of the highlights. The Grain setting controls the density of what appear to be random little black grains that are sprinkled throughout your image. The higher the value, the more details of your image obscured by the grain overlay. Since the Film Grain filter applies more grain to the highlights than to the shadows and midtones, the Highlight Area slider determines how many tones are considered highlights; at higher values, virtually all of the image is given the full treatment. The Intensity slider controls how strongly the grain is applied to the highlight areas. This filter is found under Artistic filters.

Grain

While the Film Grain filter adjusts the amount of grain and how the granules are applied to highlights, the Grain plug-in works with contrast (the darkness of the grain in relation to the image area surrounding it) plus the shape of the granules. You can also control how much grain is added. The 10 available types of grain cover several varieties often seen in photographs, plus some new ones that offer imaginative artistic effects. You can choose from regular, soft, sprinkles, clumped, contrasty, enlarged, stippled, horizontal, vertical, or speckle grain patterns. It's sometimes difficult to tell the difference between some of these effects. For example, the Stippled effect uses foreground and background colors to create grain, while Sprinkles uses just the foreground color. This second grain filter is found under Texture filters.

Figure 3.22 shows examples of grain effects produced by the Film Grain, Grain, Add Noise, and Mezzotint filters.

Diffuse Glow

My favorite of all Elements' "grain" effects is the Diffuse Glow filter, which can produce a radiant luminescence in any image. The glow seems to suffuse from the subject and fill the picture with a wonderful luster, while softening harsh details. It's great for romantic portraits, or for lending a fantasy air to landscapes. Diffuse Glow works equally well with color and black-and-white images, using the dialog box controls shown in Figure 3.23.

WHY TWO GRAIN FILTERS?

Why does Photoshop Elements include two filters called Film Grain and Grain, rather than one? In practice, each operates a little differently than the other, producing different effects, but we can thank the free enterprise system for their existence. Elements' current Film Grain filter was originally part of a third-party set of 16 compatible plug-ins for Photoshop called Aldus Gallery Effects, which sold for $199. These filters proved so successful that Aldus Corporation followed up with a second set of 16, which included the slightly different Grain filter. Soon after Aldus released the third Gallery Effects library, Adobe acquired the company (adding PageMaker to its product line along with Gallery Effects). The filters were sold by Adobe for a time, but disappeared as a separate product when they were folded into Photoshop 4.0. Adobe gradually added Photoshop's filter set to Photoshop Elements, so that Elements 3.0 now has virtually all the effects available in Photoshop CS.

Figure 3.22 *Various film grain effects. In the top row (left to right), the original image; Film Grain filter with Grain, Highlight Area, and Intensity all set to values of 5; Film Grain filter with settings of 10, 5, and 7. In the bottom row (left to right), Grain filter set to Speckle; Add Noise filter; and Mezzotint filter in Fine Dots mode, then faded to reduce the effect slightly.*

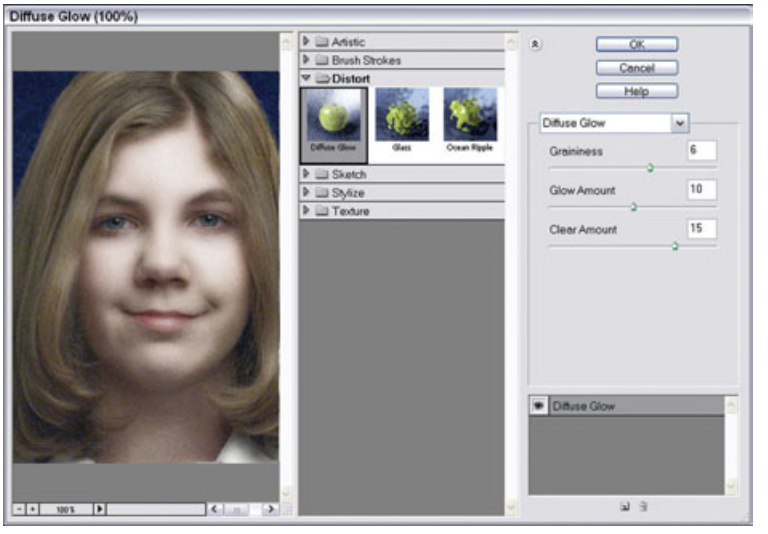


Figure 3.23 *The Diffuse Glow dialog box lets you control the amount of Grain, Glow, and Clear areas in your image.*

You can get a variety of effects by manipulating the filter's controls, such as the examples shown in Figure 3.24. The Graininess slider adds or reduces the amount of grain applied to an image. A large amount obscures unwanted detail and adds to the dreamy look of the image. The Glow Amount control adjusts the strength of the glow, as if you were turning up the voltage on a light source. The higher the setting, the more glow spread throughout your picture. The Clear Amount slider controls the size of the area in the image that is not affected by the glow. You can use this control with the Glow Amount slider to simultaneously specify how strong a glow effect is produced, as well as how much of the image is illuminated by it. The current background color becomes the color of the glow. That's an important point. Beginners sometimes forget this, and then wonder why their glow effect looks weird. If you want a glowing white effect, make sure the background color is white. Anything else will tint your image. You can use this feature to good advantage, by selecting background colors with a very slight tint of yellow, gold, or red to add a sunny or warm glow to your image.

Figure 3.24 *The original photo (top left) with three variations on the Diffuse Glow filter.*

In the examples, the portrait in the upper right has the Graininess control set to 5, the Glow Amount control set to 10, and the Clear amount set to 20. At lower left the diffusion is less obvious, and the contrast not quite as high, producing a romantic fuzziness that doesn't take over the entire picture. I used Graininess, Glow amount, and Clear amount settings of 1, 4, and 12, respectively. Finally, for the example in lower right I concentrated the attention on the model's eyes by using settings of 7, 15, and 10, and then merging the layer with a copy of the original, unmodified layer, using the Layer palette's Merge drop-down list set to Lighten. In that mode, Elements looks at each pixel in the two layers and uses the lightest pixel for the final image. The resulting picture is very washed out and grainy with an interesting high-contrast appearance.

Printing Techniques

The fun doesn't stop when the film is developed and hanging from clothespins. There are many different things in the darkroom that you can do to your images while they are being printed. Those of us who rely on digital output hardcopies can still enjoy the pleasure of fine-tuning pictures in the digital darkroom. Here are a few techniques to work with.

Dodging/Burning

Color and black-and-white prints are traditionally made using an enlarger, which casts an image of the film onto a photosensitive sheet of paper for a carefully calculated number of seconds. For about as long as photographers have been making prints they have also been sticking their fingers, hands, or other objects in the light path to reduce the relative exposure of one part of an image (dodging) while increasing it in another (burning). The result is either an image in which the light and dark tones in an image are more evenly balanced or, in some cases, deliberately changed to provide a different appearance (as with vignetting, discussed next).

Cupped hands with a gap between them are often used to burn parts of an image. The darkroom worker is able to keep the hands moving, varying the size and position of the opening, to blend the burned areas with their surroundings. A hand can also be used to hold back, or dodge part of an image, but it's more common to use a home-made dodging tool (such as a piece of cardboard fastened to a length of coat hanger wire) or one purchased from a photo dealer so the adjustment can be made only to a portion of the image in the center portions.

Because the image being exposed on the paper is visible, and the length of the overall exposure known, the printer is able to adjust the tones quite precisely. For example, with a 60-second exposure, a portion of the image that needs to be lightened or darkened can be dodged or burned in roughly 5 or 10 second increments by viewing the enlarger's timer while working. The amount of dodging or burning required comes from experience, usually gained by redoing a print that hasn't been manipulated properly.

It also was widely believed that some small changes could be made in black-and-white prints by fiddling with the paper development, usually by controlling how the paper went into the developer, by rubbing portions of the paper with the fingers (to generate heat and "faster" development of that portion), as well as through mystical incantations. The alchemists among us sometimes used potassium ferricyanide bleach to lighten specific areas, but that was before that particular chemical gained a bad rep because of its mutagenic properties.

Today, you can do the same magic with Photoshop Elements. You can use the image editor's built-in dodging and burning tools, or create a selection mask and adjust the brightness using controls like Brightness/Contrast. Open the file lighthouse.pcx from the Web site, or use your own image, and follow these steps. My original image looks like Figure 3.25.

Figure 3.25 *The original lighthouse photo looks like this.*

1. Use Layer > Duplicate Layer to create a copy of the background layer.
2. Choose the Burn tool from the Tool palette, and make the following adjustments in the Options bar: Choose a 65-pixel soft brush, set the Range drop-down list to Highlights, and set the Exposure slider to 15%. This will let you darken the brick wall in front of the lighthouse gradually by painting carefully. The low exposure setting means the changes won't be dramatic, and by choosing Highlights as the range, your darkening will be applied mostly to the lightest areas of the wall. Figure 3.26 shows the results you can expect.

Figure 3.26 *After burning, the wall will look like this.*

3. You can also darken by painting a selection mask using the Selection Brush and using Elements' Levels or Brightness/Contrast controls on the selected portion.
4. Choose Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast and adjust the sliders to darken the left side of the lighthouse. Don't move the Brightness slider too far to the left, or you'll eliminate the dramatic lighting entirely. We just want to reduce the excessive contrast. I used a value of –17 %.
5. Use the Dodge tool to lighten the front face of the lighthouse, producing the result you see in Figure 3.27 at right. The original image is shown at left.

Figure 3.27 *After the walls of the lighthouse have been dodged and burned, the image should resemble the one at right. The original is shown at left for comparison.*

Vignetting

Here's a quickie. Vignetting, in which the corners and edges of an image are significantly lighter or darker than the center, can be produced in a number of ways outside the darkroom. A lens hood that is too small for the field-of-view of the lens it is used with can produce a vignette effect unintentionally. The photographer can shoot through a hole or other aperture to create a vignette, too. Or, you can dodge the image while it's being printed to achieve the same end. Photoshop Elements is as good an option as any, and better than most, especially if you want a fine degree of control over your vignettes.

Figure 3.28 *First, drag a selection oval to outline the vignette boundaries.*

The easiest way to create a vignette in Photoshop Elements is to paint a selection, and then use the Brightness/Darkness controls to darken the edges. However, you'll get a more regular, feathered mask if you use the following technique:

1. Use the file eagle.pcx from the Web site, or work with a photo of your own.
2. Select the Elliptical Marquee tool and drag an oval selection like the one shown in Figure 3.28.
3. Invert the selection by pressing Shift + Ctrl/Command + I.
4. Choose Select > Feather (or press Alt/Option + Ctrl/Command + D), and type in 40 as the pixel value for feathering your selection.
5. Create one kind of vignette by filling the selection with black, or create a more 3D vignette by first filling the selection with gray, and then refilling it with black. Figure 3.29 shows both finished products.

Figure 3.29 *After feathering the selection, fill it to create the vignette look.*

Sepia Toning

In one sense, color photography predated black-and-white photography by a number of years. Early photographic processes like the daguerreotype all had sepia or bluish tinges to them. It took awhile before truly color-neutral black-and-white photography became possible. We still equate sepia toning with old-timey photography. Who hasn't donned Civil War attire to pose for a family portrait reproduced in rich browns and light tans? While in modern times it's been necessary to use special toning solutions in the darkroom to achieve a warm sepia look, Photoshop Elements can do the same thing with very little trouble. Try out the effect using the image sepia.pcx from the Web site, or use your own photo. Just follow these steps.

1. If you start with a black-and-white image, like the one shown in Figure 3.30, choose Image > Mode > RGB Color to convert it to a full color image.
2. Next, choose Enhance > Adjust Color > Adjust Hue/Saturation, or press Ctrl/Command + U to produce the Hue/Saturation dialog box.
3. Click the Colorize button, and then move the Hue slider to the 20 position for a sepia tone, or any other position on the scale for a blue, green, or yellow tone, as you prefer.
4. Move the Saturation slider to enrich the tone. Click OK to apply the toning effect.

5. Use the Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast controls to give the image a somewhat washed-out, old-timey look if you like. The finished photo should resemble Figure 3.31.

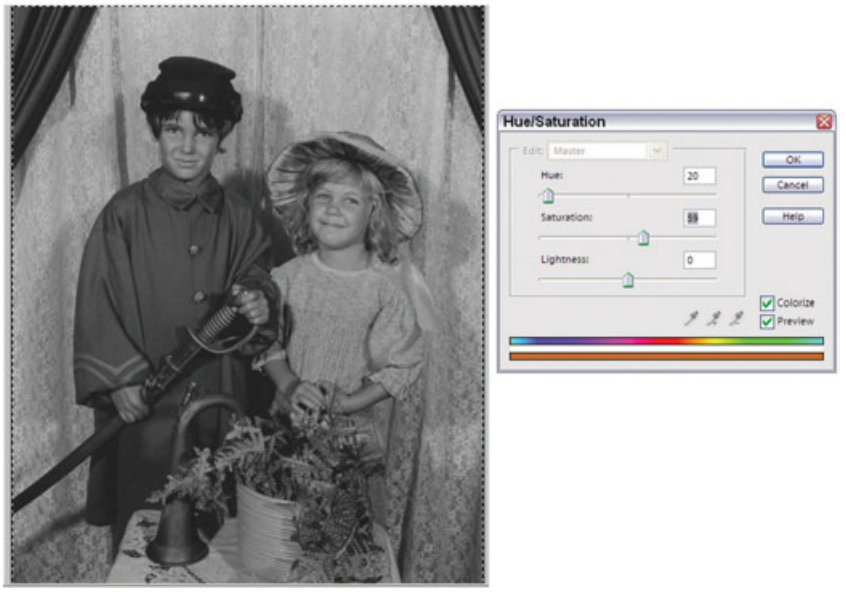


Figure 3.30 *Start with a black-and-white image, and use Elements' Hue/Saturation controls to add a tone.*

Figure 3.31 *Finish the effect with some extra contrast to give the photo an old-timey look.*

Automatically Crop and Straighten Photos

Photoshop Elements added a great automation tool called Straighten Image and Straighten and Crop Image, which can be a lifesaver if you capture a photo with your scanner and then discover that the picture wasn't squarely lined up on the scanner bed. You can also use this tool to fix digital photos you might have taken with the camera held askew. This one's so easy that I'll simply provide a list of the steps to carry out. There are no dialog boxes to mess with, or any other parameters to choose. Just follow these steps:

1. Load the image you want to realign into Elements. I used the portrait shown at left in Figure 3.32. The feature works best with images that have clearly defined horizontal and vertical lines at the edges.
2. Use Image > Resize > Canvas Size and add some space around the photo to give Elements some working room.
3. Choose Image > Rotate > Straighten and Crop Image. Photoshop Elements rotates your image to straighten it, then crops around the vertical and horizontal borders it used to align the image. What could be simpler?

Figure 3.32 *At left, a slightly skewed photograph. At right, Photoshop Elements has straightened the image out and cropped it to fit.*

Next Up

Retouching is another time-honored photographic endeavor that's part art and part craft. Photoshop Elements gives all of us a fighting chance to do some decent retouching, as you'll learn in the next chapter.

4

Secrets of Retouching

You probably first became acutely aware of the process of photo retouching when you were in high school, when it came time to exchange wallet-sized senior portraits with your friends, and your parents proudly displayed an 8 × 10 or larger version on the mantel in the family room. At that point, you probably noticed that none of your classmates looked anything like their pictures, and were *glad* that you didn't resemble yours. However, once adolescence passes, the only time you may give any serious thought to the topic of retouching is when you see your ugly passport picture, or enlarge one of your prize photos up to 11 × 14 or larger. Either event can cause you to stop, peer at the image with a critical eye, and say, "can't we do something about this?"

With Photoshop Elements, you can. Retouching is a common technique now, and one that's become particularly easy with Elements. I'm going to divide what you may think of as retouching into two chapters, to account for two very different kinds of picture-manipulation procedures. This chapter will deal with methods for correcting defects in an image without performing major modifications, such as eliminating dust or other artifacts, fixing small problems with your subject matter, or adjusting minor tonal variations. More dramatic manipulations, as when you add entire objects or people, combine two images to create one, or make other major changes will wait for the next chapter, "Combining Images with Compositing."

If you want to learn more about retouching (and compositing), check out my book *Digital Retouching and Compositing*, also from Course Technology. Many of the sections in this book are worthy of exploration in entire chapters of their own, so that's what I did in my *Digital Retouching* book. While it was written for Photoshop CS, you'll find that many of the tips and techniques also apply to Photoshop Elements. However, I think you'll find most of what you need right here.

Retouching, the Old Way

Even in the pre-digital image editing, manual labor era, retouching was a lot more common than you might think. Advertising photography, for example, involves millions of dollars in fees, so a few thousand dollars for retouching is small change. An art director might have sketched a layout on a piece of translucent media placed on the focus screen of a large format camera and then used by the photographer to arrange the subjects just so. Then, the finished transparency (or, more likely, a duplicate of it) might be painstakingly retouched with dyes so the colors are perfect and to remove every small defect. It's not an exaggeration to say that every important advertising still image you've seen has been retouched in some way.

Retouching has also been common in portraiture, because few faces are perfect, and even visages that *are* perfect don't necessarily photograph that way. Retouching is a convenient way to touch up portraits without resorting to irreversible camera techniques, such as using detail-obscuring filters or other tricks.

Another kind of retouching, called "spotting," is used to touch up the inevitable dust spots and other artifacts that appear in enlargements made from film or scanned images, particularly those made from small originals. The cleanest negative or slide, and the most spotless scanner bed inevitably will still be plagued by a few dust spots here or there. Any time you make a print larger than 5 × 7 of, say, a 35mm negative, tiny spots that were invisible on the original film will loom as huge as Godzilla when blown up ten times or more. It's always a good idea to clean your film before printing it, clean your print or film before scanning, and direct a little dust-busting effort to your scanner before grabbing an image, but there's a cleanliness point of diminishing returns after which a few seconds with a spotting brush or pen can fix things quickly.

Three types of photographic media are commonly retouched: negative film, transparencies, and prints. Here's a brief description of each. I'm including more detail than you really need to know to demonstrate just how technically demanding old-fashioned retouching can be.

Retouching Negatives

With negative film, it makes sense to retouch the original before you make prints, because all the changes will be reflected in each of the resulting prints. Black-and-white negatives, because they consist of a single image layer, can be retouched using etching knives, reducing chemicals, and bleaches, as well as pigments. Color negatives consist of separate layers for each color of the image, so those remedies are not practical. However, color negs can be retouched with colored dyes, black lead, colored pencils, or a combination of dyes and pencils. Color negatives have an overall orange or red tint to them (masks which optimize color reproduction), and all negatives have their colors and tones reversed. On a negative, dust spots are dark but leave white marks on the print. Retouchers often must make a proof print to use as a guideline. Even experienced retouchers may have to view a color negative through different colored filters to evaluate areas being retouched. I can't emphasize how much skill negative retouching requires. For example, to correct prominent veins in a portrait, the retoucher has to learn to look for yellow-orange lines on the subject's face, and obscure them with cyan dye or blue pencil.

Retouching Transparencies

Color transparencies ("chromes," as the pros refer to them) are a little easier to retouch in one way, because the image looks more like the subject it is supposed to represent. (Of course "easier" is a relative term. No film retouching is for novices.) Chromes can be retouched using bleaches, dyes, or both (although when using both the bleaching needs to be done first). It's possible to use selective bleaching to remove one color at a time (there are special bleaches for each color). Overall bleaching reduces each of the three colors in an image by an equal amount, and total bleaching removes all the colors in an area. Bleached areas can even be partially restored ("regenerated" is the term), which makes the process a little forgiving. Cyan, magenta, and yellow dyes can be used to retouch transparencies, too. Special dyes that match the original transparency dyes both visually and when the chrome is reproduced must be used. In days of yore there were additional hair-raising retouching techniques that involved major surgery on the transparency (quite literally) using cutting knives and butting portions of the transparency together.

Retouching Prints

Color and black-and-white prints can be retouched, and often are, if the original negative is too small for the detailed work that must be done. Dyes, pencils, airbrushes, or any other way of applying tone can be used for retouching prints. If a pigment will stick to paper, it's probably been used to retouch prints.

Simple print retouching can be done by non-professionals, in a pinch. Unless the print is the only copy of the image, a new print can always be made from the original negative or transparency. So, before digital imaging came along, you sometimes saw amateurs dabbling in print retouching, usually because it was comparatively easy and often fun to do.

Serious retouching has always involved a great deal of artistic skill as the retoucher painted or drew changes on the film or paper, and the training required to achieve that skill could easily be as extensive as for any other area of photography. Elements doesn't eliminate the need for artistic skill, but it does make any retouching change you make more easily reversible. So, even those of us whose sketches look like we had the pencil taped to our elbows can spend as much time as we need to make our images look their best.

Retouching, the New Way

Today, virtually all the retouched images you see reproduced in advertising and magazines have been manipulated digitally. Indeed, Adobe image editors, such as Photoshop for the pros and Photoshop Elements for the rest of us, have become the tools of choice for virtually all retouching. The most common application for traditional retouching skills today is in the field of hand-coloring, using the venerable Marshall's Photo Coloring System of pigments, photo oils, spot colors, retouch pencils, and other products. However, Elements is becoming a mainstay in that arena, too.

I'm going to show you some of the most common applications for retouching, and then take you through a typical project. Most images will require more than one type of retouching, so fixing several problems with a single photo is a more realistic way of demonstrating these techniques in the real world. Let's look at the most common problems, first, before moving on to the solutions. I'll use two different photos to give you a broader experience.

Figure 4.1 shows the high-school senior portrait I took of my middle son (prior to his blue hair period). This is the unretouched version, and while it might look okay to you thanks to the inevitable loss of detail wrought by the offset printing process, there are lots of things that needed to be done to it before it was ready to frame and set on the mantel. The results are good enough that my youngest son, who just became a senior as I was writing this, is reluctantly leaning towards giving me a chance to do *his* portrait as well.

Figure 4.1 *This basic portrait has plenty of room for improvement.*

Dust Spots

Even the most carefully printed photos will always have a few white dust spots that need touching up. If you then digitize your print using a scanner, you'll probably pick up a few dust spots from the scanner bed's glass, as well. Scanned transparencies will show black spots instead of white. The dust is actually the same color in both cases, and varies only because the image is captured by reflected light in the former case, and transmitted light in the latter. Digital cameras are not immune to "dust" spots, either. You may pick up artifacts in your digital image from a defect in your camera's sensor or other mysterious electronic phenomena. Figure 4.2 shows a close-up of the portrait with lots of dust showing. You probably won't have to eliminate quite so much dust, but dust spots are quite common, and have to be dealt with.

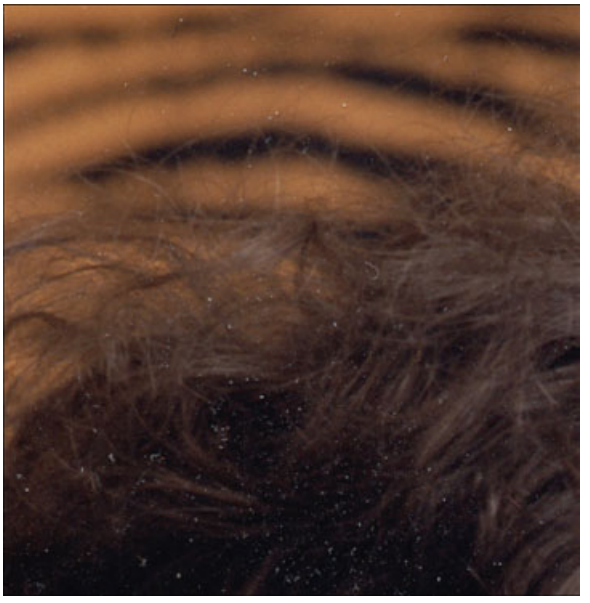


Figure 4.2 *Your photos probably won't be this dusty, but some photos are.*

Double Catchlights

Photographers know that catchlights in the eyes are the key to making a portrait subject look alive and vibrant. It's the moisture on the cornea catching reflections from the lights that give eyes their sparkle. Without catchlights, even a smiling portrait looks wooden and unrealistic. We may not even know what's wrong until it's pointed out to us. Figure 4.3 shows our portrait with the catchlights removed. Compare it with Figure 4.1, and you'll see what I mean.

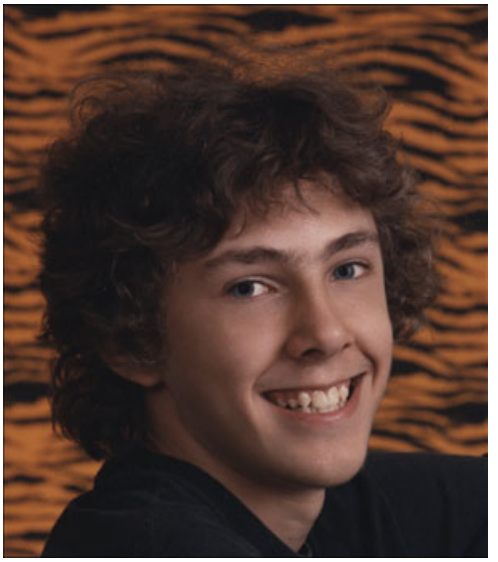


Figure 4.3 *No catchlights at all mean dead-looking eyes and a dull appearance.*

The original photo does have catchlights. The problem is it has too many of them, as you can see in Figure 4.4. Although the portrait is an informal one, it was shot in a studio, and if you look closely, you can probably make out the outlines of the two umbrella reflectors I used to light the picture. You'll see quite a few octagonal photo umbrellas reflected in the eyes of portrait subjects as catchlights. Sometimes the reflections are used as a creative element, showing up as a glamorous studio-oriented element in the lenses of wrap-around sunglasses.

In theory, we're most accustomed to seeing square, window-shaped catchlights in eyes, but, in practice, the round catchlights aren't especially distracting. Two catchlights do look wrong, however, so if you have a pair this obvious in your own photos, you'll want to learn how to remove them during digital retouching.

Figure 4.4 *Dual catchlights are almost as bad as none at all.*

Other Defects

Other common defects in photographs that are susceptible to retouching include skin blemishes (in portraits), areas that are too dark or too light, and objects that need to be removed. Many photos have many or all of these. Indeed, it's common to mark up a proof print with a grease pencil, as shown in Figure 4.5, so the retoucher will know exactly what needs to be done.

The finished, retouched portrait looks like Figure 4.6, with all the suggested fixes applied. It's not perfect (I still wish I'd used a touch of a hair light and some background lighting when I took the picture), but it's a great improvement.

Figure 4.5 *You may want to mark up a proof print to make sure you don't miss any area that needs retouching.*

Figure 4.6 *After retouching, the portrait looks like this.*

MARKING UP DIGITAL IMAGES

You don't need a grease pencil to mark up your digital images. If your photograph was taken with a digital camera or has already been scanned, you can use Elements' layers feature to mark up your image without actually changing it. Press Shift + Ctrl/Command + N and create a new, empty layer "above" the image layer of your photograph. Then, use Elements' Text tool to write comments on the empty layer. If you have more than one person meddling with your photo, you can choose different color text for their "notes." Make the layer invisible when you no longer need to view the instructions on the comment layer. Figure 4.7 shows a typical marked up digital image.

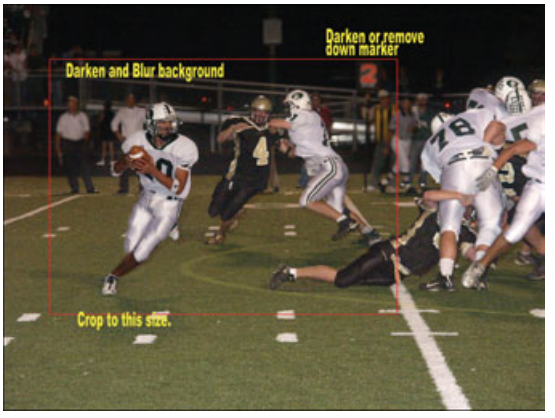


Figure 4.7 *Digital images can be marked up, too, using Elements' layer features.*

Tackling a Retouching Project

I'm going to show you how to retouch a typical picture, using a different photograph. You can use my image, Mardi Gras, downloaded from the Web site, or one of your own, if you like. You'll be spotting dust, removing objects, and performing other retouching magic in no time. But first, learn how to save yourself some time.

Avoiding Retouching

The best martial arts choreographer and philosopher of my generation, Li Xiaolong, espoused the "art of fighting without fighting." Bruce Lee's approach works equally well in the photographic realm. The most effective way to retouch an image is to avoid the need for it in the first place. Here are some tips to help you minimize your retouching efforts.

- *Work with "clean" images*. Use your digital camera's best resolution and optimum ISO speed setting to produce images with the least amount of noise and artifacts that will need to be cleaned up. If you're working from conventional photographic images, use a lab that won't add dust to your negs or slides. If you have your lab convert your images to digital format, let them do the scan on the first visit, before your film has had a chance to pick up dust and dirt. If you scan your images yourself, clean off the print or film before scanning, and make sure your scanner glass is clean.
- *Watch your lighting when you take a photo*. High-contrast lighting accentuates defects in your subject, as does light that comes from the side. You may not always want to use soft, front lighting for your images because of creative reasons, but keep in mind that high-contrast effects can mean extra retouching later.
- *Check out your background and other parts of the picture before you shoot*. One of the most frequent needs for retouching arises from "mergers" where a tree or some other object appears to, say, grow out of the top of someone's head.
- *Double-check your composition*. If you have everything arranged the way you want, you won't need to move things around in Elements.

Many of the things we'll work on with our Mardi Gras picture could have been avoided if the photographer hadn't been looking specifically for a bad photo to use as a "before" picture for this book. The original image is shown in Figure 4.8. There is an entire panoply of things to fix in this picture, most of them easily discerned by the unaided eye. We'll tackle them one at a time.

Cropping

The first thing to do is crop the photo a little better to remove some of the extraneous stuff at all four sides of the photo. While you can simply make a rectangular selection with the Rectangular Marquee tool, and then choose Image > Crop, there's a better, more flexible way. Just follow these steps.

1. Choose the Crop tool from the Tool palette (or press C to switch to it). (The Crop tool looks like a pair of right-angles with a diagonal line through them.)

Figure 4.8 *A bad background is only one of the problems with this photo.*

2. Place the cursor in one corner in the image where you'd like to start cropping, and drag to the opposite corner. When you release the mouse button, a selection rectangle with handles in each of the four corners and midpoints of the selection lines appears, as you can see in Figure 4.9. The area outside the rectangle is darkened to make it easier to see what your composition will look like cropped.
3. To fine-tune your cropping, drag the handles in any direction to enlarge or reduce the size of the cropped area.
4. When you're ready to apply the cropped area, press Enter.

CROP TOOL TIPS

If you forget the shortcut letter for the Crop tool (or for any tool), just place the cursor on the tool to pop up a Tool Tip box with the tool's name and shortcut. You'll know if several tools are nested within a single icon by the triangle shown in the lower-right corner of the icon. Keep in mind that when you crop an image and change its proportions (called the *aspect ratio*) the image may no longer completely fill a standard-sized sheet of printing paper.

Figure 4.9 *The Crop tool helps you visualize how your trimmed image will look.*

Removing Dust

Elements includes several ways to remove dust spots and other artifacts from an image. Two of them, the Despeckle and Dust & Scratches filters, don't lend themselves to this particular image, so I'll describe them and get them out of the way first.

Despeckle

Despeckle is a clever filter that examines the pixels in your image, looking for areas with a great deal of contrast between them. In an image, such areas generally mark the boundaries of edges. When the Despeckle filter finds these edges, it leaves them alone and, instead, blurs other parts of the image. That produces lower overall sharpness in most of your image (the non-edge parts), which tends to blur any speckled areas so the speckles blend in. However, because the edges remain sharp, your image still may look acceptable. The Despeckle filter is a quick way to mask a lot of dust in images that contain many different spots. It can also work well to minimize the halftone dots that appear in scans of printed images. It works best in images that are fairly sharp to begin with, especially those that may have a bit of noise that can benefit from the blurring. It works worst with images that are not very sharp, because the blur effect can be objectionable. This filter has no controls to adjust. Simply select it from the Filter > Noise menu and see if it does the job.

Dust & Scratches

The Dust & Scratches filter is a smarter tool that actively seeks out areas of your image that contain spots and scratches. Elements performs this magic by looking at each pixel in the image, then moving out from that pixel radially, searching for abrupt transitions in tone that might

indicate a dust spot on the image. If a spot is found, only that area is blurred to minimize the appearance of the defect. This filter has two controls, shown in Figure 4.10.

The Radius slider adjusts the size of the area searched for the abrupt transition, measured in pixels. You can select from 1 to 16 pixels. If your image is full of dust spots, you might find a value of about four pixels useful, but for most pictures either a one or two-pixel radius should be sufficient. The larger the radius you select, the greater the blurring effect on your image, so you should use the smallest radius you can. The Threshold slider tells the filter just how extreme a transition must be before it should be considered a defect. Set the radius slider to the lowest setting that eliminates the spots in the preview window, and then adjust the Threshold slider up from zero until defects begin to reappear. The idea is to eliminate dust and scratches without adding too much blur to your image.

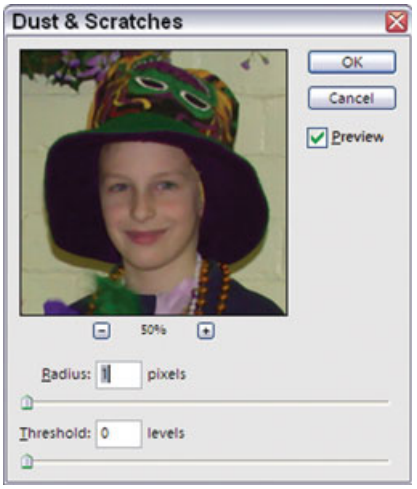


Figure 4.10 *The Dust & Scratches filter dialog box has two sliders and a preview window.*

Using the Clone Stamp

Our sample picture was taken with a digital camera and doesn't have dust spots. It does have some white spots that were possibly caused by some bad pixels in the sensor. We can erase these just as if they were dust spots; the same technique applies to both kinds of defects. With conventional photography, dust spots are covered up with spotting brushes or pens, and if the pen happens to match the color of the background the process can be quick and easy. With Elements, the process is even easier, because the Clone tool can be used to create a pen that automatically matches the color and texture surrounding the spot you are removing. That's because the Clone tool paints copies of those actual pixels. The Healing Brush tool, discussed next, does an even better job, but the Clone Stamp is fine for the following task, because it works much faster.

1. Use the Zoom tool (press Z to activate it) and zoom in on the image so you can see the spots well enough to work on them.
2. Next, choose the Clone Stamp tool (press S). (It looks like a rubber stamp.) Make sure the Aligned box at the right side of the Options bar is checked, and then choose a 13-pixel soft brush from the Brush drop-down menu, as shown in Figure 4.11.
3. Place the cursor near a spot that contains some image area with the same tone and texture as the area surrounding the spot, and click while holding down the Alt/Option key. Elements will now use the point where you clicked as the "source" for its cloning action.
4. Paint with the Clone Stamp's brush until you've covered up the spots, as shown in Figure 4.12.

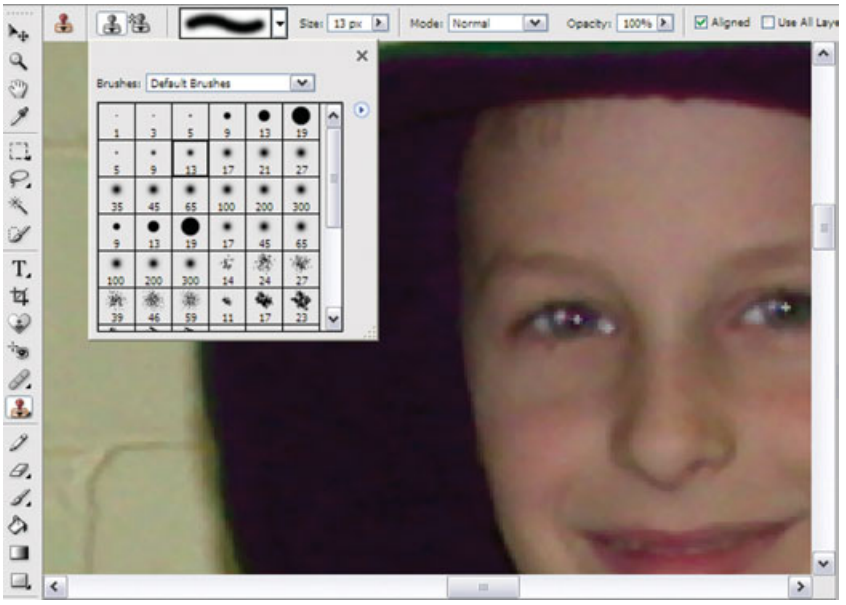


Figure 4.11 *Choose a 13-pixel soft brush from the drop-down menu.*

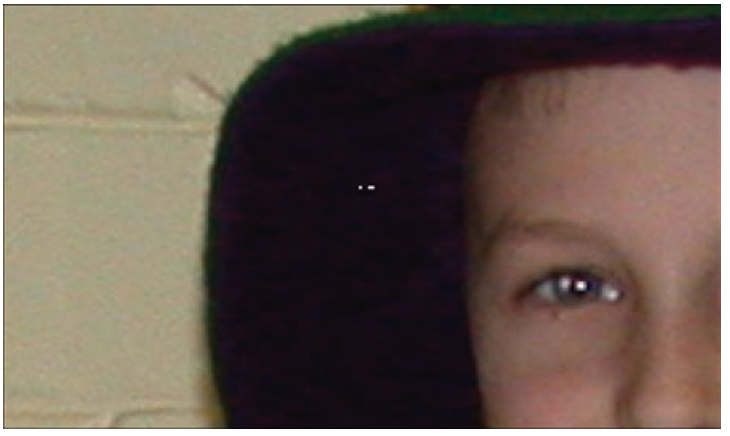


Figure 4.12 *A few brushes with the Clone Stamp and most of the spots are invisible. A few more dabs, and the last of them, located in the hat area just to the left of the boy's eyes, will vanish.*

MEET ELEMENTS' HEALING BRUSH

We're concentrating on the Clone Stamp tool in this chapter, because it is a basic, versatile tool that's quick to learn and easy to use, and you should be comfortable with it. However, Elements 3.0 introduced a new related tool, the Healing Brush (and its sibling, the Spot Healing Brush), which is both more sophisticated and more difficult to master. The advantage of the Healing Brush is that it takes into account the lighting, texture, and other aspects of an image when you clone from one layer to another within or between images or parts of images. That simplifies fixing defects without totally masking the underlying area. You'll learn how to use the Healing Brush later in this chapter.

Fixing Dual Catchlights

Here are those dual catchlights again, as shown in Figure 4.13. The brightest catchlight was caused by the electronic flash used to take the picture. The secondary catchlight can be blamed on a bright window behind the photographer. It's sometimes difficult to previsualize a picture well enough to realize that double catchlights are going to result (the main catchlight doesn't appear until the flash goes off, for example), so the easiest solution is simply to remove one of the reflections in Elements. Again, for a simple fix like this, the Clone tool is the best choice, because the Healing Brush uses complex algorithms to perform its magic, and that sort of effort is not needed for this simple task. All we need to do is blot out the offending reflection. Follow these steps.

Figure 4.13 *Dual catchlights need to be fixed.*

1. Press S to select the Clone Stamp tool.
2. Choose the brush size to the smallest fuzzy brush (the 5-pixel model), set Opacity to 66 percent, and make sure the Aligned box is marked.
3. Choose an origin point somewhere below the second reflection and Alt/Option click it.
4. Paint out the redundant catchlight. Because Opacity has been set to 66%, you can blend the pixels in smoothly so the cloning is not so obvious.
5. Repeat with all four kids to remove all their catchlights. Their eyes will look something like Figure 4.14.

Figure 4.14 *With the dual catchlights removed, the eyes look more normal and lifelike.*

ALIGNED/UNALIGNED

When the Aligned box is marked, Elements copies pixels from the point that you first marked as the source (by pressing Alt/Option when you clicked) to the point in the image where you begin cloning. Then, as you move away from that point, Elements uses the distance and direction the cursor moves from the cloning point to determine which pixels to copy. For example, if you move 1/4 inch up and to the left of the first point where you start painting, the Clone tool will copy pixels that are 1/4 inch up and to the left of the origin point. It doesn't matter if you stop painting and start again, unless you Alt/Option click again somewhere else, the origin point will be used as the reference point. When the Aligned box is not checked, each time you begin painting again, the origin point is used in the new location. Figure 4.15 shows what happens. In both cases, I clicked on the girl's shoe to set the origin point, and then began painting at a point above her knee. Then, I stopped painting, and resumed cloning at a point a little to the left. With the Aligned box checked, the soccer ball, located to the left of the girl's foot at the origin point, is cloned. With the Aligned box not checked, the Clone stamp begins painting her foot again.

Figure 4.15 *You can see the difference between Aligned and Unaligned cloning.*

Removing Unwanted Objects

I chose the best background that was available when I snapped this picture. I was even smart enough to ask my subjects to step three feet away from the painted brick wall, so the shadows from the flash would fall on the floor instead of the wall itself. However, there are still some objects in the picture that should be removed. The Clone Stamp can help by painting parts of the wall, or other subject matter, over the portions we want to remove or hide. Follow these steps to learn how to remove your ex-brother-in-law from those family reunion photos, or in this case, delete a picture that was securely taped to the wall.

1. Press Z to choose the Zoom tool, and zoom in on the boy's face with the picture on the wall behind him, as shown in Figure 4.16.
2. Press A to activate Selection Brush. In the Options bar, select Mask from the Mode drop-down list, and then choose the hard-edged 19-inch brush and paint a mask around the edge of the boy's hat, as you can see in Figure 4.17. This will protect the hat from accidentally being cloned onto.

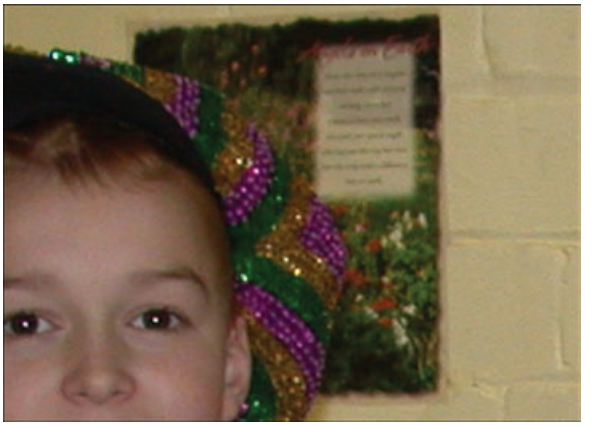


Figure 4.16 *Zoom in on the image area you are going to work on.*

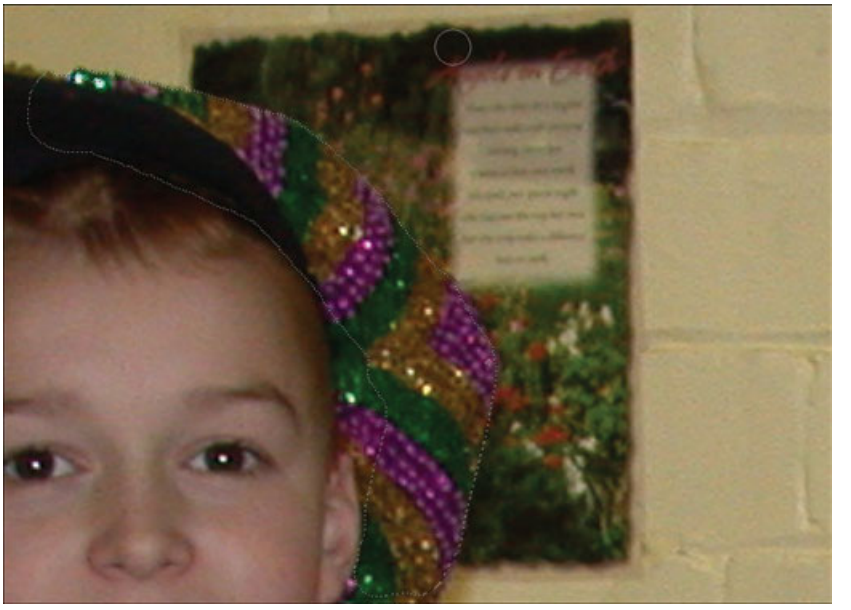


Figure 4.17 *Paint a mask to protect the hat from the cloning operation.*

3. Press S to choose the Clone Stamp tool, and then Alt/Option click somewhere in the area of the wall to the right of the boy's head. Make sure the Aligned box is checked. You should have Opacity set to 100%.
4. Use a soft-edged brush to paint the blank wall area into the part of the image occupied by the picture on the wall. Your image will begin to look like Figure 4.18. Try to choose your origin point and the spot where you begin painting so the lines on the wall will line up properly in the cloned area.

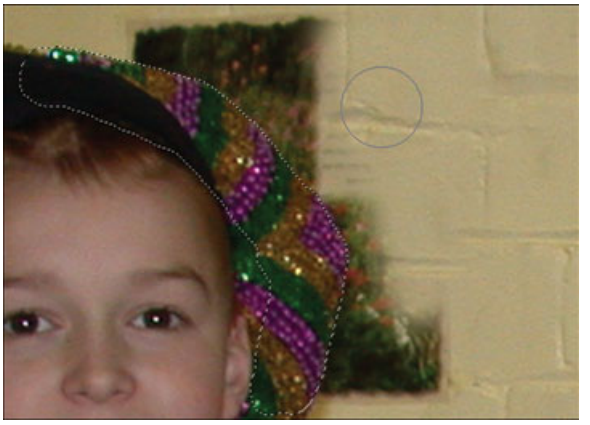


Figure 4.18 *Clone the blank wall into the area where the picture on the wall resides.*

5. When you're finished, remove the other extraneous objects from the image, using this same technique, as indicated in Figure 4.19. Figure 4.20 shows the finished image with the extra image area cloned out. The instructions to lighten parts of the image will be handled in the next section.

Figure 4.19 *Here are some other extraneous objects to be removed.*

Figure 4.20 *The retouched image looks like this, with the extra objects removed.*

Darkening and Lightening

Only a couple of fixes remain, and they don't require a great deal of instructions. To lighten the faces, all you need to do is use the Selection Brush (in Selection mode this time, chosen from the Options bar's Mode list). Paint a selection over each of the three left-most faces and the girl on the right's shirt, then use Elements' Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brighten/Contrast controls to lighten the three faces on the left to match that of the girl on the right. Figure 4.21 shows the final image with the brightness/contrast adjustments, plus the final movement of the boy on the left described below.

Moving Boy Over

It's difficult to get your models to stand exactly where you want them. The most frequent error amateur photographers make in group shots like this is to fail to have the subjects standing close enough together. Even seasoned pros can fall victim, especially when the subjects include a lively quartet of second-graders in which one or more of the boys doesn't especially want to *touch* one of the girls. Luckily, Elements makes it easy to move our subjects closer together, as I did in this case.

1. Use the Lasso selection tool to create a selection around the boy at the left. Select some of the wall area behind him, to make it easier to blend the boy back into the picture.
2. Press Ctrl/Command + C to copy the boy's figure, then press Ctrl/Command + V to paste him down in a new layer.

3. Press E to select the Eraser tool, and then remove part of the area surrounding the boy. Use a soft-edged eraser brush on the wall area at the right side of his head, and a harder-edged brush to erase his sleeve, so he can overlap the girl. Figure 4.21 shows what the partially erased layer should look like.
4. Use the cursor arrow keys to nudge the boy closer to the girl.
5. Flatten the image when you're satisfied, producing the final image shown in Figure 4.22.

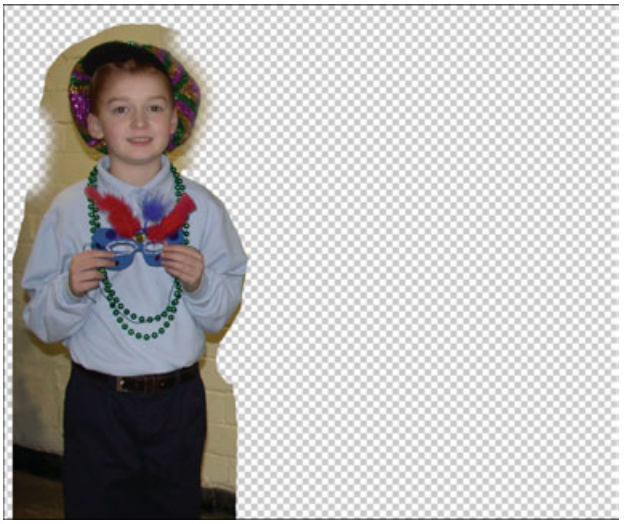


Figure 4.21 *After pasting the boy into his own layer, erase the area around him so he'll blend in.*

Figure 4.22 *The final image looks like this.*

Repairing Images with the Healing Brush

You're going to love the Healing Brush. Trust me. Maybe not today, or tomorrow, but when you've had a little experience with this tool, you're going to love it. Originally introduced in Photoshop 7, the Healing Brush was added to Elements 3.0. With the Healing Brush, you can do some things very quickly that you'd spend ten times as much time doing using the Clone tool or other methods.

The chief drawback to the Clone tool is that it's "dumb." The Clone brush ignores the pixels you're painting over, and covers them completely with the pixels you're copying from another location. That means you must be fairly clever about where you Alt/Option click to create an origin point for the Clone tool. Ideally, you should select an area that is fairly close to the destination pixels in color, tone, and texture. If you can't do that, there are various work-arounds, such as changing the Opacity of the Clone brush to less than 100 percent to allow some of the underlying pixels to show through. You can also clone onto a new, empty layer and merge that with the original image pixels using one of Elements' cryptic blending modes.

The Healing Brush performs all those calculations for you automatically. When you use it, the Healing Brush copies pixels from the location you specify to the destination you indicate. But, before the pixels are merged, Elements examines the texture, lighting, and shading of the destination pixels and matches the copied pixels to them. As a result, the new pixels merge more smoothly with the old, avoiding the complete obliteration of the detail that was there originally. These implements are very smart, and do a good job.

The tool is best applied to subjects that truly need "healing" of small areas that need to be blended in with the areas around them. Figure 4.23 shows the kind of situation in which you would not want to use either one. In this case, I applied pixels from the wall over the picture taped to the wall. The Healing Brush used the underlying pixels in the original picture and modified the copied pixels so that they blended with the picture, rather than obscuring it.

Figure 4.23 *The Healing Brush doesn't lend itself to patching large areas with very different textures.*

A better choice is the image shown in Figure 4.24. It was scanned from a 35mm slide, and, as a result, has a few black spots from the dust that wasn't removed from the transparency. In addition, the model has an unfortunate scar on her forehead and some minor dust problems that the Healing Brush is perfect for. If you'd like to work on this image yourself, locate the prairie dog image on the Web site, and follow along with the steps that follow.

Figure 4.24 *This photo has many small defects, mostly dust spots and scratches, that can be fixed with the Healing Brush.*

1. Zoom into the forehead area of the image.
2. Click the Healing Brush tool in the Tool palette (or press J to activate it). (It looks like a Band-Aid.) Unlike the most common Elements brush tools, the Healing Brush doesn't have a selection of preset brushes to choose from. In fact, the Brush palette is deactivated while the Healing Brush is in use.
3. Set your brush characteristics from the drop-down dialog box available in the Options bar, as seen in Figure 4.25. You can choose the brush size, hardness (how hard or fuzzy the brush is), brush shape, and other parameters. Choose a 27-pixel brush, and leave the hardness set at 0, producing a medium-sized soft brush.

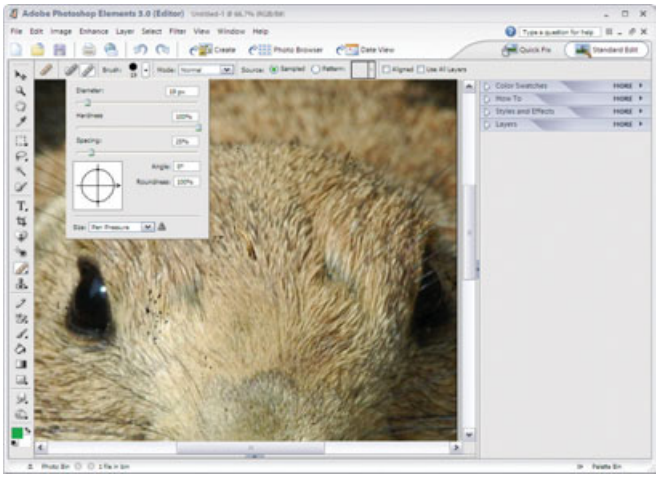


Figure 4.25 *Set the Healing Brush characteristics from the drop-down dialog box.*

4. Make sure the Source box is checked. That tells Elements to use the area where you Alt/Option click as the source for the cloned pixels. If you mark the Pattern box instead, you can heal an area with a pattern of your choice.
5. Alt/Option click in the area of the forehead to the left of the scar, and paint over the blemish with the Healing Brush. The defect will vanish, as shown in Figure 4.26.
6. Use the drop-down dialog box to reduce the size of the Healing Brush to about 15 pixels, and repeat the operation on each dust spot, wrinkle, or other defect you see. The result will look something like Figure 4.27.

Figure 4.26 *Painting over the defect with the Healing Brush blends it in with the surrounding area.*

Figure 4.27 *Additional defects are easy to remove with the Healing Brush.*

Canceling Red Eyes

Photoshop Elements 3.0 added a much-improved red eye removal feature, called the Red Eye Brush tool. Unlike the version offered in previous versions of Elements, the revamped tool is highly automated. It allows you to click or paint away those glowing pupils that affect any wide-eyed human who is close enough to the camera to reflect light from their eyes directly back into the camera lens. Unfortunately, it doesn't work with the yellow or green eyes sometimes produced by animals. Use Enhance > Color > Replace Color instead. (You'll learn more about that feature in Chapter 6.) Follow these steps to put the Red Eye Brush to work.

1. Open the picture to be de-demonized.
2. Click the Red Eye Brush tool in the Tool palette to activate it (it has a crosshair cursor and eyeball icon). Then apply any appropriate options: Adjust the Pupil Size parameter to control the size of the "brush" you'll be using to paint over the red eyes. Set the Darken Amount control to adjust the degree of darkening applied to the red eyes.
3. Click in the area that includes the red eye effect. The tool automatically seeks out the red tone and darkens it, creating more natural-looking eyes.
4. If both eyes are glowing (they usually are), you can repeat this process for the second eye. Figure 4.28 shows some red eyes (before and after) and the Options palette for this tool.

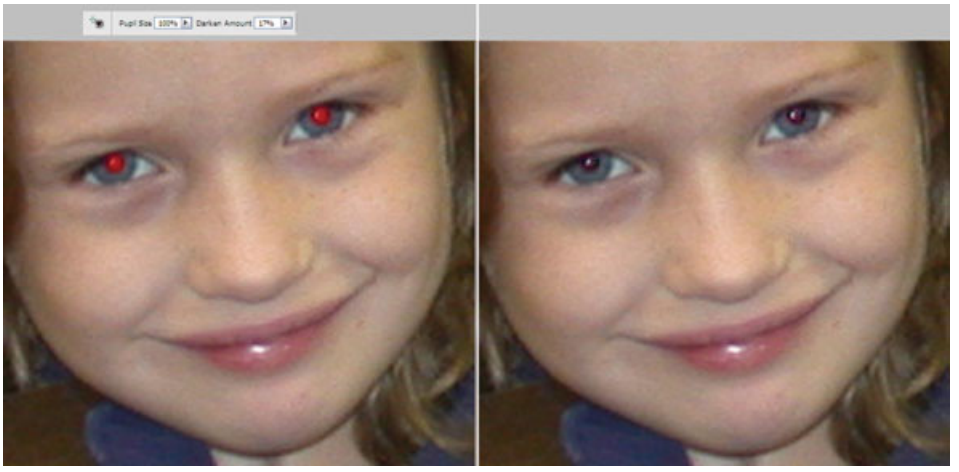


Figure 4.28 *Removing red eye using the Red Eye Brush tool.*

Next Up

In the next chapter, we're going to explore compositing, which is a much more complex type of retouching that involves combining pieces of images into one whole work of art. You'll get to use most of what you know about working with layers, selections, and then some.

5

Compositing in Elements 3.0

Compositing is the method used to combine several images to create a new one. Sometimes, the goal is to create a seamless merger that looks as if the photograph could have been taken as a straight shot with a camera. Other times, you'll want to create a fantasy image that has no resemblance to reality. This combining several pictures into one new image, or moving around objects within a single photograph is a time-honored photographing technique. Photographers have been compositing images for as long as there have been negatives and prints that made such combinations possible.

The compositing process can be as simple as sandwiching two negatives together and printing the result, or as advanced as applying sophisticated digital techniques to nudge two pyramids closer together, as *National Geographic* did for its controversial February, 1982 cover story on Egypt. In either case, the result is the same: an image that never existed in real life.

With more people using image-editing programs like Photoshop Elements, manipulating photographs in this way has become extremely common. Tabloid magazines regularly picture Hollywood celebrities out on "dates" when, in fact, they may never have met. The more outrageous publications have shown presidents shaking hands with space aliens, and Midwestern farmers wrestling grasshoppers the size of pigs. Even more legitimate magazines, like the late *Picture Week* managed to picture Nancy Reagan and Raisa Gorbachev having a friendly chat that never took place.

Journalists have some serious ethical considerations when creating composited images, because a news publication that can't be trusted won't be read. Robert Gilka, former director of photography at *National Geographic* magazine says that significantly manipulating images is an

oxymoron on the order of "limited nuclear warfare." Fortunately, the rest of us can happily modify and combine images to our heart's content, as long as we're not attempting to defraud anyone. It's actually a lot of fun, and a great way to spend time when you can't be taking photographs.

This chapter concentrates on the tools and techniques you need to create composites. Sometimes, your goal will be to create realistic images; other times you'll simply want to combine several pictures in interesting ways, even if the end result is obviously a fantasy. If you want to learn more about compositing, and are comfortable "translating" Photoshop techniques into Elementese, check out my book *Digital Retouching and Compositing: Photographers' Guide*, from Course Technology. You'll find the topics covered in this chapter dealt with in much more detail in that guidebook, with a Photoshop CS focus, of course.

Your Compositing Toolkit

Ads for photographic-oriented products like image editors and printers is one venue in which creating outlandish image combinations is definitely okay. In fact, if you look closely at some of the ads for Adobe or Epson products in the past few years, you'd think that high-end image-editing programs and photo-quality printers are used primarily to transplant the Eiffel Tower to Sunset Boulevard or print images of trees made out of human bodies.

However, compositing also has more mundane applications that involve nothing more than blending several photos with no overt intention to deceive. The goal here is to combine the best features of four or five flawed images to produce a postcard-quality photo that doesn't scream *fake* until you look at it very closely. To make this chapter even more interesting, we'll work with some outtake photos. Some of them were so dark, blurry, or otherwise defective in ways that would ordinarily keep them out of the shoebox. I kept these rejects for the same reason the miser kept a box carefully labeled "Pieces of string not worth saving." You never know when an odd image can come in handy!

Figure 5.1 shows two photos taken years apart, miles apart, and with different digital cameras. The top image is a shot of a car parked in a driveway, taken around 1997 with an Epson digital camera that had only 1024 × 768 pixels of resolution. The bottom photo was taken on the campus of Kent

Figure 5.1 *These two photos weren't stunning on their own.*

State University more recently, with a 3.3 MP digital shooter. Compositing techniques let me slice the car image out and drop it onto the sidewalk realistically. If you look closely at the final picture (see Figure 5.2), you can see plausible shadows and even some sun-dappling on the hood of the car.

Figure 5.2 *Combining them produced a realistic composite.*

Or, for a more fantastic image, check out Figure 5.3, which shows a Spanish castle transplanted to the rugged shores of Ireland, with a purple-clouded sky dropped in from a third photo and, to add a little sci-fi flair, an image of a looming moon. This picture won't fool anyone, but it's fun to look at.

First, let's look at exactly what you need to know to do effective compositing. The main tools you need to master are the selection tools. If you've been working with Elements for awhile, you've already used the selection tools extensively, and the good news is that there have been virtually no changes to these tools in Photoshop Elements 3.0. To grab portions of an image for realistic compositing, you need to be able to select precisely the object or area that you need. Because the ability to make selections is so crucial, I'm going to spend some time reviewing the key tools before we begin actually butchering a few photos later in this chapter. Remember, as you butcher your own photos, that Photoshop Elements' Undo feature is your friend. Don't be afraid to try out a change, because you can always unchange it later.

Figure 5.3 *Creating obvious fantasy photos are a fun way to use Elements compositing techniques.*

Selection Refresher Course

In order to facilitate making changes or to copy only part of an image, Elements allows you to make selections. A selection is the part of the image inside the crawling selection border (called marching ants and various other names) when you define an area with one of the selection tools. Once you've created a selection, you can do the following things with the selected area:

- Copy the area to the Clipboard and paste it down in a new layer of its own, surrounded by transparency.
- Paint or fill selected areas with color or pattern using all the painting tools in any of the available modes.
- Fill selections with the contents of other selected areas (for example, pasting one image into another).
- Mask selected areas to prevent them from being changed.
- Apply a filter to a selected area.

- Edit a selection: scale its size, skew or distort its shape, change its perspective, flip it horizontally or vertically, rotate it, add to or subtract from it, and combine it with another selection.
- Save selections in channels or layers for later use.
- Convert selections to vector-oriented paths that you can manipulate using the Pen tool.

When you create a selection in Elements, you are essentially doing what airbrush artists do when they cut masks out of film: You define an area in which painting (or another process) can take place. Elements allows you to make masks with three kinds of edges: anti-aliased (smoothed), feathered (fading out gradually), and nonanti-aliased (jagged edged). In addition, masks can be opaque, semitransparent, or graduated in transparency. You can use Elements' selection tools, described next, or actually "paint" a selection using the Selection Brush, which we've already worked with earlier in this book (so I won't be reviewing it in this chapter).

PC AND MAC KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS

As you work through this chapter and those that follow, keep in mind that some keyboard shortcuts are different for the PC and Macintosh. Most tools from the Tool Palette can be selected by pressing the appropriate alphabetical key on the keyboard, *except* when the Text tool is active. So, you can switch to one of the Marquee tools by pressing M on both PCs and Macs. Press Shift + M to cycle through the alternate versions of that tool, the Elliptical and Rectangular Marquees. Use the same key/Shift + key technique to select the Lasso tool and its variations (use L), as well as all the other tools on the palette. Learn the keyboard shortcuts and use them.

Some shortcuts use keys in combinations, and you'll need to keep in mind that the PC and Mac have the Shift keys in common, but other keys have different names on the two platforms. In this book, I'll separate the equivalent keys with a slash, so when you see Ctrl/Command or Alt/Option you'll know to press the Ctrl and Alt keys on the PC and Command and Option keys on the Macintosh. The Mac also has a Control key (not to be confused with the PC's Ctrl key), which serves the same function as a right-click with the mouse on the PC. So, right-click/Control-click is the same command sequence on the two platforms.

Making Rectangular, Square, Oval, and Circular Selections

The easiest way to make rectangular, square, oval, and circular selections is with the Rectangular and Elliptical Marquee tools. To make such a rectangular selection, just choose the tool (press M to select it if the tool you want is on top; otherwise click the tool icon and choose the variation you want), then drag in your image, releasing the mouse when the selection is the right size. To deselect any selection at any time, press Ctrl/Command + D or click anywhere on the screen with a selection tool outside of the selection border. If you click outside the border with another tool, this shortcut will not work. Hide a selection by pressing Ctrl/Command + H. Here are some of the options you should learn when using the selection tools.

- Click at the point where you want the rectangle or ellipse to begin, and then drag in any direction. The selection will grow from that point in the direction you drag.
- Hold down the Alt/Option key and click a point, then drag in any direction. The selection will radiate outward, with that point as its center.
- To draw a perfect square or circle, click and hold down the Shift key while you drag. Hold down both the Shift and Alt/Option keys when you first click, and the selection will radiate from the centerpoint where you clicked.
- Choose Fixed Aspect Ratio from the Style drop-down list in the Option bar, shown in Figure 5.4. Leave the Width and Height values at their default 1, and forget about holding down the Shift key. You'll draw only perfect squares or circles every time you click and drag when this option is active.

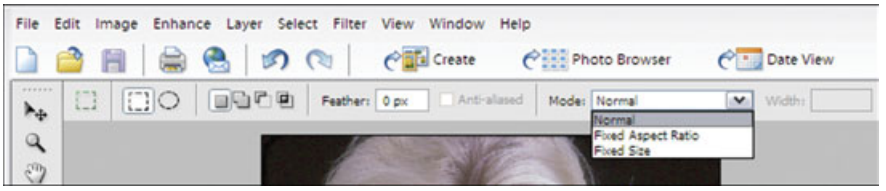


Figure 5.4 *Choose Selection options from the Options bar.*

- Type other values into the Width and Height boxes to create selections with other proportions. For example, using 8 and 1, respectively, will force the Marquee tool to create only selections that are eight times as wide as they are tall.
- Choose Fixed Size from the Style drop-down list in the Options bar and type in dimensions, in pixels for your selection. Say you had an image that was 800 × 600 pixels and wanted to grab a 640 × 480 pixel chunk of it. Once you've typed the target dimensions into the Width and Height boxes, clicking with the Rectangular Marquee produces a selection in that size that you can drag around the screen to the part of the image where you want it to be.

Making Freehand Selections with the Lasso Tool

With the Lasso tool you can make freehand selections of a part of an image. Select the tool and drag around the outline of the area you want to select. This tool has three modes, which you can select by choosing the tool you want to use in the Tool palette. Once any of the Lasso tools has been selected, you can switch from one mode to another by clicking the appropriate Lasso-style icon in the Options bar.

The plain old Lasso mode draws a selection as if you were sketching it with a pencil. The Polygonal Lasso tool lets you create selections in straight lines by clicking, dragging to the next point and clicking again, and then repeating this process until you click back at the origin point to close the selection.

The third option is the Magnetic Lasso. This tool examines the image area as you drag, and attempts to "hug" the edges of the area as closely as possible. This one is a little more difficult to

understand, so we'll look at it in more detail. As the Magnetic Lasso tool works, it lays down a series of points that define the edge. You can adjust the accuracy of the selection border using parameters you type into the Options bar, shown in Figure 5.5. These include:

- *Detection Width*. An area, measured in pixels, that the tool will use to search for high contrast areas in the path of the selection border to "hug" to. Increase this value to make the Magnetic Lasso looser and smoother, although you'll risk making the selection border not adhere tightly to the actual edge in your image. Decrease the value to create a tighter selection border that follows the edge closely at the expense of a smooth line.
- *Edge Contrast*. The amount of contrast required in the area (from 0 to 100 percent) to qualify as an "edge." As you increase this value the edge must be more distinct before the Magnetic Lasso will find it, but the results will be more accurate. Lower values work well with high-contrast images where the edge is already well defined (as in Figure 5.5).
- *Frequency*. The spacing between magnetized points. The higher the number (from 0 to 100) the more frequently Elements will add points. The more points used, the more accurate the selection, at the expense of smoothness. Fewer points create a selection that is smoother, but which may not be particularly accurate.
- *Feather*. Use this parameter to make a feathered or blurry edge in your final selection.
- *Anti-aliased*. Check this box to create a blended edge.
- *Pen Pressure*. Allows drawing thicker lines when you press harder with a stylus on a pressure-sensitive tablet.

Just remember to use large width and higher-edge contrast settings with a higher frequency to create a selection that has well-defined images. Use a smaller width, reduced contrast settings, and a lower frequency to trace a softer-edged selection.

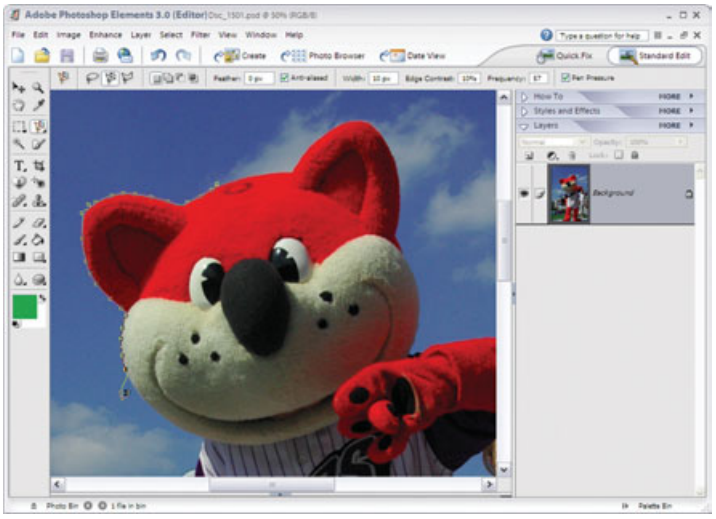


Figure 5.5 *The Magnetic Lasso defines an edge by creating a series of points along the border.*

Other Selection Tips

Here are some more tips that apply to the selection tools:

- When any selection tool is active, you can drag a selection anywhere on the screen.
- Mark the Anti-aliased box in the Options bar to smooth the edges of an elliptical or freehand (Lasso) selection. Rectangles don't need anti-aliasing, so this option is grayed out when the Rectangular Marquee tool is active.
- Type a value into the Feather box in the Options bar to create a selection that fades out gradually over a range of the number of pixels you specify.

Adding, Subtracting, or Combining Selections

Once you've made a selection, you can modify it by adding, subtracting, or combining. Here's a refresher of the options at your command.

- Choose a selection tool and add to an existing selection by holding the Shift key while you drag. You can also click the Add To Selection icon in the Options bar to temporarily make adding to the selection the default action.
- Choose a selection tool and subtract from an existing selection by holding the Alt/Option key while dragging. Or, click the Subtract from Selection icon in the Options bar.
- Click the Intersect with Selection icon in the Options bar, then create a selection that overlaps the original selection. Only the portion that overlaps the two will be selected. This useful technique can help you do things like create a particularly shaped selection. Figures 5.6, 5.7, and 5.8 show the results of adding, subtracting, and intersecting selections.

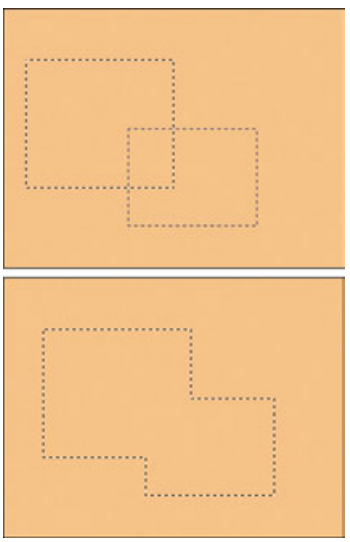


Figure 5.6 *Adding the two selections at top produces the final selection at bottom.*

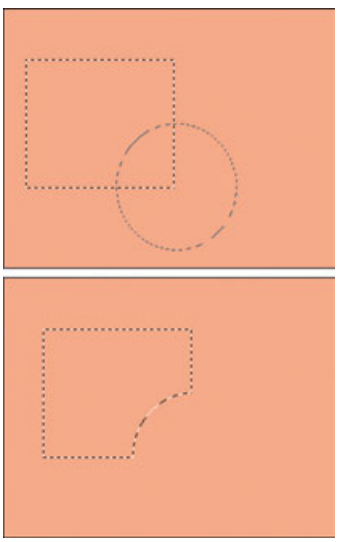


Figure 5.7 *Subtracting the circular selection from the rectangular selection at top produces the final selection at bottom.*

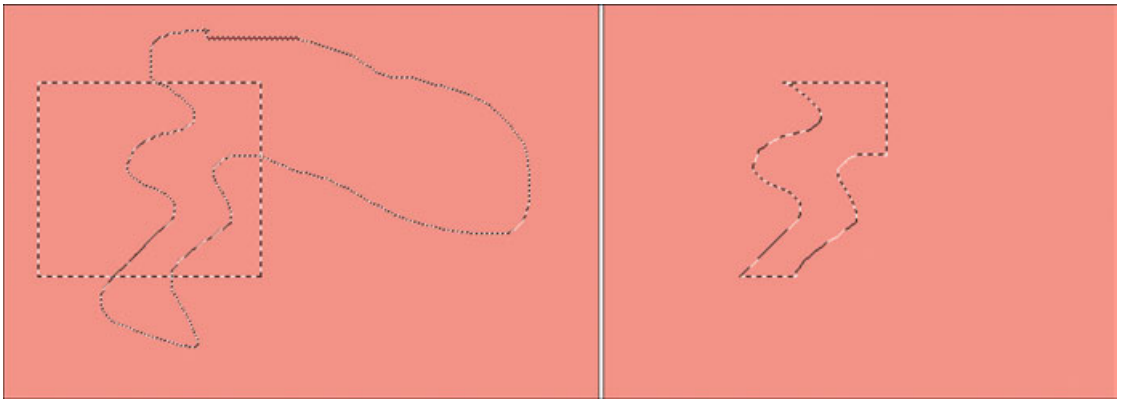


Figure 5.8 *Intersecting the squiggly selection at left with the rectangular selection produces the final selection you can see at right.*

Other Selection Tools

There are other tools you can use to make selections within Elements. Here is a brief refresher for those tools, too.

Magic Wand

The Magic Wand selects all pixels that are similar in hue and value to the pixel you first clicked on. Originally, the Magic Wand would select only the pixels that touched each other (were contiguous), but now this capability is an option (albeit, the default). If you turn off the contiguous parameter in the Options bar, the Magic Wand will select all the pixels in an image that are similar in hue and value to the first pixel. You can also click the Use All Layers box to tell Elements to pretend that all the layers in your image have been merged when deciding which pixels in the current layer to include.

You tell the Wand how choosy to be by setting its tolerance, from 0 to 255. Based on the tolerance set, the Wand extends the selection outward until it finds no more pixels with the color values within the limits you've specified. For example, if the tolerance was set to 40 and you clicked with the Wand on a pixel that had a value of 100, the Magic Wand would select all pixels with values between 60 and 140. (Both hue and luminance are figured into a special equation as the Wand decides which pixels it can and cannot select.) A high tolerance will select a wider range of pixels. A low tolerance will select a very narrow range of pixels.

If you want to select a wide range of a color, from bright to dark, set the tolerance higher than the default (32) and click the Wand in the middle of the range of color values. If you click in an area of the color that is very dark or very light, you are giving the Wand less latitude. (Remember, color values can range from 0 to 255.)

The Magic Wand's selections can be smoothed (anti-aliased) or rough, depending on whether you've marked the Anti-alias box in the Options bar. For Figure 5.9 I took a simple close-up

photo (made with a lowly 2-megapixel camera, by the way), and set the Tolerance first at 12. For Figure 5.10, the Tolerance was set at 32, clicking with the Magic Wand in the brightest part of the orange in both cases.

Figure 5.9 *The Magic Wand's Tolerance control was set to 12.*

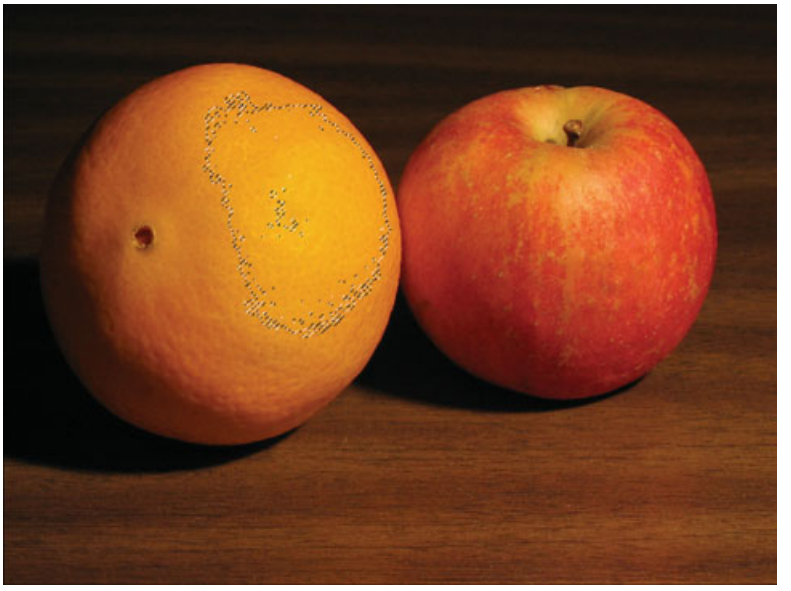


Figure 5.10 *The Magic Wand's Tolerance control was set to 32 to increase the number of pixels selected.*

The Select Menu

You can change a selection using choices from the Select menu.

- *Select All* (everything in an image; also Ctrl/Command + A); Deselect (cancel all selections; also Ctrl/Command + D); Reselect (the last selection made; also Shift + Ctrl/Command + D); and Inverse (reverse the selection; also Shift + Ctrl/Command + I).
- *Feather* (fade out a selection; also Alt/Option + Ctrl + D). Type in a pixel value for the desired width of the fade zone.
- *Modify*. Change the selection boundary to a border of a pixel width you specify; smooth the rough edges of the selection border; expand the selection border outward by the number of pixels you specify; contract the selection border inward by the number of pixels you specify.
- *Grow*. Adds adjacent pixels that fall into the brightness range specified by the Magic Wand tool's options.
- *Select Similar*. Adds pixels anywhere in the image that fall within the Magic Wand tool's tolerance setting.
- *Load/Save Selection*. Allows you to save the current selection, or load one you've previously saved.

Transforming Selections

You'll find some additional options for modifying your selections (and their contents) in the Image > Rotate menu. Unfortunately, Photoshop Elements does not let you make these changes to the selections alone. In the submenu you'll find choices that include:

- *Free Rotate Selection*. Selection handles and a curved arrow icon appear that you can drag to rotate your selection and its contents.
- *Selection 90 Degrees Left*. Spin your selection and its contents one quarter turn counterclockwise.
- *Selection 90 Degrees Right*. Spin the selection and its contents one quarter turn clockwise.
- *Selection 180 Degrees*. Rotate the selection and its contents one half turn.
- *Flip Selection Horizontal*. Create a left/right mirror image of the selection's contents.
- *Flip Selection Vertical*. Create a vertical mirror image of the selection's contents.

Creating a Simple Composite

Now it's time to use your selection skills, plus some other techniques we'll pick up as we go along, to create a simple composite. This section will help you learn not only the Elements tools you need to create realistic composites, but some of the visual considerations. You can follow along using the Soccer Ball and Soccer Kick images from the Web site, or work with a similar photo of your own. The techniques can be applied broadly.

Figure 5.11 shows the original photo we'll work with. It's not razor sharp, but it's not a bad action photo, particularly if you happen to be the parent of one of the players pictured. The chief problem is that the soccer ball is all washed out and excessively blurry, and, unfortunately, merges with a bit of light-colored background showing through the trees behind, making it look like the ball has a knob growing out of the bottom. A simple composite can improve this photo while offering the opportunity to make other changes, as well. Follow these steps to create the transformation.

1. The first thing we can do is make the picture more dramatic by raising the young girl an extra two or three feet off the ground. Use the Lasso to select her, and paste her down onto a new layer. Then use the Move tool to nudge her up higher in the picture, as shown in Figure 5.12. (I've dimmed the original image background to make the pasted selection more obvious.)
2. Use a soft eraser brush to erase around the edges of the figure on the new layer so she'll blend in with the background behind.

Figure 5.11 *This action photo can be improved, a lot.*

Figure 5.12 *Give the young soccer player a lift to add to the excitement.*

3. Go back to the original background layer and use the Clone Stamp (as you learned in Chapter 4) to remove the extra shadow that appears under the player's feet, leaving only the original shadow beneath her. Use the Clone tool to put part of the background image on any portions of the original player figure that show through. The image will look like Figure 5.13. (The background is no longer dimmed, so you can see how smoothly the background and pasted image merge.)

Figure 5.13 *Blend the elevated portion of the image so it merges smoothly with the background.*

4. Next, load the Soccer Ball photo, and use the Elliptical Marquee tool to select it. You can hold the Shift and Alt/Option keys, click the approximate center of the ball, and drag to create a perfect circle with the ball centered in the selection. If necessary, nudge the selection and/or expand or contract the selection (as you learned to do earlier in this chapter) until only the ball is selected, as shown in Figure 5.14.
5. Copy the ball and paste it down in the original photo. (Press Ctrl/Command + C followed by Ctrl/Command + V.)
6. Resize the ball in its new layer so it's exactly the size as the ball it replaces. Use Image > Transform > Free Transform, and drag a corner selection handle until the ball is the size you need.
7. Use the Clone Stamp tool to erase the original ball from the background image.
8. Make the replacement ball match the photo a little more closely by performing these modifications:
   - Use Image >Rotate > Free Rotate Layer to rotate the ball a little counterclockwise so its brightest surface is upwards, matching the direction of the sunlight in the original photo (almost exactly overhead, but a little to the right).
   - Use the Burn tool with a soft brush to darken the underside of the soccer ball.
   - Use Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast to adjust the brightness and contrast of the ball so it looks more natural in the image. You'll need to judge the amount of brightness and contrast to apply visually. Just move the sliders until the ball looks "best."
   - Use the Filter > Blur > Motion Blur filter, with the Distance setting at 11 pixels to give the ball a little blur.

Figure 5.14 *Select only the soccer ball from the second photo.*

The finished photo will look like Figure 5.15.

Stitching Two Photos Together

Ordinary panoramic pictures are the penultimate wide-angle photograph (the ultimate being either a 360-degree panorama or, perhaps, a picture that would encompass a complete sphere, with the camera at the center). In practice, 100- to 120-degree panoramas are easier to achieve simply by taking multiple pictures and stitching them together with Elements.

Traditionally, panorama photos have been produced using several different methods. One elegant solution has been a special panorama camera, which uses a lens that rotates from left to right in concert with a moving shutter, thus exposing a long strip of negative with a very wide-angle view of the subject, something like the one shown in Figure 5.16. Such cameras tended to be expensive and required working with a tripod for best results.

Figure 5.15 *The finished photo is a lot more interesting with the new, composited elements and added blur.*

Figure 5.16 *Special panorama cameras expose a wide image on a long strip of film.*

Another solution is the one used by current (but headed for the scrapheap of history) APS (Advanced Photo System) cameras, which let you switch back and forth between three different aspect ratios, including a panorama view. This system works by taking an ordinary frame and simply ignoring the top and bottom portions, enlarging a thin strip in the middle of the frame to create a panorama. There are advantages and disadvantages to this approach. One advantage is that you don't need a tripod; any picture you care to take can be transformed into a panorama by flipping a switch on the camera. The most important plus to this system is that photofinishers are set up to handle such panorama photos automatically. The APS camera marks the film's magnetic strip with a code that labels a panorama picture as such. The photolab's automated printing equipment reads this code and prints out your wide photos using the panorama area previewed in the camera's viewfinder. The chief disadvantage is that such panoramas don't use all the available film area: You get a wide-angle shot by enlarging only a center strip of the film. Your 4 × 10-inch panorama picture is actually just an 8 × 10 with two inches trimmed from the top and bottom. That's cheaper and faster than snipping an 8 × 10-inch print yourself, but you're not getting the sharpest possible picture. You can also create panoramas in a similar way by trimming the image yourself, as shown in Figure 5.17.

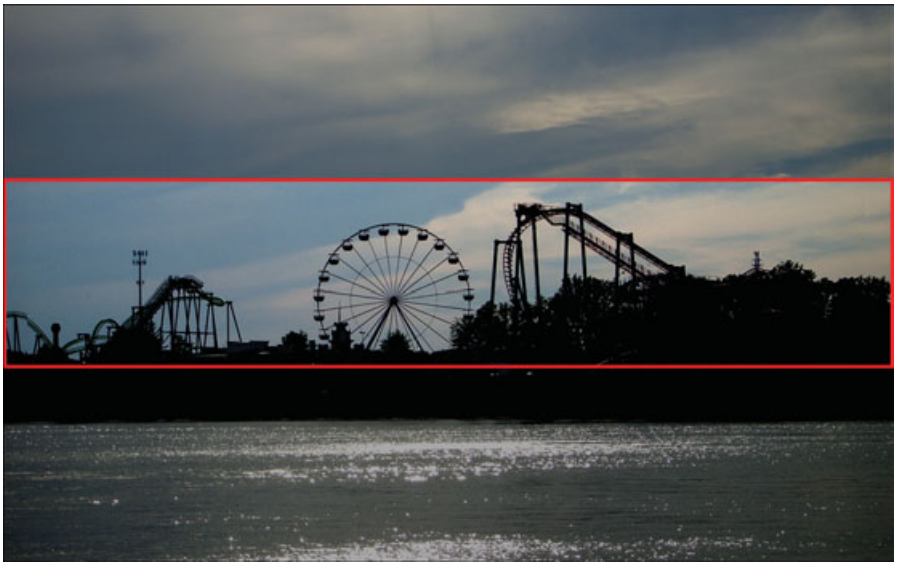


Figure 5.17 *Another way to create a panorama is simply to crop the top and bottom from a negative or slide.*

A third way to create panoramas is with one of the newer digital cameras with this feature. When you switch to panorama mode, the digital camera shows a ghost image of the edge of your last picture in the LCD panel on the back of the camera. You then use this ghost image to line up your current image so that the two overlap. You can repeat this step as many times as you want to create sweeping panoramas. Of course, each portion of the panorama is created as a separate digital image. You'll still need to stitch them together in Elements. (Digital cameras with the panorama feature often are furnished with special utilities that can stitch the images effectively.)

A fourth way to create panoramas is to take several full frame photos with a digital or film camera, lining them up as best you can by eye, and then stitching them together to create one very wide photo. Such photos have been pasted together in the past, and then rephotographed and printed, but Elements makes it easy to mate a series of photos digitally. The advantage of this method is that each picture contains the maximum resolution possible with a full frame digital or film camera image. Another plus is that it's not necessary to shoot with a wide-angle lens, which tends to load the image up with foreground and sky, while pushing the important subject matter way, way back. You can move to a good vantage point and take your set of pictures with a normal lens or telephoto, then join them to create one seamless image. The chief disadvantage of this method is that it's tricky to produce the original images, and time-consuming to join them.

However, if you plan your panorama out as you shoot, you can avoid many of the problems. Here are some tips for shooting good panoramas.

- Minimize the number of photos you take to reduce the number of images you have to stitch together. If you really, really want a 360-degree panorama you can take one, but plan on spending a lot of time combining images.
- There are specialized software programs you can buy that do what you can do with Elements for free if you plan on taking many panoramas. I recommend seeing how well Elements works for you before buying one of these, however.
- Use a tripod with a panning head as a way to keep all your images level. Adjust the tripod (use an actual level if necessary) and swivel through your panorama to make sure the transitions will be smooth before taking the first photo. Some panheads have markings in degrees to help you align the camera.
- Try to keep exposures, including lens opening and shutter speed, the same between pictures so they'll match more easily.
- Remember to overlap your images slightly so you'll be able to blend each photo into the next.
- You should know that, technically, the camera should rotate around the optical center of the *lens*, not the center of the *camera body* to produce the most realistic perspective. Some panorama attachments for tripods include a plate that includes a tripod mount out under the lens center, rather than in the usual location under the camera body. Figure 5.18 shows the right and wrong locations for your center of rotation. If you don't buy a special panorama attachment, and your tripod socket is located in less than the optimal position, you'll have to make do. The actual changes in perspective, fortunately, are small (but noticeable to those with an eagle eye).

Figure 5.18 *Ideally, a camera should swivel around the optical center of the lens when creating a panorama.*

This next exercise will introduce you to the basics of stitching, using only two pictures to start. Load the Toledo Left and Toledo Right photos from the Web site. These two pictures were taken on a hill outside Toledo, Spain, at the exact spot where the artist El Greco stood in the 16th century to craft his immortal painting *View of Toledo*. Unfortunately, the location is so far from the town that a wide-angle picture of the entire panorama displays more hillside and sky than actual town. Reaching out with a telephoto lens to grab the medieval city on its perch above the Tagus river yields a minimum of two pictures, shown in Figures 5.19 and 5.20.

Figure 5.19 *The left side of the panorama.*

Figure 5.20 *The right side of the panorama.*

Merging Photos the Old Way

It's useful to learn how to create panoramas the old way (without using specialized software), because there are times when merging photos entirely using manual techniques is the way to go. For example, you might find that some sophisticated color matching or sharpening needs to be done on each photo to make them match smoothly. Special software might not provide the cleanest transition, so you might choose to do it using the technique I'll describe next.

1. Create a large, empty document, approximately 3000 pixels by 1500 pixels, then copy and paste the left and right versions of the Toledo picture into the new document on layers of their own.
2. Use the Move tool to align them so they overlap. You'll see that the right picture is rotated slightly relative to the left picture, and offset vertically. That's because these photos were taken handheld, without benefit of a tripod. You can see the ill fit in Figure 5.21.

Figure 5.21 *Unfortunately, the pictures don't fit exactly together, even though they overlap.*

3. Using the Image > Rotate >Free Rotate Layer command to rotate the right photo clockwise, as shown in the close-up view in Figure 5.22, lines the photos up better. Focus your attention on the building that overlaps both photos at the edge, rotating until left and right sides of the building are lined up. Figure 5.23 shows how the two entire pictures will be oriented when you've finished rotating them.

Figure 5.22 *Rotate the right photo clockwise to line up the pictures.*

Figure 5.23 *Now the images match more closely.*

4. If you like, you can use the Clone Stamp to copy some of the sky in to the area above it. Or, you can copy sky sections and paste them in, as you can see in Figure 5.24. This will let you crop the picture a little "taller" once you've merged the photos.
5. Using a soft brush eraser, erase some of the overlapped area from the right side image, which you should have placed on top of the left side image. The image will begin to blend seamlessly.

Figure 5.24 *Paste or clone some sky area to fill in empty portions of the photos.*

6. Finally, use the Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast controls (if necessary) to blend the two images together. Use the Clone Stamp tool to copy parts of the sky over the edges of the sky portions you've added.
7. Flatten the image (Layer > Flatten Image), which should look like Figure 5.25.

Figure 5.25 *Flattened and cleaned up, the finished panorama looks like this.*

Merging Photos the Easy Way

Now, let's merge the same two pictures using Photoshop Elements' new feature called Photomerge. You'll see just how much easier the whole process can be when you let Elements handle most of the work for you.

1. Choose File > New > Photomerge Panorama. The dialog box shown in Figure 5.26 appears.
2. Click Browse and then select the files you'd like to merge.
3. Click OK to start the process. Photoshop will examine the images and attempt to match them. If it cannot, you'll see the dialog box shown in Figure 5.27. Click OK, and then drag the images onto the Photomerge workspace, as shown in Figure 5.28.

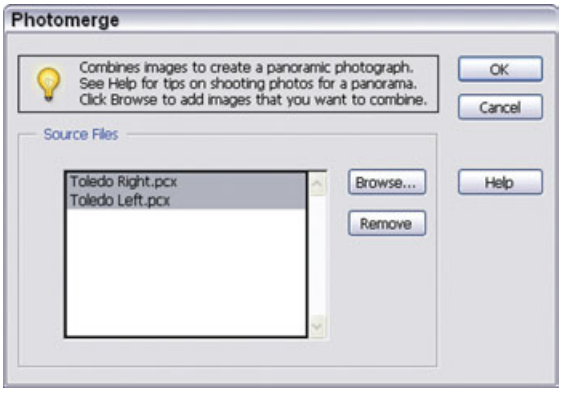


Figure 5.26 *Select the images to be merged with this dialog box.*

Photomerge could not automatically arrange any of the images. You can manually drag the images into the work area to create a panorama.
OK

Figure 5.27 *If Photomerge can't match up your images automatically, you'll get this warning.*

Figure 5.28 *Drag the images you're combining into the workspace to line them up manually.*

4. If you're manually lining up images, each image will become semi-transparent as you drag so you can line up its overlapping area with the image underneath, as shown in Figure 5.29. Photomerge has tools at the left side of the workspace that can be used to move, rotate, or zoom in on the image.

Figure 5.29 *The dragged image becomes semitransparent so you can align it with the image underneath.*

5. Mark the Normal box on the right side of the dialog. You'd use the Perspective choice instead if you needed to adjust the tilt of the images. Our test images are a good match perspectivewise, so Normal works just fine.
6. Mark the Snap To Image box. This tells Photoshop to go ahead and move one or more of the images being merged to more closely line up the common areas. Other options include Advanced Blending, which may be needed to smooth the transition between images that don't match well, and Keep As Layers, which tells Photoshop not to flatten the final image. You might want that option when you plan to make other changes to the merged images later, such as changing the tonal or color values so they match each other more closely.
7. Click OK to merge the images.
8. Crop the image at top and bottom to produce the panorama shown in Figure 5.30.

Figure 5.30 *Your final image will look like this.*

Creating a Fantasy Landscape

By now you should be ready to tackle a major project. We're going to create a fantasy landscape similar to the one in Figure 5.3, only better. We'll use a stack of photos, each with various defects, and combine them into one over-the-top composite.

You'll be using various skills that have already been exercised in previous projects, so I won't provide detailed step-by-step instructions for everything. Instead, I'll explain in general terms what needs to be done, focusing on any new or difficult tasks.

We'll start with the photo shown in Figure 5.31, and end up with one that looks like Figure 5.32. The major center of interest was supposed to be the medieval castle perched at the top of the darker green mountain in the middle of the photo. Unfortunately, the castle is too far away to show up well, and the cluttered foreground includes an automobile tire retailer, some electrical poles, and a group of non-medieval homes and other structures. The plain blue sky is a little bland, too. We can fix all of that.

Figure 5.31 *The mountains look nice, but we can add some new elements to the image.*

Figure 5.32 *The finished version will look like this.*

In this exercise, you'll learn all the different things that must "match" for a composite image to look realistic. These include:

- *Lighting*. In general, all the illumination must appear to come from the same general area. In the finished composite, the "sun" is high in the sky, just above the upper right corner of the picture, so most of the shadows are cast towards us. I took some liberties with the mountain picture, in which the illumination is coming from the upper left corner, instead, because the mountains looked better lit that way, and we tend not to notice lighting discrepancies for objects located that far in the distance.
- *Color*. The colors should match in hue and degree of saturation. I took a cue from the overall blue cast of the mountains and made sure everything else in the picture had a slight blue or blue-green cast to it, rather than an overpowering warm look.
- *Brightness/Contrast*. Objects should be plausibly close in contrast. Objects in the distance can be lower in contrast because they are masked by haze, but your foreground objects should all display the same contrast you'd expect from objects lit by the same illumination.
- *Texture/Sharpness*. It's difficult to make a good composite if one or more objects is decidedly sharper or has a different texture than the other objects in the image. For this project, most of the items dropped into the picture were close enough in sharpness to make a good match. The mountains, because they were off in the distance, didn't need to be as sharp as the components in the foreground. When you're creating your own composites, you may need to use Elements' Gaussian Blur or Add Noise filters to blend items carefully. Adjust contrast after blurring, if necessary, to keep your objects matched. Although you can sharpen a soft component to match the rest of an image, Elements' Sharpen filters add contrast that's difficult to compensate for.
- *Scale*. Unless you're creating a complete fantasy image, you'll want composited components to be realistically scaled in relation to their surrounding objects. Remember that things closer to us appear larger, so as you move an object farther back in your composition, you'll need to reduce its size.
- *Relationships*. Objects in a composited picture must relate in ways that we expect in real life. An object placed between a light source and another object should cast a shadow on the second object. Objects located next to water or a shiny surface should have a reflection. Two objects of known size should be proportionate not only to the rest of the image, but to each other. If there are two moving objects in an image and one of them has motion blur, the other one should, too.
- *Transitions*. The transition between one object and another should be smooth, or, at least, as we expect from an image of that sort.
- *Viewing Angle*. If your angle is high above most of the objects in the composite, you shouldn't include an object shot from down low. Viewers may not notice the discrepancy at first, but the picture won't "look" right.

Keep these things in mind as you work in the next project. You can break a few of the rules I just outlined, but not too many. Start by loading the Mountain photo from the Web site.

Adding Clouds

The first step is to select the sky area so substitute clouds can be dropped in. Luckily, the sky in this photo is a fairly uniform blue, so the Magic Wand is a good tool for selecting it.

1. Use the Magic Wand with Tolerance set to 20 and clicked in the center of the sky. This will grab most of the sky, as shown in Figure 5.33.
2. Use Select > Similar to capture virtually all of the rest of the sky.
3. Choose Selection > Save Selection to save your sky mask.
4. Next, load the Sky photo from the Web site. Copy the image by pressing Ctrl/Command + A to select all of it, then Ctrl/Command + C to copy it, and, with your sky selection in the Mountain photo still active, choose Edit > Paste Into Selection (or press Shift + Ctrl/Command + V) to insert the new clouds into the photo.

Figure 5.33 *Grab most of the sky using the Magic Wand.*

5. Use Image > Resize > Scale and resize the clouds so they fit in the available area. Notice that you don't have to resize the image proportionately. You can stretch in one direction or another to make the clouds fit. The "distortion" isn't apparent because clouds are just clouds and have no natural proportions.
6. Next, adjust the opacity of the new cloud layer in the Layer palette. One key to making composites is not having one object stick out because it is overly bright, overly sharp, or overly dramatic. By reducing the opacity of the cloud layer, the clouds will blend in with the plain blue sky underneath. I reduced the clouds to 44 percent opacity, and they blended in just fine.
7. You may make one final modification. I returned to the original mountain layer, loaded the sky selection, then inverted it (press Shift + Ctrl/Command + I) to select the mountains and foreground. I then copied that selection and pasted it down on a new layer above the clouds. Then, I used the Smudge tool to lightly smudge the edges of the mountains, removing any sharp line between the mountains and the sky. The image so far is shown in Figure 5.34.

Bringing the Seashore Inland

Next, we'll add an interesting shoreline to the photo, neatly covering up those houses and electric poles. Use the Inlet picture from the Web site. The original photo is shown in Figure 5.35.

1. Simply select the whole thing (Ctrl/Command + A to select; Ctrl/Command + C to copy), and paste it (use Ctrl/Command + V) down in the mountain photo.

Figure 5.34 *Once the sky has been merged, the image will look like this.*

Figure 5.35 *This seashore can be transplanted a few hundred miles inland.*

2. Make all the background layers transparent by adjusting the Opacity sliders for those layers. This will let you see the seashore layer more clearly, as shown in Figure 5.36.
3. With the shore layer active, use a soft eraser brush to remove the portion of the inlet that obscures the mountains and part of the valley on the left. The image will look like Figure 5.37.

Figure 5.36 *Make the background layers transparent so you can see to edit the seashore layer.*

Figure 5.37 *Remove parts of the seashore to reveal the mountains and valley.*

Adding a Castle

Next, take the Alcazar photo from the Web site, shown in Figure 5.38. The image happens to be a famous fortress almost completely destroyed during the Spanish Civil War, and then later rebuilt.

Figure 5.38 *This rebuilt castle can add some interest.*

1. Select only the castle using your favorite method. The Magnetic Lasso, used in Figure 5.39, works well for selecting the towers, which are clearly differentiated from the background, but the Polygonal Lasso can also be used.
2. Once you've isolated the castle, copy it and paste into the landscape as shown in Figure 5.40. I've made the underlying layers partially transparent so you can see clearly how the Alcazar fits in.

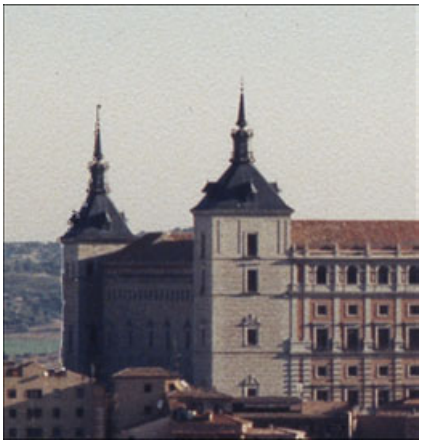


Figure 5.39 *Use the Magnetic Lasso to select the towers.*

Figure 5.40 *Paste the castle onto the landscape.*

3. The transition between the castle and the surrounding countryside isn't smooth. I fixed this by copying the rock that juts up from the right side of the inlet, pasting it down into a layer of its own, and reversing it left to right.
4. Next, use Image > Resize > Scale to widen it slightly to fit and make it look a little different from its twin. A touch of the Clone stamp tool to copy some texture from one place on the rock to another also differentiates the two.

The finished image is shown in Figure 5.32, earlier in this section.

Compositing Close Up

It's one thing to create a composite image of distant objects with edges that can be blurred, as we did with the fantasy landscape. Assembling a collage of images that are closer to the camera, sharper, and easier to examine closely is more of a challenge. For this next project, we'll move a kitten from a deck railing to a Chinese desk, and do all we can to make the combination look realistic. Start with the Kitten image from the Web site, shown in Figure 5.41, and follow along with these steps. As with the last project, I'm not going to describe every single procedure in exhausting detail.

Figure 5.41 *Crouching kitten, hidden background.*

Extracting the Kitten

Elements includes several tools specifically designed to help you isolate parts of an image from their backgrounds. These include the Background Eraser, which is nothing more than an eraser with a circular cursor similar to that used by the Magnetic Lasso, discussed earlier in this chapter. Set a Tolerance level in the Options bar, choose a size for the eraser, and use the Background Eraser to remove pixels that don't closely match the pixels in your main subject. This tool is useful for objects that have a fairly hard edge and a distinct background and, in such situations, offers little advantage over selection tools, such as the Magic Wand.

Unfortunately, our kitten doesn't have a plain background, so we'll have to extract her by other means. Try one of these:

- Use the Selection Brush to select the kitten.
- Work with the Magnetic Lasso tool to create a selection around the kitten.

- Try the Polygonal Lasso tool to trace carefully around the edges of the kitten.
- If you have a steady hand, use the ordinary Lasso tool. Remember, you can always erase any excess image area you grab by mistake.

When you've selected the kitten, copy her into a layer of her own. This is your chance to learn how to use the useful Layer via Copy command. Press Ctrl/Command + J. Elements will copy the selected area and create a new layer containing that part of the image automatically. It's much faster than the Ctrl/Command + C and Ctrl/Command + V sequence. The copied portion will look something like Figure 5.42.

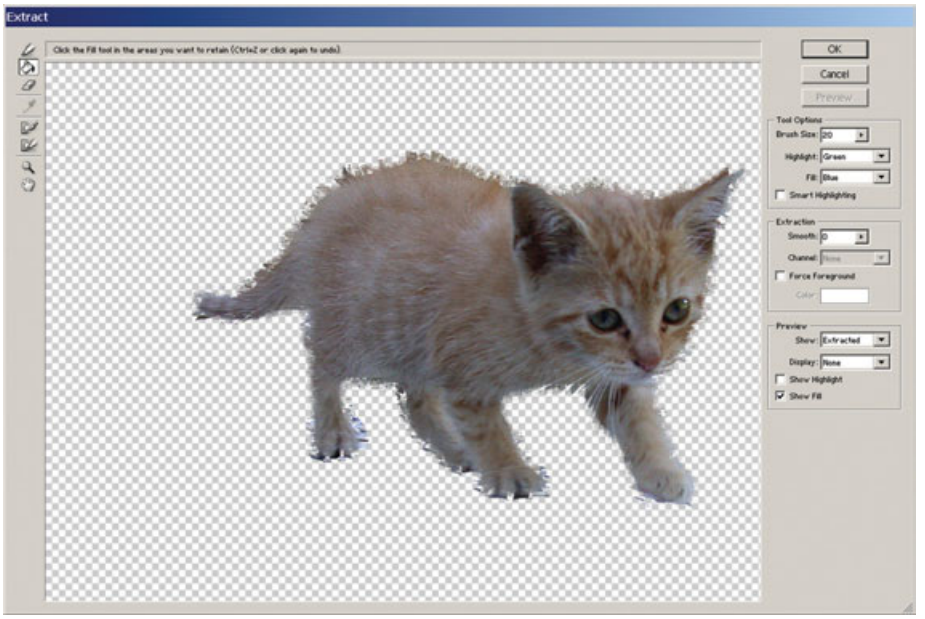


Figure 5.42 *The copied cat looks like this.*

Kitten on a Desktop

Load the Chinese Desk image, shown in Figure 5.43, from the Web site as we begin to give the kitten a new home. Follow these steps to deposit her on the shiny black surface.

1. Select the kitten from the original image, and paste her down into the Chinese Desk photo. Use Image > Resize > Scale to adjust her size to one that's realistic for the desktop.
2. Use Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast to boost the contrast of the kitten to match the harder lighting of the desk surface.
3. Use the Burn tool and a fairly large soft-edged brush to darken the undersides of the kitten's feet, body, and tail.
4. Use the Selection Brush to paint a selection that encompasses the kitten's eyes. Then use Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast to lighten the eyes dramatically and give them much more contrast. Your image will now look like the one shown in Figure 5.44.

Figure 5.43 *This Chinese desk will make an interesting background for our crouching tiger kitten.*

Figure 5.44 *Darken the underside of the kitten, and lighten her eyes.*

Creating a Reflection

Notice that parts of the desk are reflected in the shiny black surface. The kitten needs a realistic reflection of her own. Here's how to do it.

1. Choose Layer > Duplicate to duplicate the kitten layer.
2. Press Ctrl/Command + A to select the new layer and then use Image > Rotate > Flip Selection Vertical to produce a mirror image of the kitten.
3. Use Image > Rotate > Flip Selection Horizontal to rotate the mirror image so it will appear at the side of the kitten, rather than in front of it.
4. Reduce the opacity of the reflection to about 30 percent, using the slider in the Layers palette.
5. Here's the sneaky part: Adjust the way the reflection merges with the shiny desktop by selecting Difference as the merging mode in the Layers palette. This will ensure that darker parts of the reflection merge with the desktop, while letting the lighter parts show through. This produces a more realistic reflection than one in which the reflection layer completely overlays the desktop layer.
6. You can optionally apply some Gaussian blur to the reflection to soften it (Filter > Blur > Gaussian Blur), or leave the reflection sharp to give the desktop a shinier appearance. I didn't use blur in the image shown in Figure 5.45, but you might want to.

Figure 5.45 *Add a reflection and some whiskers.*

7. Create a new transparent layer, and, using a two-pixel white brush, paint in some whiskers on the right side of the kitten. The whiskers typically are too wispy to extract well, so I usually allow them to be erased and then replace them later.
8. Set the opacity of the whiskers layer to about 60% and apply Gaussian blur to them until they match the kitten's other whiskers fairly well.

More than One Way to Skin a Cat

You can colorize the kitten (or any other object you care to) in a realistic way using the following trick. I wanted to make this cat a little more tiger-like, so I enhanced its coloring a little with some bright orange-yellow. That's not as simple as you might think. If you color the cat using the Hue/Saturation controls, you'll apply color to all of it, losing some of the subtle color in its eyes. Follow these steps, instead:

1. Duplicate the kitten's layer using Layer > Duplicate.
2. Choose Enhance > Adjust Color > Hue/Saturation, and move the Hue and Saturation controls until you get the color you want. Click OK to apply the modification to the duplicate of the kitten layer.
3. Choose the Overlay merging mode in the Layers palette to merge the colorized layer with the original kitten in the layer underneath. This technique will let other colors show through, smoothly merging the new color with the original image.
4. Use the Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast controls on the colorized layer to get the color exactly the way you like. Usually, it's best to reduce the contrast a little and add some brightness, as I did for the final image, shown in Figure 5.46.

Figure 5.46 *A slick colorizing trick gives the kitten a tiger's pelt.*

Compositing Possibilities

Here's a quick summary of some of the other things you can do with compositing. You'll want to try your hand at all of these as you become a Photoshop Elements master.

- *Remove large objects*. You can't easily retouch large objects out of a photo, but you can replace an unsightly barn, brother-in-law, or auto junkyard in the background with something else, such as trees, a mountain, or a lake.
- *Relocate things in the photo*. Compositing gives you the opportunity to correct faulty compositions, change the center of interest in a photo, or make something else a little easier to see.
- *Replace components of the photograph*. That photo of your home looks great, but you no longer own that car parked out front. Drop in a picture of your new jalopy using Photoshop Elements' compositing techniques.
- *Add new objects to a photo*. Could your beach scene use some palm trees? Would you like to see J-Lo standing in the middle of your class reunion photo? Do you hope to work for a tabloid newspaper some day? Experiment with adding objects using compositing.
- *Squeeze things together, or stretch them apart*. If you have a picture that is too wide for your intended use, you can often take the left and right halves, overlap them, disguise the seam, and end up with a narrower photo that fits, but doesn't look distorted.

Combining Compositing and Retouching

Do you remember those photos taken at your wedding reception, in which your new brother-in-law managed to intrude on every photo? Do you have a great-looking group shot of everybody in your department at work—including Elmo, who was fired last month? Wouldn't it be great if you could just paint the offenders out of a photograph with one stroke? Elements takes more than one stroke, but it can do the job for you. Try this project to see how easy it is. Lacking a nasty in-law, we're going to clean up a vacation photo by deleting a poorly-posed subject, shown at left in Figure 5.47. Our weapons of choice for this exercise are the Clone Stamp retouching tool and a simple compositing technique. You can follow along using the Kids picture from the Web site.

The obvious solution, of course, would be to crop the kid out of the picture. However, that would snip out the interesting house on the hill in the background. Another remedy would be to copy the portion of the fence at the right of the picture and paste it down over the unwanted subject. Unfortunately, that stretch of fence and its background is very dark, and duplicating it would provide an unattractive dark area at the lower right corner of the picture. Cloning lets us preserve the background area that's already there, deleting only the boy. Here's how to do it.

1. Press S to choose the Clone Stamp tool, and select a medium-sized (say, 35-pixel) soft-edged brush.
2. Hold down the Alt/Option key and click in the foliage between the fence railings to select that area as the source for cloning.

Figure 5.47 *We can remove the kid at left painlessly.*

3. Carefully clone over the boy, a little bit at a time. Resample the foliage by Alt/Option-clicking frequently. If your clone "source" (represented by a crosshair that appears briefly to one side of your brush icon each time you click) moves into an area that has already been cloned, you'll get a repeating fish-scale effect like the one shown in Figure 5.48.
4. Continue cloning to paint over the boy completely. Don't worry about the fence railing at this time; we'll fix that later. The important thing is to reproduce a realistic background as it would appear behind the subject if he weren't there. After awhile, your image should begin to look like the examples shown in Figure 5.49.
5. Copy a horizontal section of the railing from the far left side of the fence, using the Rectangular marquee tool. You should be able to use this tool to select only the fence railing, and none of the background area.

Figure 5.48 *Avoid the fish-scale look that comes from cloning from an area that has already been cloned.*

Figure 5.49 *The kid is gradually cloned away.*

6. Paste the horizontal section into the image over a portion of the rail that has been obscured by cloning. (Remember to use Ctrl/Command + J to save time!)
7. Repeat steps 5 and 6 until all the horizontal railings have been "patched." Then do the same for the vertical railings. Merge all the transparent layers containing the railings (make all the layers except those containing railings visible), and with the top rail layer selected, press Shift + Ctrl/Command + E (Merge Visible). You'll end up with an image that looks like Figure 5.50. (I've left the selection boundaries visible so you can see the duplicated portion of the fence.)

Figure 5.50 *Add railings from the other side of the picture.*

8. The remaining boy is still a bit too much taller than the girls in the photo, so you can copy him, paste his image into the picture, and move him down a bit. Use the Clone Stamp tool, as necessary, to blend in the background.
9. Finally, use the Burn tool to darken the background and the girls at left. The finished picture looks like Figure 5.51.

Figure 5.51 *The finished image looks like this.*

Next Up

Color correction is another important image-editing technique you'll want to master as you learn to enhance your photos. In the next chapter, I'm going to show you at least four ways to improve colors of any image, or modify them to create some special effects.

6

Correcting Your Colors

Color is such a powerful visual and emotional tool that we tend to use it unconsciously, without any real thought about its effects. We choose colors for our homes and clothing because we "like" them, not realizing that warm earth tones in the family room, cool blues in a business office, or that all-black outfit chosen for a night on the town all have underlying statements about our moods and intentions.

Photographically, color is cool; color is hot. How can it be both? Photographers know that color is an amazing tool that can grab the eye, lead our attention to specific areas of an image and, through some unknown process, generate feelings that run the emotional color gamut from ardor to anger.

Conversely, *bad* color can ruin an image. It's a fact of life that a well-composed image that might look sensational in black and white can be utterly ruined simply by presenting it in color with inappropriate hues or saturation. Bad color can override every other aspect of a photograph, turning wheat into chaff. But what, exactly, is bad color?

The most interesting thing about color is that the concept good and bad can vary by the image, the photographer's intent, and the purpose of the finished photograph. The weird colors of a cross-processed image are very bad if they show up in your vacation pictures, but wonderfully evocative in a fashion shoot. A photo that has a vivid red cast may look terrible as a straight portrait, but interesting when part of a glamour shot taken by the glowing embers of a fireplace. A picture of a human with even the tiniest bit of a blue tinge looks ghastly, but might add the desired degree of chill to a snowy winter scenic.

Strictly speaking, you don't have to understand how color works to use it to make corrections or generate striking effects. It's entirely possible to use trial-and-error experimentation to arrive at the results you want. However, just as you don't need an electrical engineering degree to operate

a toaster, it's good to know a little something about electricity before you go poking around inside with a fork.

This chapter provides a gentle introduction to the color theories that photographers work with everyday, and which become even more useful when you begin working with Elements. You'll learn more about the most frequently used color models and the differences between the way color is viewed in the real world, captured by a film or digital camera, displayed on your monitor, and output by your printer. I'll spare you the hypertechnical details of working with color curves.

All the color correction tools in this chapter will be easy to use. Even so, you'll be able to work with them effectively because, before we ever touch a slider, I'm going to give you enough background in color that correction will be almost second nature to you.

Wonderful World of Color

In a sense, color is an optical illusion. Human perception of color is a strange and wonderful thing, created in our brains from the variation of the wavelengths of light that reach our eyes. If you remained awake during high-school science class, you'll recall that the retina of the eye contains rod cells (which are used for detail and black-and-white vision when there is not much light) and three types of cone cells, which respond to a different wavelength of light, all in the 400 nanometer (violet) to 700 nanometer (red) range of what we call the color spectrum.

All the colors we could see (if our eyes were constructed that way) would reside in that continuous color spectrum, like the one shown in Figure 6.1. However, we can't directly sense each of those individual colors. Instead, each of the three kinds of cone cells in our eyes "sees" a different set of frequencies, which happen to correspond to what we call red, green, and blue. Our brains process this RGB information and translate it into a distinct color that we perceive.

Figure 6.1 *Our eyes don't perceive the full spectrum of color, but capture hues through three different kinds of cone cells in the retina.*

Color films use a minimum of three different layers of photosensitive emulsion, each sensitive to red, green, and blue light. Digital cameras have three sets of color sensors, and scanners use three light sources, three arrays of sensors, or filters to capture red, green, and blue information. Finally, when digital information is seen on computer monitors, the same three colors (in the form of LCD pixels or CRT phosphors) complete the circle by displaying the color information for our eyes to view again.

This process is significant for an important reason. *None* of the systems used to capture or view color are sensitive to red, green, and blue light in exactly the same way. Some are particularly

sensitive to green light; indeed, digital cameras are designed with twice as many green-sensitive sensors than for red or blue. Most systems don't respond to all the colors in a perfectly linear way, either, so that a hue that is twice as intense may register slightly less or a bit more intense.

And it gets worse: The models used to represent those colors in the computer also treat colors in different ways. That's why an image you see in real life may not look exactly the same in a color slide, a color print, a scanned image, on your screen, or when reproduced by a color printer or printing press. Simply converting an image from RGB to CMYK (more on that later) can change the colors significantly. The concept of the range and type of colors that can be captured, manipulated, and reproduced by a given device or system—its color gamut—is an important one for photographers working in Elements.

Color Models

Artificial color systems, which include computer scanners, monitors, printers, and other peripherals, attempt to reproduce, or model, the colors that we see, using various sets of components of color. If the model is a good one, all the colors we are capable of detecting are defined by the parameters of the model. The colors within the definition of each model are termed its *color space*. Because nearly all color spaces use three different parameters such as colors (red, green, and blue, for example) or qualities (such as hue, saturation, and brightness), we can plot them as x, y, and z coordinates to produce a three-dimensional shape that represents the color gamut of the model.

The international standard for specifying color was defined in 1931 by the Commission Internationale L'Eclairage (CIE); it is a scientific color model that can be used to define all the colors that humans can see. However, computer color systems are based on one of three or four other color models, which are more practical because they are derived from the actual hardware systems used to reproduce those colors.

None of these systems can generate all the colors in the full range of human perception, but they are the models with which we must work. There have been some efforts to define new color working spaces, such as sRGB, but so far nothing has appeared that will completely take over the photography and computer graphics industries. Indeed, learning to work with Elements' sRGB setting was one of the most popular topics among puzzled users when Elements 6 was introduced. Your best bet is to learn something about all color working spaces, since image editors like Elements support several different color models.

Of the three most common models, the ones based on the hue-lightness-saturation (HLS) and hue-saturation-value (HSV) of colors are the most natural for us to visualize, because they deal with a continuous range of colors that may vary in brightness or richness. You use this type of model when you adjust colors with the Hue/Saturation dialog boxes.

Two other models, called additive color and subtractive color, are easier for computers to handle, because the individual components are nothing more than three basic colors of light. Throughout this book, I've referred to these models as RGB and CMY or CMYK (the K represents black and is optional). Photoshop Elements generally works only with RGB images.

Additive color is commonly used in computer display monitors, camera and scanner sensors, and other capture/display hardware, while subtractive color is used for output devices such as printers. Since you need to understand how color works with these peripherals, I'll explain the additive and subtractive models first.

Additive Color

Red, green, and blue, the additive primaries, are the primary colors of light. They are used for any system that works directly with light, whether it's a computer display, digital camera, or scanner. For example, computer monitors produce color by aiming three electronic guns at sets of red, green, and blue phosphors (compounds which give off photons when struck by beams of electrons), coated on the screen of your display. LCD and LED monitors use sets of red, green, and blue pixels to represent each picture element of an image that is switched on or off, as required. If none of the colors are displayed, we see a black pixel. If all three glow in equal proportions, we see a neutral color—gray or white, depending on the intensity.

Such a color system uses the additive color model—so called because the colors are added together, as you can see in Figure 6.2. A huge selection of colors can be produced by varying the combinations of light. In addition to pure red, green, and blue, we can also produce cyan (green and blue together), magenta (red and blue), yellow (red and green), and all the colors in between. As with grayscale data, the number of bits used to store color information determines the number of different tones that can be reproduced.

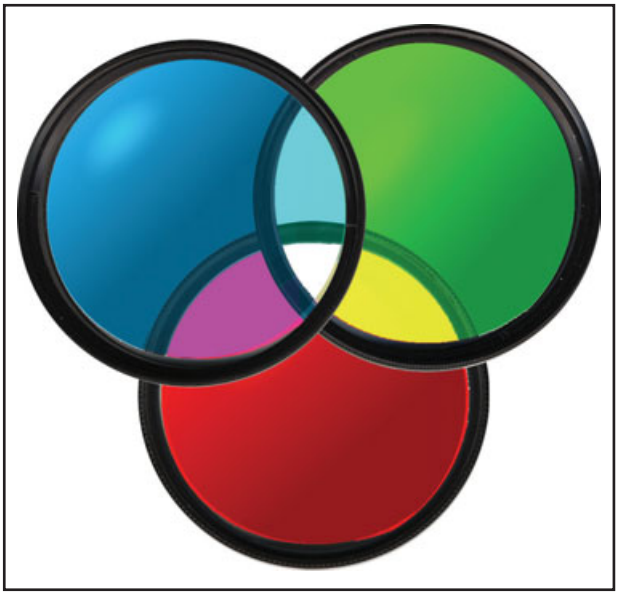


Figure 6.2 *The additive color system uses beams of light in red, green, and blue hues.*

Figure 6.2 shows one way of thinking about additive color, in a two-dimensional color space. The largest circles represent beams of light in red, green, and blue. Where the beams overlap, they produce other colors. For example, red and green combine to produce yellow. Red and blue add up to magenta, and green and blue produce cyan. The center portion, in which all three colors overlap, is white. If the idea that overlapping produces *no* color, rather than some combined color seems confusing, remember that the illumination is being added together, and combining all three of the component colors of light produces a neutral white with equal amounts of each.

However, if you look at the figure, you'll see that it shows overlapping circles that are each more or less the same intensity of a single color (allowing some artistic license for the 3D "shading" effect added to keep the individual circles distinct. For that reason, this two-dimensional model doesn't account for the lightness or darkness of a color—the amount of white or black. That added dimension is dealt with by, literally, adding a dimension, as you can see in the mock 3D model shown in Figure 6.3.

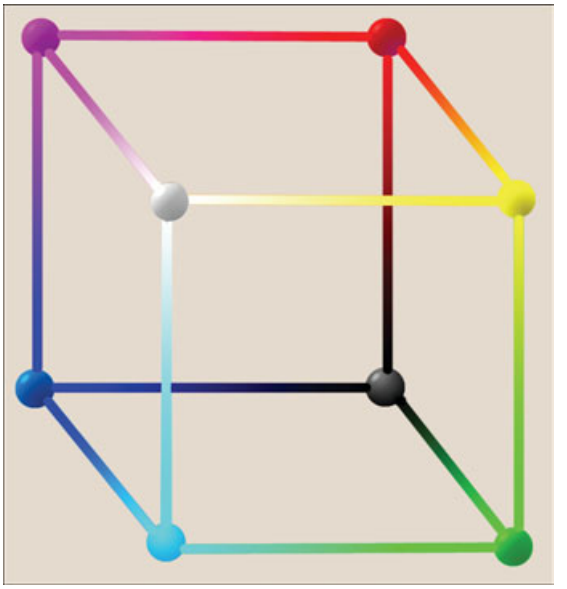


Figure 6.3 *The RGB color space can be better represented by a three dimensional cube, simplified to corners and edges in this illustration.*

The figure shows red, green, and blue colors positioned at opposite corners of the cube, with their complementary colors arranged between them. White and black are located opposite one another, as well. Any shade that can be produced by adding red, green, and blue together can be represented by a position within the cube.

No display device available today produces pure red, green, or blue light. Only lasers, which output at one single frequency of light, generate absolutely pure colors, and they aren't used for display devices. We see images through the glow of phosphors, LEDs, or LCD pixels, and the ability of these to generate absolutely pure colors is limited. Color representations on a display differ from brand to brand and even from one display to another within the same brand.

Moreover, the characteristics of a given display can change as the monitor ages and the color-producing elements wear out. Some phosphors, particularly blue ones, change in intensity as they age, at a different rate than other phosphors. So, identical signals rarely produce identical images on displays, regardless of how closely the devices are matched in type, age, and other factors.

In practice, most displays show far fewer colors than the total of which they are theoretically capable. Actually, the number of different colors a display can show at one time is limited to the number of individual pixels. At 1024 × 768 resolution, there are only 786,432 different pixels. Even if each one were a different color, you'd view, at most, only around three-quarters of a million colors at once. The reason your digital camera, scanner, display, and Elements itself need to be 24-bit compatible is so the *right* 786,432 pixels (or whichever number is actually required) can be selected from the available colors that can be reproduced by a particular color model's gamut. In practice, both scanners and digital cameras capture more than 24 bits worth of color, to allow for the inevitable information lost in translating a full-spectrum image to digital form. To understand why, you need to understand a concept called *bit depth*.

As you know from working with Elements, the number of theoretical colors that can be represented is measured using that bit depth yardstick. For example, "4-bit" color can represent the total number of colors possible using four bits of binary information (0000 to 1111), or 16 colors. Similarly, 8-bit color can represent 256 different colors or grayscale tones, while "high color" 15- or 16-bit displays can represent 32,767 or 65,535 colors. You'll sometimes encounter high-color images when you're displaying at very high resolutions using video cards which don't have enough memory for 24-bit color at that resolution.

For example, perhaps you own a 21-inch or larger monitor capable of displaying images at 2048 × 1536 pixels of resolution, and you are working with an older video card that can display only 65,535 colors at that resolution. For most applications, 16-bit color is as good as 24-bit color. Image editing with Photoshop Elements, unfortunately, is not one of them. Happily, the standard today is for video cards with 64MB or more of memory, fully capable of displaying 24-bit full color at any supported resolution, and 16.8 million different hues.

Scanners and some high-end digital cameras can even capture 36-bits or 48-bits of color, for a staggering billions and billions of hues. The extra colors are useful to provide detail in the darkest areas of an image, especially when you consider that many bits of information are lost during the conversion from an analog signal (the captured light) to digital (the image file stored on your computer).

Subtractive Color

There is a second way of producing color that is familiar to computer users, one that is put to work whenever we output our Elements images as hard copies using a color printer. This kind of color also has a color model that represents a particular color gamut. The reason why a different kind of color model is necessary is simple: When we represent colors in hardcopy form, the light source we view by comes not from the image itself, as it does with a computer display. Instead, hard copies are viewed by light that strikes the paper or other substrate, is filtered by the image on the paper, and then is reflected back to our eyes.

This light starts out with (more or less) equal quantities of red, green, and blue light and looks white to our eyes. The pigments the light passes through before bouncing off the substrate absorb part of this light, subtracting it from the spectrum. The components of light that remain reach our eyes and are interpreted as color. Because various parts of the illumination are subtracted from white to produce color, this color model is known as the *subtractive* system.

The three primary subtractive colors are cyan, magenta, and yellow, and the model is sometimes known as the CMY model. Usually, however, black is included in the mix, for reasons that will become clear shortly. When black is added, this color system becomes the CMYK model (black is represented by its terminal character, *k*, rather than *b* to avoid confusion with the additive primary blue). Figure 6.4 shows the subtractive color model in a fanciful representation, retaining the color filter motif I started out with in describing the additive color system. (You couldn't overlap filters to produce the colors shown, although you could print with inks to create them.)

In subtractive output devices such as color printers or printing presses, cyan, magenta, yellow, and, usually, black pigments (for detail) are used to represent the gamut of colors. It's obvious why additive colors won't work for hard copies: It is possible to produce red, green, and blue pigments, of course, and we could print red, green, and blue colors that way (that's exactly what is done for spot color). However, there would be no way to produce any of the other colors with the additive primaries. Red pigment reflects only red light; green pigment reflects only green. When they overlap, the red pigment absorbs the green, and the green absorbs the red, so no light is reflected and we see black.

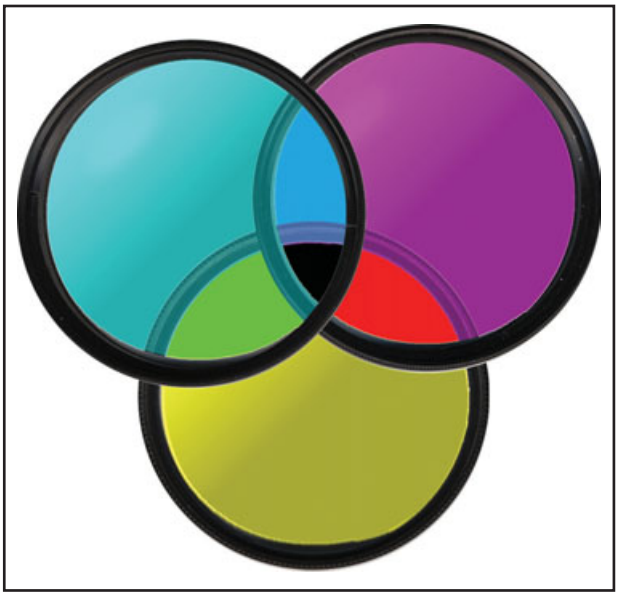


Figure 6.4 *The subtractive color system uses cyan, magenta, and yellow colors.*

Cyan pigment, on the other hand, absorbs only red light (well, it is *supposed* to). It reflects both blue and green (theoretically), producing the blue-green shade we see as cyan. Yellow pigment absorbs only blue light, reflecting red and green, while magenta pigment absorbs only green, reflecting red and blue. When we overlap two of the subtractive primaries, some of at least one color still reflects. Magenta (red-blue) and yellow (red-green) together produce red, because the magenta pigment absorbs green and the yellow pigment absorbs blue. Their common color, red, is the only one remaining. Of course each of the subtractive primaries can be present in various intensities or percentages, from 0 to 100%. The remainder is represented by white, which reflects all colors in equal amounts.

So, in our example above, if the magenta pigment was only 50% present and the yellow represented at 100%, only half of the green would be absorbed, while 100% of the blue would be soaked up. Our red would appear to be an intermediate color, orange. By varying the percentages of the subtractive primaries, we can produce a full range of colors.

Well, theoretically we could. You'll recall that RGB displays aren't perfect because the colors aren't pure. So, too, it is impossible to design pigments that reflect absolutely pure colors. Equal amounts of cyan, magenta, and yellow pigment *should* produce black. More often, what you'll get is a muddy brown. When daily newspapers first began their changeover to color printing in the 1970s, many of them used this three-color system, with mixed results.

Some printers, particularly dye sublimation/thermal dye transfer printers, still use only three colors. It works in this case because dye sub printers have an extraordinary tonal range (256 different values each for cyan, magenta, and yellow) and so are able to produce very good blacks using only three hues.

However, for most other applications better results can be obtained by adding black as a fourth color. Black can fill in areas that are supposed to be black and add detail to other areas of an image. While the fourth color does complicate the process a bit, the actual cost in applications like offset printing is minimal. Black ink is used to print text anyway, so there is no additional press run for black. Moreover, black ink is cheaper than critical process color inks, so it's possible to save money by using black instead of laying on three subtractive primaries extra thick. A typical image separated into its component colors for printing is shown in Figure 6.5

Figure 6.5 *Full-color images are separated into cyan, magenta, yellow, and black components for printing.*

The output systems you use to print hard copies of color images use the subtractive color system in one way or another. Most of them are unable to print varying percentages of each of the primary colors. Inkjet printers, color laser printers, and thermal wax transfer printers are examples of these. All these systems must simulate other colors by dithering, which is similar to the halftoning systems you already know about. A few printers can vary the amount of pigment laid down over a broader range. Thermal dye sublimation printers, mentioned earlier, are an example of this type. These printers can print a full range of tones, up to the 16.8 million colors possible with 24-bit systems.

The subtractive color system can also be represented in three dimensions, as I've done in Figure 6.6. In this illustration, the positions of the red, green, and blue colors have been replaced by cyan, magenta, and yellow, and the other hues rearranged accordingly. In fact, if you mentally rotate and reverse this figure, you'll see that it is otherwise identical to the one in Figure 6.3; RGB and CMYK are in this sense two sides of the same coin. However, don't make the mistake of thinking their color spaces are identical. There are colors that can be displayed in RGB that can't be printed using CMYK.

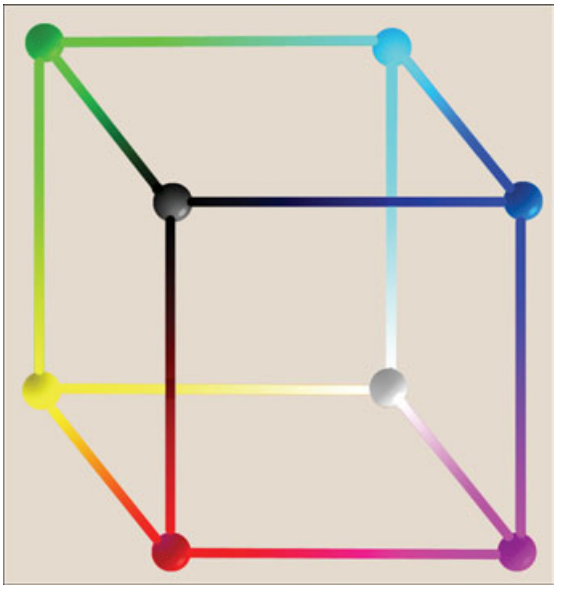


Figure 6.6 *The subtractive color model can also be represented by a 3D cube.*

Other Color Models

The hue-saturation-brightness color model, also known as HSB or HLS (for hue-lightness-saturation), is a convenient way to manage color for some operations. For example, if you want to adjust the saturation of a color without modifying its hue or brightness, HSB mode (using Enhance > Adjust Color > Adjust Hue/Saturation) is the way to go. In this model, individual colors, called hues, are represented as they are in a rainbow, as a continuous spectrum, arranged in a hexagon like that shown in Figure 6.7. The full color space is represented as a double hexcone that extends upwards and downwards from the hexagon, as shown in Figure 6.8. The top of the axis drawn through the center of the cones represents pure white, while the bottom point represents black. Moving higher in the cone produces lighter colors, lower in the bottom cone, darker colors. Saturation is represented by movement in a third direction, outward from the center axis. The center represents a desaturated color, the outer edges fully saturated hues.

Virtually all colors can be represented by three parameters in this model. The hue is the particular position of a color in the color wheel. Hues are often represented by angles, beginning with red at 0° and progressing around in a counterclockwise direction to magenta at 60°, blue at 120°, and so forth. The saturation of the color is the degree to which that color is diluted with white. A hue with a great deal of white is muted; a red becomes a pink, for example. A hue with very little or no white is vivid and saturated. Brightness can be thought of as the degree to which a color is diluted with black. Add black to our desaturated red (pink), and you'll get a very dark pink. Various combinations of hue, saturation, and brightness can be used to produce just about any color we can see. Individual hues can be found along the edges of the hexagon.

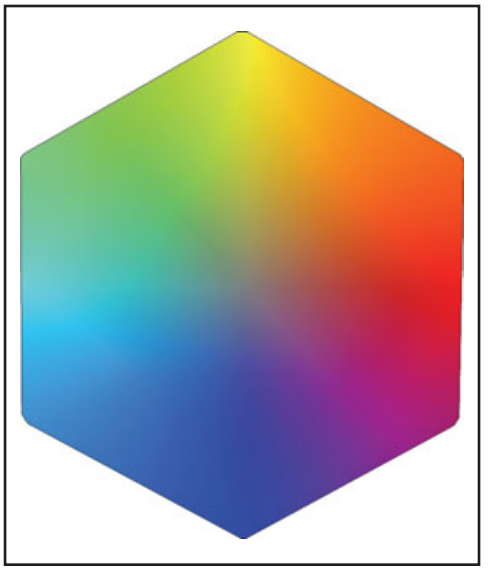


Figure 6.7 *The hue/saturation/brightness color model starts with a color circle or hexagon like this one.*

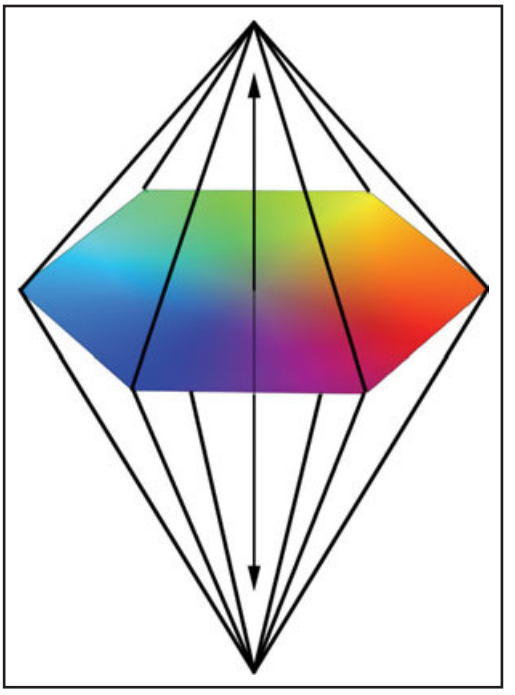


Figure 6.8 *The full color space is represented by two hexagonal cones. Moving from the center outward produces more saturated colors, while moving up or down the axis of the cones darkens or lightens the color.*

Moving from that edge toward the center within the same plane indicates a color that is less saturated. The center of the hexagon represents zero saturation. The axis extending through the center of the hexcones represents lightness and darkness, with white at the top and black at the bottom of the line.

Capturing Color Images

Today we have several options for capturing images for manipulation in Elements. Color scanners have been around the longest, for around 50 years, in fact. The first ones I saw early in my career cost more than a million dollars when you included the computer equipment needed to drive them, and they were intended only for professional graphics applications at service bureaus and large publications. Today, color scanners, like the one shown in Figure 6.9, can cost less than $100.

Figure 6.9 *Modern color scanners can cost $100 or less.*

Color scanners are nothing more than a system for capturing the proper amount of each of the primary colors of light in a given image. So, these scanners use three different light sources—one each of red, green, and blue—to scan a color image. To do so, some older scanners actually made three passes over the image—once for each color. More recent scanners use multiple light sources, or "rotate" their illumination, using red/green/blue light in succession to capture an image in a single pass.

The amount of light reflected by the artwork for each color varies according to the color of the pigments in the original. Cyan pigment, for example, absorbs red light and reflects blue and green. So, when a cyan area is illuminated by the red fluorescent light in a scanner, relatively little light is reflected. Most of the light produced by the blue and green fluorescents is reflected. Your scanner software records that area of the original as cyan. A similar process captures the other colors in your subject during the scan. Even if you don't use a scanner yourself, you may work with scanned images that are captured by your photofinisher when converting your color slides or prints to digital form for distribution online or as a Picture CD or PhotoCD.

Digital cameras cut out the middle step by creating color images directly. Where scanners use a linear array that grabs an image one line at a time, digital cameras use a two-dimensional array

that grabs a complete bitmap in one instant. Today, digital cameras with 3.3 to 8 megapixels (or more) of resolution can capture images that are virtually indistinguishable from those grabbed on film when reproduced or enlarged to 8 × 10-inches or less.

You'll find more information about color scanners in my book *Mastering Digital Scanning with Slides, Film, and Transparencies* and lots more nuts-and-bolts on digital cameras in *Mastering Digital Photography*, both from Course Technology.

Color Calibration and Gamma Curves

Conventional film is well-known for having color reproduction characteristics that vary over a considerable range. Some films are prized for their vivid, saturated colors and are used to make product shots exciting or to brighten an overcast day. Other films are chosen for their neutrality or realistic flesh tones. Digital color offers new capabilities, but carries with it the same color reproduction concerns that film has long displayed. Whether you're shooting film or pixels, in most cases, you'll want your image to closely approximate the original. Neither color display systems nor color hardcopy output devices are consistent or particularly accurate. The best you can do is calibrate your peripherals so that there is a relationship between the colors in the original, what you see, and what you get as output.

The process is complicated by two facts. First, the response of any color system is rarely linear. And, to make things worse, it's difficult to describe a color in such a way that it means exactly the same thing to everyone. Assume for a moment a 24-bit system with 256 different tones of each color. A value of 0 for a particular color should represent no color; a value of 255 should represent the maximum intensity of that color. On a linear scale, 64 would represent about 25% intensity, 128 would be 50%, and so on. Yet, in real applications, an intensity of 64 is not half that of 128. It corresponds to some other percentage, depending on the characteristics of the device being used. The relationship of the actual representation to the ideal is known as a gamma curve.

Scanners do happen to conform to the ideal rather closely, but computer displays and printers tend to vary greatly. If you know the gamma curve of a particular device, however, you can correct it. For example, if you know that, with a certain device, a value of 64 produces an intensity that is only 90% of what it should be to be linear, you can boost that value by an appropriate amount whenever it occurs.

This is done by building a gamma correction table using the tools supplied by your scanner vendor. The table will include a value for each of the levels used in a system. The correction values can be automatically substituted by your software for the default values, theoretically producing a perfect, 45° gamma curve.

Many vendors provide device characterization files for their products. Mac OS X has its own calibration tool you can use to calibrate your system, and the Adobe Gamma application, which previously worked with both Windows and Macs, is now available only for Windows (unless your Mac has an earlier version of the utility still installed). You'll find instructions for using the Adobe Gamma application to profile your monitor in Windows at the end of this chapter.

Color Correction

Sometimes a horrid-looking image may have nothing more wrong with it than the balance of colors used to represent the image. Other times, the balance may be okay, but you'd like to make the colors look horrid in order to produce a desired special effect in your image.

Color balance is the relationship between the three colors used to produce your image, most often red, green, and blue. You need to worry only about three different factors.

- *Amount of Red, Green, and Blue*. If you have too much red, the image will appear too red. If you have too much green, it will look too green. Extra blue will make an image look as if it just came out of the deep freeze. Other color casts are produced by too much of two of the primary colors, when compared to the remaining hue. That is, too much red and green produce a yellowish cast; red and blue tilt things toward magenta, and blue and green create a cyan bias. Figure 6.10 shows the same image with red, green, and blue color casts.

Figure 6.10 *Left to right you'll find reddish, greenish, and blueish color casts.*

- *Saturation*. That is, how much of the hue is composed of the pure color itself, and how much is diluted by a neutral color, such as white or black. Figure 6.11 shows the image with low, normal, and high saturation.

Figure 6.11 *The image has low saturation (left), normal saturation (middle), and high color saturation (right).*

- *Brightness/contrast.* Brightness and contrast refer to the relative lightness/darkness of each color channel and the number of different tones available. If, say, there are only 12 different red tones in an image, ranging from very light to very dark, with only a few tones in-between, then the red portion of the image can be said to have a high contrast. The brightness is determined by whether the available tones are clustered at the denser or lighter areas of the image. Pros use something called histograms to represent these relationships, but you don't need to bother with those for now. Figure 6.12 shows the image with the contrast and brightness set low, normally, and high.

Figure 6.12 *Brightness and contrast have been set low at left, normally in the middle, and both are high at right.*

You may wonder what causes bad color in the first place. Indeed, knowing the sources of bad color can help you avoid the need for much color correction. Unfortunately, there are many culprits, whether you're using color negative film or slides, a scanner, or a digital camera. Here are the major sources of bad color.

Problem: Wrong Light Source

Reason: All color films are standardized, or balanced, for a particular "color" of light, and digital cameras default to a particular "white balance." Both are measured using a scale called *color temperature*. Color temperatures were assigned by heating a mythical "black body radiator" and recording the spectrum of light it emitted at a given temperature in degrees Kelvin. So, daylight at noon has a color temperature in the 5500° to 6000° range. Indoor illumination is around 3400°. Hotter temperatures produce bluer images (think blue-white hot) while cooler temperatures produce redder images (think of a dull-red glowing ember). Because of human nature, though, bluer images are called "cool" and redder images are called "warm," even though their color temperatures are actually reversed.

If a photograph is exposed indoors under warm illumination using film balanced for cooler daylight, the image will appear much too reddish. If you were using a slide film, you'd get reddish slides. The photoprocessing lab can add some blue while making prints from "daylight balanced" color negatives exposed under this warm light, though, giving you reasonably well-balanced prints. Some professional films are balanced for interior ("tungsten") illumination. If one of these is exposed under daylight, it will appear too blue. Again, prints made from tungsten-balanced color negatives can be corrected at the lab.

At the same time, your digital camera expects to see illumination of a certain color temperature by default. Under bright lighting conditions it may assume the light source is daylight and balance the picture accordingly. In dimmer light, the camera's electronics may assume that the illumination is tungsten, and color balance for that. This may be what happens when your digital camera's white-balance control is set to Auto. Figure 6.13 shows an image exposed under tungsten illumination with a daylight white balance.

Figure 6.13 *Exposing daylight film under tungsten illumination, or taking a digital picture with a daylight white-balance setting produces a reddish image.*

Solution: You can often make corrections for this type of defect digitally in Elements. However, to avoid the need entirely, use the correct film, or use a filter over the camera lens to compensate for the incorrect light source. You may not need to bother with color negative films, but will certainly want to do something in the case of slide films. Note: the light a filter removes must be compensated for by increasing the exposure in the camera.

With a digital camera, set the white balance manually using your camera's controls. Your camera probably has a setting that allows you to point the lens at a white object and let it use that as its white point. Or, your camera may have some built-in white-balance settings for tungsten, fluorescents, daylight, and other sources.

Problem: Fluorescent Light Source

Reason: The chief difference between tungsten and daylight sources is nothing more than the proportion of red and blue light. The spectrum of colors is continuous, but is biased toward one end or the other. However, some types of fluorescent lights produce illumination that has a severe deficit in certain colors, such as only particular shades of red. If you looked at the spectrum or rainbow of colors encompassed by such a light source, it would have black bands in it, representing particular wavelengths of light. You can't compensate for this deficiency by adding all tones of red, either digitally or with a filter that is not designed specifically for that type of fluorescent light. Figure 6.14 shows an image that was exposed under fluorescent lights using a tungsten light balance.

Figure 6.14 *Some fluorescent lights can produce a greenish image.*

Solution: You may need to manually set your digital camera's white balance to Fluorescent. If you're using film, your camera retailer can provide you with color filters recommended for particular kinds of fluorescent lamps. These filters are designed to add only the amounts and types of colors needed. Since it's difficult to correct for fluorescent lights digitally, you'll want to investigate this option if you shoot many pictures under fluorescents and are getting "greenish" results.

Problem: Incorrect Photofinishing

Reason: Here's one that digital photographers don't have to worry about. Equipment that makes prints from color negatives is highly automated, and usually can differentiate between indoor and outdoor pictures, or those that have a large amount of one color. Sometimes the sensors are fooled and you end up with off-color prints, or those that are too light or dark. The processing of color slides won't usually have any effect on the color balance or density of the transparencies, unless something is way out of whack, so you'll usually be concerned only about the color balance of prints.

Solution: Change finishers if it happens often. Ask that your prints be reprinted. If you'd rather not bother, you can often make corrections digitally after you've scanned the prints.

Problem: Mistreatment of Original Film

Reason: Your digital film cards won't deteriorate if you expose them to harsh environments briefly, but the same is not true for film. If you regularly store a camera in the hot glove compartment of your car, or take a year or more to finish a roll of film, you can end up with color prints that are off-color, sometimes by quite a bit. If your prints have a nasty purple cast, or even some rainbow-hued flares in them, your negatives probably suffered this indignity.

Solution: Usually, film that has been "fogged" by heat or latent image keeping effects cannot be corrected. If it hurts when you do that, don't do that. Figure 6.15 shows an image faded by heat and light.

Figure 6.15 *Leave your camera in the trunk for too long, and you may end up with a fogged image like this one.*

Problem: Mixed Light Sources

Reason: You bounced your flash off a surface such as a colored wall or ceiling, and the pictures picked up the color of that surface. Or, you took an indoor picture with plenty of tungsten light, but the subject is near a window and is partially illuminated by daylight.

Solution: Avoid these situations. If some of your image is illuminated by the colored bounce flash, or daylight streaming in through a window, and other portions by another light source, you'll find it very difficult to make corrections. Investigate turning that picture into an "arty" shot.

Problem: Faded Colors

Reason: The dyes in color prints and slides are not stable, and will change when exposed to strong light or heat for long periods (one to five years), or with no further impetus even if kept in the dark for much longer periods (five to twenty years, and up).

Solution: In the case of color prints, you can sometimes make a new print from the original negative if you can find the negative and it was kept in a cool, dark place. Faded color prints and original slides can often be corrected digitally after scanning, because the color changes tend to take place faster in one color layer than another. You may be able to "add" missing colors by reducing the amount of the other colors in the photograph.

There are other reasons why you can end up with poorly balanced images, but this section has covered the ones you can do something about. Now, let's look at four different ways to color correct these images.

Problem: Unexpected Blue Cast in Flash Photographs.

Reason: Certain fabrics, particularly whites, reflect a huge amount of ultraviolet light, making that neutral white garment turn a horrid blue. Because our eyes can't perceive ultraviolet light (except in the form of a brighter, whiter wash), but film can, we don't see this bluish cast as dramatically as the film does. Wedding photographers in particular have to cope with this.

Solution: Warming filters can cope with this, but you can often fix the problem in Elements by adding a little red to your photo. Human faces tend to accommodate a bit of extra warmth, as you can see in Figure 6.16.

Figure 6.16 *Extra ultraviolet reflection from white fabrics can produce bluish pictures like the one at top. Fortunately, Elements can correct for this error.*

Color Correction Made Easy

Entire books have been written on sophisticated color correction techniques, but I'm going to make the process fairly easy. I'll start out with several traditional ways to correct color in images, and move on to some newer, easier alternatives. You can select the method you're most comfortable with: hands-on, seat-of-the-pants correction, or the simple, automated alternatives provided by Elements.

Just keep in mind that as you try to improve the color balance, brightness/contrast, and other attributes of photographs, none of the following methods can add detail or color that isn't there. All techniques work well with photographs that have, say, all the colors somewhere, but with too much of one hue or another. The extra color can be removed, leaving a well-balanced picture behind. Or, you can beef up the other colors, so they are in balance once again. Elements can do that by changing some pixels that are relatively close to the color you want to increase to that exact color.

But remember that removing one color, or changing some colors to another color doesn't add any color to your image: either way, you're taking color out. So, if you have a photograph that is hopelessly and overpoweringly green, you're out of luck. When you remove all the green, there may be no color left behind. Or, you can add magenta until your subject's face turns purple, and all you'll end up with is a darker photo. You must start with a reasonable image; color correction is better suited for fine-tuning than major overhaul.

We'll look at Elements' automated and manual color correction controls, one at a time.

Using Auto Color Correction

Elements' Auto Color Correction tool is the fastest way to provide quick color fixes to images. You might want to try this command first, and if the results are satisfactory, you're all set. If you don't like the results, you can try out one of Elements' other color-fixers. To use this tool, follow these steps:

1. Open the image you want to correct.
2. Choose Enhance > Auto Color Correction from the menu, or press Shift + Ctrl/Command + B.
3. If the results are satisfactory, you're done. Otherwise, press Ctrl/Command + Z to return to your unaltered image.

Using Remove Color Cast

The Remove Color Cast command lets you fix an image that has a color tinge by choosing an area that should be a neutral color, but isn't. Elements automatically adjusts the area you select to return it to a neutral rendition. This should remove the color cast. To use this tool, follow these steps:

1. Open the image you want to correct.
2. Choose Enhance > Adjust Color > Remove Color Cast. The dialog box shown in Figure 6.17 will appear and the cursor turns into an eyedropper.

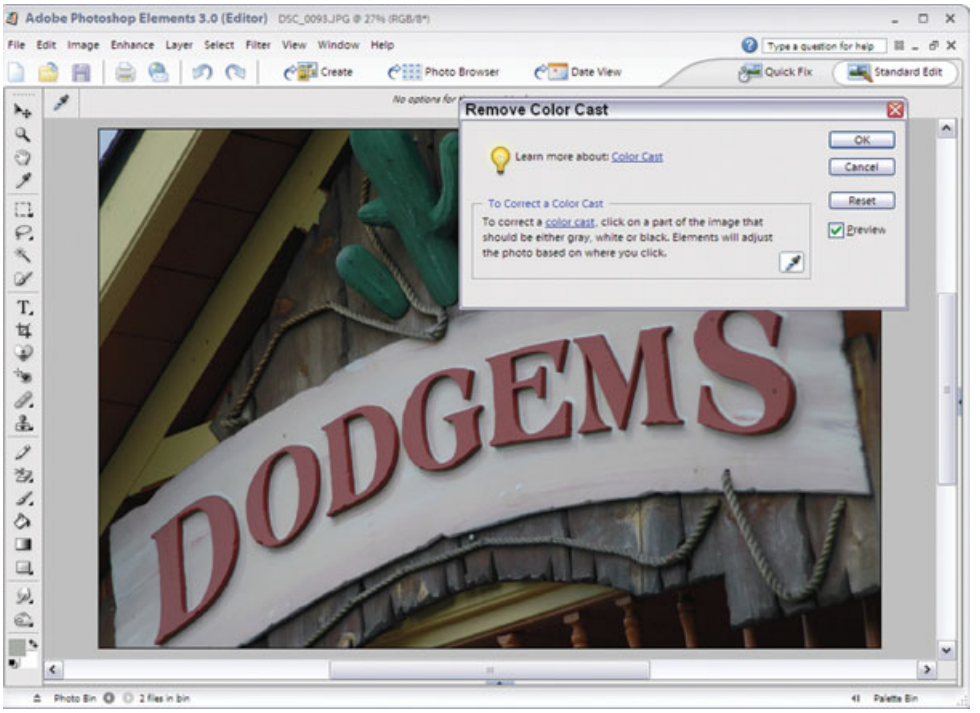

Adobe Photoshop Elements 3.0 (Editor)
File Edit Image Enhance Layer Select Filter View Window Help
Create
Photo Browser
Date View
Quick Fix
Standard Edit
Remove Color Cast
Learn more about: Color Cast
OK
Cancel
Reset
Preview
To Correct a Color Cast
To correct a color cast, click on a part of the image that should be either gray, white or black. Elements will adjust the photo based on where you click.
DODGEMS

Figure 6.17 *Click in a neutral area to remove a color cast.*

3. Locate a part of the image that should be a neutral color and click there.
4. If the results are satisfactory, you're done. Otherwise, press Ctrl/Command + Z to return to your unaltered image.

Adjusting Hue/Saturation/Brightness

You may encounter images that can be improved by changing the hue, saturation, or brightness of one color only. Elements lets you work with the HSB color model through the Enhance > Adjust Color > Hue/Saturation dialog box, shown in Figure 6.18. This control lets you adjust these individual values for each color channel.

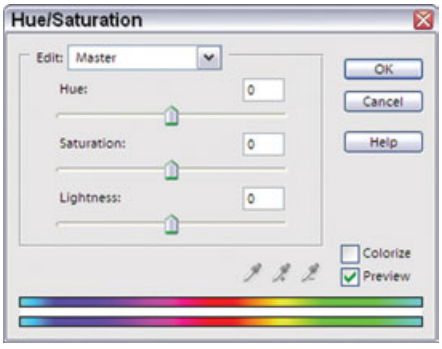


Figure 6.18 *Elements' Hue/Saturation dialog box lets you work with hue, saturation, and brightness (or lightness) components separately.*

For example, you might have a holiday picture that needs to have its reds and greens enriched, but with muted blues. Perhaps the green grass and foliage in another color have picked up an undesirable color cast and you want to shift all the green values one way or another to improve the color. Or, you may want to darken or lighten just one color in an image (rather than all of them, which is done through the

conventional Lighten/Darken controls). Any of these are possible with the Hue/Saturation dialog box. Just select the color channel you want to work with, and move the sliders to get the effects you want. Figure 6.19 shows an Irish landscape that has been made considerably greener using this dialog box.

Figure 6.19 *Elements' Hue/Saturation control brightened the foliage in this picture.*

Using Color Ring Arounds and Variations

Color labs that deal primarily with professional photographers charge a lot more for the same size print as, say, an amateur-oriented photofinisher. Instead of a dollar or two for a photofinisher's 8 × 10-inch print, you can pay $10.00 to $20.00 and up (way up) for the same size print from a professional lab. Why the difference?

Both amateur and pro labs can produce automated (or machine) prints, although the equipment may be very different. The pro lab also offers handmade, or custom prints, produced one at a time with an enlarger and painstaking manual techniques. The exact color balance of a custom print is often crucial, so a pro lab may produce five or six variations and let the client choose the preferred example. That's why custom prints are worth the extra money: You're paying not only for the handwork, but for the ability to choose from among several different prints. It's faster and more efficient for the lab to produce the variations all at once than to go back and make tiny corrections over and over until the exact version you want is produced.

The same logic holds true in the digital world. You can play with the color balance of an image for hours at a time, never quite achieving what you are looking for. There's no guarantee that, after a lot of work, you might decide that an earlier version really did look better, after all.

Elements was one of the first image editors to jump on the "color ring around" or "variations" bandwagon. In this mode, the software itself generates several versions of an image, arranged in a circle or other array so you can view a small copy of each one and compare them. Elements' Variations mode is especially useful, so I'll use it to illustrate another way to color correct problem photos.

Working with Elements' Variations Option

For this exercise, we're going to use a typical color portrait that has been goofed up big time. It's been printed quite a bit too dark, with plenty of extra red. Yet, hiding underneath this disaster is a good photo. We can use Elements' Variations to fix this image. Just follow these steps:

1. If you want to follow along, you can load the Close-up image from the Web site. Otherwise, experiment with a photo image of your own. The principles are exactly the same.
2. With Elements, you can generate a color ring around by choosing the Enhance > Adjust Color > Color Variations. The Variations dialog box is shown in Figure 6.20.

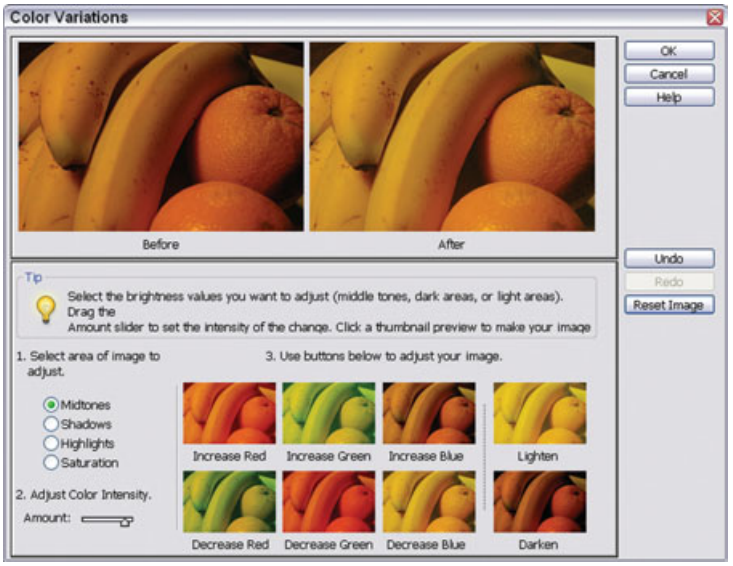


Figure 6.20 *Elements' Variations dialog lets you compare alternate versions of an image.*

There are several components in this window:

- In the top of the dialog box, you'll find a reduced size version of your original image paired with a preview with the changes you've made applied. As you apply corrections, the After preview will change.

- Immediately underneath is another panel with the current pick surrounded by eight different versions, six of them biased toward a different color: green, yellow, red, magenta, blue, and cyan, and the other two assigned to Lighten and Darken. These show what your current pick would look like with that type of correction added. You can click on any of them to apply that correction to the current pick.
- In the lower-left corner of this window is a group of controls that modify how the other samples are displayed. I'll describe these controls shortly.

3. If the Midtones radio button is not depressed, click on it. You also want the Color Intensity slider to be in the middle. The purpose of each of these controls is as follows:
   - The radio buttons determine whether the correction options are applied to the shadows, midtones, or highlights of the image, or only to saturation characteristics. You may make adjustments for each of these separately.
   - The Color Intensity scale determines the increment used for the each of the variations displayed in the two lower panels. If you select a finer increment (moving the Amount slider to the left), the differences between the current pick and each of the options will be much smaller. A coarser increment (moving the Amount slider to the right) will provide much grosser changes with each variation. You may need these to correct an original that is badly off-color. Since fine increments are difficult to detect on-screen, and coarse increments are often too drastic for tight control, I recommend keeping the pointer in the center of the scale. I've moved it to the right for the illustration so the color differences will be more apparent on the printed page.
4. Our image is too yellow, so the Increase Blue thumbnail will look better. Click on it to apply that correction to the After preview.
5. The image is also too dark. Click on the Lighten thumbnail.
6. Click on the OK button in the upper right of the dialog box when finished. Any time you want to cancel changes without leaving the dialog box, you can click Reset to return to the image's original color balance.

In this example, we worked only with the midtones. In most cases, the shadows, midtones, and highlights will need roughly the same amount of correction. In others, though, the shadows or highlights may have picked up a color cast of their own (say, reflected from an object off-camera). Variations lets you correct these separately if you need to.

More often, though, you'll use the shadow-midtone-highlights option to improve the appearance of images that have too dark shadows or washed out highlights. Where any image editor's brightness/contrast control generally affects all the colors equally, this procedure lets you lighten shadows (bringing out more detail) or darken highlights (keeping them from becoming washed out) without affecting other portions of the image. The technique also lets you avoid nasty histograms and gamma curves.

Using Photo Filter

Experienced photographers may find the Photo Filter feature to be a useful tool for color correction. Sometimes, bad color results because pictures were taken using the wrong color balance. If you work with film, each film is balanced only for a single color source (although with color negative films sometimes corrections can be made in the lab). If you're using a digital camera, your camera's automatic white-balance control will correct for the color temperature of the light source most of the time. However, you might have manually set your camera for a particular light source (for example, daylight or incandescent) and forgotten about it. Then, you took pictures under the "wrong" light source and ended up with photos that are too blue or too red.

If your image file is the RAW camera file, you can usually fix the color temperature setting when you import the image into Elements. If not, the Photo Filter feature may help you. Film photographers sometimes use glass filters that correct for improper color balance. For example, a filter in the Wratten #85 series (such as an 85C) can "convert" daylight illumination to the color temperature expected by indoor films. Or, a filter in the Wratten #82 series, such as an 82C, can convert indoor illumination to more closely resemble the color qualities that daylight-balanced films expect.

Photo Filter lets you mimic these filters after the fact. So, if you know a daylight picture was taken using indoor lighting (either to expose film, or in a digital camera with white balance set to incandescent), you can apply the appropriate filter and correct the colors quickly. Figure 6.21 shows the Photo Filter dialog box, which you can access by choosing Filter > Adjustments > Photo Filter. Here are some tips for using this feature:

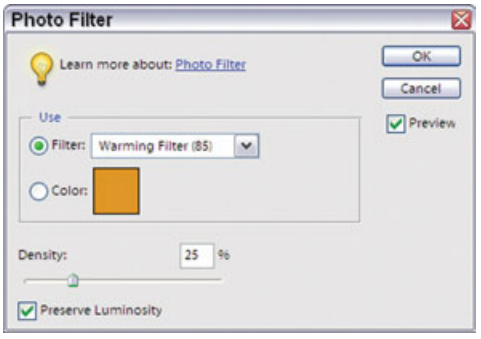


Figure 6.21 *The Photo Filter feature lets you apply filtered corrections directly.*

- If you know exactly what kind of correction is needed, you can choose the appropriate filter directly from the drop-down list.
- You can also choose a filter color by clicking the Color radio button, clicking the color box next to it, and selecting a color from the Color Picker.
- Adjust the strength of the filter you're applying by moving the Density slider. You can see the changes as they are applied in Elements' workspace behind the dialog box if you have checked the Preview button.
- Keep the Preserve Luminosity box marked so that your filter changes affect only the color and don't alter the brightness of the image.
- You'll find other hues besides the standard color correction filters in the Filter drop-down list. Use Red, Orange, Sepia, Deep Red, Underwater, and others for special effects.

Using Smart Fix and Quick Fix

Elements has two additional ways to correct color. The Smart Fix command, which you can access by choosing Enhance > Smart Fix, and fine-tune using Enhance > Adjust Smart Fix, can sometimes quickly repair images that have bad colors or tonal values. Smart Fix automatically sets several parameters, including brightness, contrast, color, and tonal values. It doesn't always provide optimal results. I find that Quick Fix mode is much better.

Access Quick Fix by clicking the Quick Fix tab in the upper-right corner of the Elements window. Your workspace will then look like Figure 6.22. You'll see Before and After views of your image (you can also choose Before (only) or After (only)), along with several controls arrayed along the right side. Some of these controls may be familiar to you. Here's a quick summary of what they do:

- In the General Fixes area you'll find two buttons that let you rotate the image left or right, an Auto button to apply Smart Fix, and a slider to fine-tune the amount of Smart Fix correction.
- In the Lighting area are Auto buttons for both Levels (tonal corrections) and contrast, if you care to use them. More helpful are the sliders that let you lighten shadows, darken highlights, or adjust the contrast of only the middle tones.

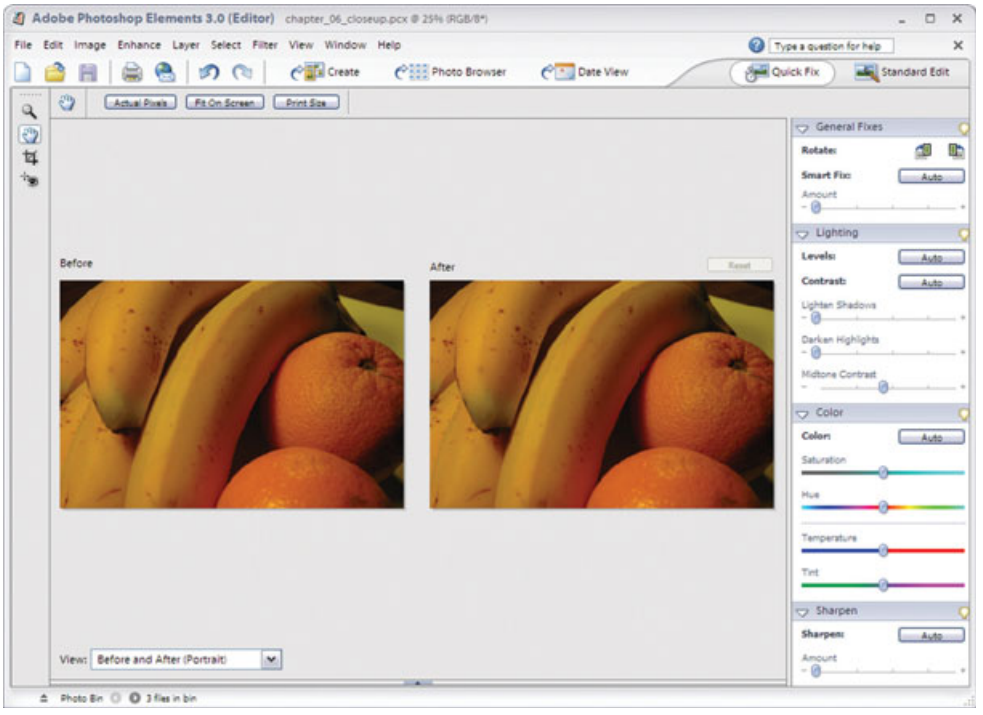


Figure 6.22 *You can view Before and After versions of your image in Quick Fix mode.*

- In the Color area you'll find an Auto button for automatic color correction. Or, you can fine-tune color yourself using the Saturation and Hue sliders discussed earlier in this chapter. You'll also find sliders for color temperature and tint. It's easy to play with these sliders while viewing the results in the After window until you get the exact correction you want.
- In the Sharpen area you'll find a slider to adjust the sharpness of your image.

You'll find that Quick Fix mode lives up to its name. It's the best of both worlds: You can activate automatic fixes if you like or fine-tune your image manually.

Replacing Color

Don't care for a particular color in your image? Say, your model was wearing a red dress and you'd prefer to see her in blue? Elements' great Replace Color command can come to your rescue. I ended up using this feature a lot for my last digital photography book. A fuss-budgety technical editor complained that all my product photographs were taken using the same background material. It took about five minutes with Elements' Replace Color facility to change several of the illustrations to a new background color, without affecting the other colors in the image, as you can see in Figure 6.23.

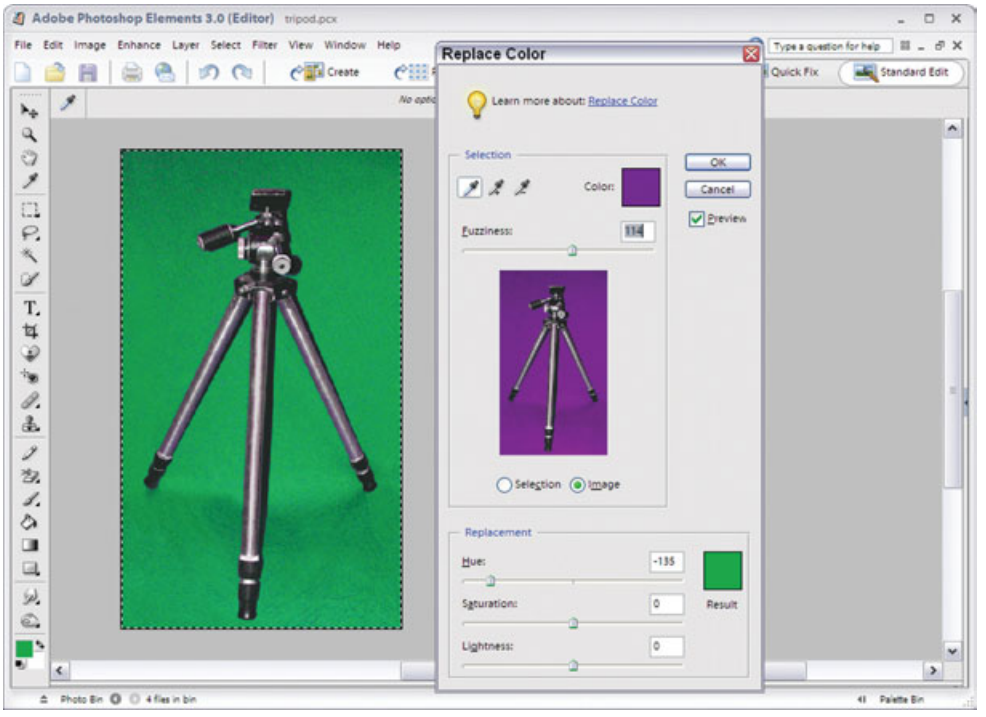


Figure 6.23 *Presto, change-o, the purple background has magically been transformed into a green one.*

The command is ridiculously easy to use. Follow these steps with your own image:

1. Choose Enhance >Adjust Color > Replace Color to produce the dialog box you see in Figure 6.23.
2. Click the Image box underneath the preview to see the original color image.
3. Use the Eyedropper tool to click in the color you'd like to change. Use the Add or Subtract eyedropper tools to expand or contract the colors selected.
4. Use the Fuzziness slider to allow Elements to replace additional colors that are close to the ones you've selected. Because this image had few color tones other than the background, I used a high fuzziness level to select virtually everything in the background.
5. Use the Hue, Saturation, and Lightness sliders to change the color, richness, and brightness of the replacement color. You can view the results as a preview in your original image if the Preview box is marked.
6. Click OK to apply the replaced color to your image.

Calibrating Your Monitor

While color corrections are something you're likely to do every day, setting up your computer for color management is something you are likely to do when you first install Elements, and then at intervals later on as your needs or equipment change. This section outlines the use of the Adobe Gamma control for your monitor. Adobe Gamma works with Windows to create an ICC profile for your display. (Macintosh OS X users should go to the Monitors control that's accessed through System Preferences. Then choose Color to calibrate your monitor.) Windows users (and those with earlier versions of Mac OS that do have Adobe Gamma) can just follow these steps to get set up.

1. Open the Adobe Gamma application. In Windows it's a control panel you can access from the Windows Control Panels panel (Start > Settings > Control Panel). If you're using an older version of Mac OS that still has the Adobe Gamma application, you can find it in your System folder in the Control Panels folder. The first window you see looks like Figure 6.24.

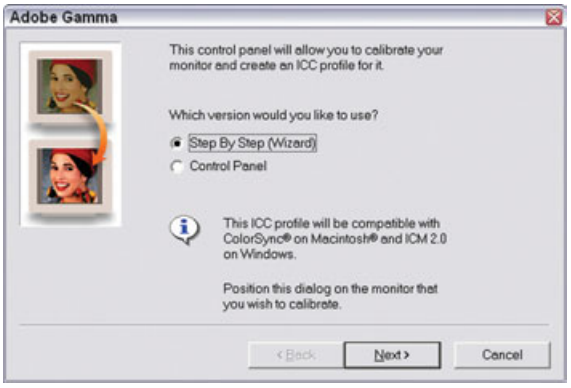

Adobe Gamma
This control panel will allow you to calibrate your monitor and create an ICC profile for it.
Which version would you like to use?
Step By Step (Wizard)
Control Panel
This ICC profile will be compatible with ColorSync® on Macintosh® and ICM 2.0 on Windows.
Position this dialog on the monitor that you wish to calibrate.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.24 *First choose whether to use the Assistant/Wizard or work directly with the control panel.*

2. You'll be given a choice of using a step-by-step, wizard approach, or going directly to the control panel itself. The wizard merely presents the choices provided in the control panel one at a time. If this is the first time you've used Adobe Gamma, you'll want to work with the parameters one at a time. Click the Step by Step (Assistant) button (on earlier versions of Mac OS) or the Step by Step (Wizard) button on the PC, and click Next. (If you have more than one monitor connected to your computer, the wizard will prompt you to drag the dialog box onto the monitor you want to calibrate.)
3. In the next dialog box, shown in Figure 6.25, you'll be invited to assign a unique name for the profile you're creating. If you've previously saved a profile and want to edit that, you can click the Load button and locate the profile on your hard disk. For example, you may have a monitor profile provided by the vendor of your particular display (if not, check their Web site). Click Next to move to the next dialog box.
4. You should see a white box, with two darker boxes inside it (the center box may be difficult to see, as it is a very dark gray). Follow the instructions shown in the dialog box in Figure 6.26, and set your monitor's contrast control to its highest setting. Then adjust the brightness control to make the center box dark, but not totally black. Then, click Next to move to the next dialog box.
5. In the dialog box shown in Figure 6.27, you'll need to select the type of phosphors that your monitor uses. You may want to check the manual that came with your monitor to see if the phosphors indicated match anything on the list. If you're working with a profile provided by your monitor vendor, the type

Adobe Gamma Wizard
Give the profile a unique descriptive name that will appear in application pop-up menus.
Description:
Hitachi Elite 751
This profile will serve as a starting point for the calibration of your monitor. If you wish to start with a different profile, click on Load.
Load...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.25 *Assign a name to your new profile.*

Adobe Gamma Wizard
The first step in calibrating your monitor is to adjust the brightness and contrast controls to their optimal settings.
First, set the contrast control to its highest setting.
Then, adjust the brightness control to make the center box as dark as possible (but not black) while keeping the frame a bright white.
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.26 *Set your monitor's brightness to its highest setting, then adjust the brightness control until the center box is dark.*

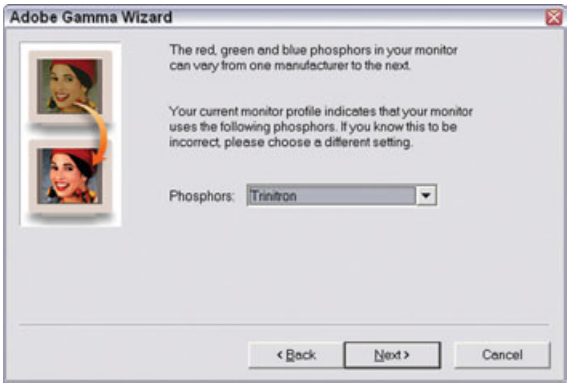

Adobe Gamma Wizard
The red, green and blue phosphors in your monitor can vary from one manufacturer to the next.
Your current monitor profile indicates that your monitor uses the following phosphors. If you know this to be incorrect, please choose a different setting.
Phosphors:
Trinitron
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.27 *Choose the type of phosphors used in your monitor.*

of phosphors will already be correct. Click the Next button to proceed.

6. Choose the target gamma for your system from the drop-down list. Macintosh OS uses a gamma setting of 1.8, while the Windows default is 2.20. When the target is chosen, move the slider shown in Figure 6.28 until the gray center box merges with the surrounding gray frame. Then, click Next to move on.
7. Next, you should set the color temperature of your monitor. In most cases, the default value of 6500K, shown in Figure 6.29, will work fine. Change this setting only if your monitor manufacturer recommends it.
8. If you're curious, you can "measure" your monitor's color temperature visually. Turn down the ambient light in your work area and click the Measure button in the dialog box. The Adobe Gamma tool will show you three gray squares against a black screen. Click the left square to make them all cooler, or the right square to make them warmer. When you are satisfied that you have a neutral gray, click the center square or press Enter to create your Custom hardware white point. If you change your mind, you can still select 6500K or another color temperature from the drop-down list.
9. Click Next to proceed to the dialog box shown in Figure 6.30. There, you can choose to work at a different white point from the one you've just set for your hardware. You will rarely need to change this. Click Next again to move to the final dialog box.

Adobe Gamma Wizard
The gamma setting of your monitor defines how bright your midtones are. Establish the current gamma by adjusting the slider until the center box fades into the patterned frame.
View Single Gamma Only
Now choose the desired gamma.
Gamma: Macintosh Default
1.80
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.28 *Merge the center gray box with the surrounding gray frame.*

Adobe Gamma Wizard
The white point of your monitor determines whether you are using a warm or cool white.
The hardware white point of your monitor is shown below. If you know this to be incorrect, choose a different setting. Or click on Measure to visually estimate it.
Hardware White Point: 6500° K (daylight)
Measure...
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.29 *Choose a color temperature for your display.*

Adobe Gamma Wizard
You can choose to work at a different white point than your monitor's hardware setting. The current adjusted white point is shown below. If desired, choose a new value.
Adjusted White Point: Same as Hardware
< Back
Next >
Cancel

Figure 6.30 *Normally, you wouldn't make any changes in this dialog box.*

10. You're done. The dialog box shown in Figure 6.31 allows you to compare your original monitor setting with the new one. Click Finish to save the profile and exit the Adobe Gamma application.

Adobe Gamma Wizard
You have now completed the Adobe Gamma Wizard. To view your screen prior to these changes, compare the results of the following options.
Before
After
To save your settings, click on Finish.
Use as Default Monitor Profile
< Back
Finish
Cancel

Figure 6.31 *Compare your new setting with your old, and then save your profile.*

Next Up

After all this work with color images, you may be ready to work with grayscale photos for awhile. The next chapter shows how easy it is to convert a good color picture to a bad black-and-white rendition, and provides the tools you need to create great grayscale images instead.

7

Beyond Black and White

There's a lot more to black and white than Paul McCartney's duet with Stevie Wonder. We've all heard phrases like "The world is not black and white." (Graham Greene), "The wings of Time are black and white." (Emerson), or even "Let me explain it to you in black and white." (every frustrated parent). The concept of monochrome represents simplicity, purity, or even polar opposites.

There are lots of reasons to use black and white, even when you have all the colors of life available to you through your digital or film camera, and a full-color image editor like Photoshop Elements. You probably have a photo-quality printer to make full color hard copies, too. So, why shoot black and white? This chapter will explore how photographers who value what black-and-white imagery can do can get what they need—and beyond—from our favorite image editor. You'll learn some of the reasons why you *need* to use grayscale images, how to create better conversions from color than Elements normally provides on its own, plus glean a few tips on reproducing some black-and-white film looks.

Why Black and White?

Most photos today are taken in color, but that wasn't always the case. While I'm fond of pointing out that daguerreotypes were actually color photos (in the sense that they had overall color tones and were not true black and white), color photography was a long time in arriving after the first photographic images were made by Nicéphore Niépce in 1826 and Henry Fox Talbot in 1835. Some early attempts at color still photography were made by Scottish physicist James Clerk Maxell, who understood that red, green, and blue were the primary colors of light, and in 1861 photographed the same scene in black and white through a set of red, green, and blue filters. By projecting the three images on a screen with appropriately colored lamps, he reproduced the image of a tartan ribbon.

However, color imaging didn't really catch on until Kodachrome slide film was introduced in 1936 and, in 1942, Kodacolor film for prints. (Earlier color systems never caught on.) Black-and-white images were still favored by amateurs and professionals through the '50s and most of the '60s. Amateurs liked black and white because it was less expensive than making color prints and more convenient than showing color slides.

Professionals often used monochrome for a variety of reasons. Perhaps the publications they worked for didn't publish color; black-and-white photos were standard in many magazines until the late '60s. Pros also used black-and-white images for creative reasons. Color can be distracting or destroy the mood of certain kinds of photos. Professional photographers even had cost considerations when their clients were unable to pay the tariff for full color. In the early '60s, for example, a color wedding album had to be priced much, much higher than the black-and-white version (sometimes with hand-colored images) that had been the standard for decades.

Color photography began to nudge black-and-white imaging out of the picture in the '70s, when instant-loading cameras and automated processing made color prints virtually as inexpensive as black-and-white (or, today, even cheaper). Affordable laser scanners at newspapers and magazines made full-color photography more practical for publications. More recently, digital tools like Elements, desktop scanners, and Photo CDs have removed the last vestiges of barriers to color photography. It's still possible to take black-and-white photos; many digital cameras have a monochrome setting and black-and-white film is plentiful for conventional cameras. Yet, most photos today are produced in color.

So, why are we talking about black and white? There are dozens of valid reasons for working in black and white. Here are some of them:

- Your destination for the image will display it only in black and white, and you want a fairly accurate preview of what the photo will look like. For example, you may have a photo that will be printed in black and white in a magazine, or included in a laser-printed newsletter. Two hues that are distinct in color may appear to be the same in black and white, providing an undesirable merger. If you know the image will be viewed in monochrome, you'll want to work with it in that mode.
- You don't know how your photo will be used, and want to cover all the bases. I submit two or three photos a month to our local newspaper. I give them color 5×7 prints because they publish them in color about 25 percent of the time. But I also preview the photo in black and white to see what it will look like in that mode. Given the vagaries of reproduction on newsprint, this is a very good idea.
- The picture you are working with originated as a black-and-white photo.
- Color is distracting. A big red or yellow blob in the upper-right corner of a photograph may command our attention, especially when our intended subject is a muted pastel. Our eye is attracted to color first, and then to brightness. In Figure 7.1 at left, the big red whatsit at the top of the frame grabs our attention, and it's hard to look away from. In black and white, however, as at right, it becomes just a framing element that surrounds the water and shore.

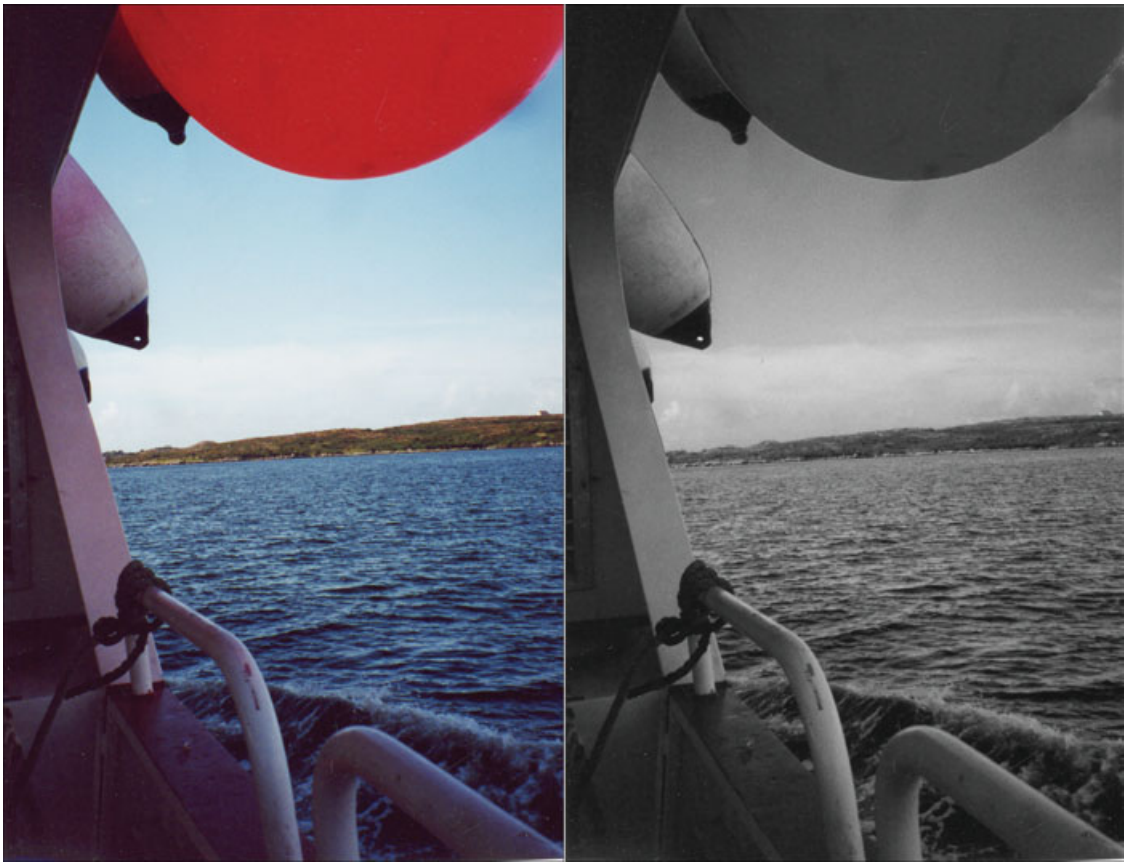


Figure 7.1 *The red object at the top of the frame grabs our attention but becomes just another framing device in black and white.*

- Color destroys the atmosphere. Moody pictures, high contrast photos, documentary photos with a gritty feel, and many other subjects may all look better in black and white. Would Dorothea Lange's immortal photo, "Migrant Mother" have been as effective in color? The cracked and lined face of the destitute mother of seven (who was, in fact, only 32 years old) was more powerful because it was shown in stark black and white.
- You want a historical look. A full color photo of a Civil War reenactment will be realistic, but it won't look like it could have been taken during the Civil War. Figure 7.2 wasn't really taken 150 years ago, but at least a full color image didn't tip us off. The sepia toning lent an old-timey look to it.
- Color is inflammatory or disturbing. Although nearly all of Quentin Tarantino's instant classic film *Kill Bill: Vol. 1* is presented in color, one crucial fight is shown (at least in USA versions) in black and white, simply because it was felt that the gory scene would be too shocking if presented in full, living color.

Figure 7.2 *Sometimes monochrome can provide an historical look to an image.*

- Color changes the emphasis. For example, you've probably seen figure studies in which close-ups of some body part, such as the curve of a shoulder, are made to represent something else, such as a desert landscape. The converse is also true: Edward Weston's famous still life, "Pepper #30" is said to resemble the musculature of a man kneeling. In color, it would simply be a very interesting picture of a pepper, just as the "landscape" photo would be transformed into a photo of a shoulder.
- You want to combine several color images that have widely varying color balances and have no time or inclination to make them match, or one or more of them are so off-color that you'd never be able to make them look anything other than patched together. If a color picture isn't an overriding concern, converting everything to black and white before compositing them together may be a satisfactory alternative.

Your Best Bet for Black and White

In the section that follows this one, I'm going to show you some of the pitfalls that Photoshop Elements falls into when creating black-and-white images from full color pictures. As you'll see, there is no sure-fire way of avoiding those pitfalls, although I do provide you with some suggested methods for getting the best black-and-white image you can.

However, for the very best black-and-white renditions, you'll want to choose another, non-Elements route. Here are some of your options:

- *Use black-and-white film*. If you're still shooting film, black-and-white film will give you the best quality results and the best conversions. That's what it's made for.
- *Have black-and-white prints made from your color negatives*. If you already have color negatives of images you'd like to convert to black and white, any photo lab can make black-and-white prints for you. There are special photographic papers designed to make accurate monochrome representations of color pictures.
- *Use your digital camera's black-and-white mode*. Many digital cameras have a black-and-white mode that produces monochrome images instead of color. You may find that this kind of rendition produces more accurate results than making the conversion in Elements.

DIGITAL BLACK AND WHITE

Theoretically, digital black-and-white pictures could be excellent, because the sensors themselves are color blind. They respond to color only because color filters are placed between the sensor's individual photosites and the incoming light. Unfortunately, other factors enter into the equation. One of these is that digital camera sensors are excessively sensitive to infrared illumination, which can produce "reds" that are lighter than they should be. In addition, you won't easily find a digital camera that allows you to flip the color filter out of the way to take black-and-white pictures.

Back in the early days, Kodak offered a digital camera specifically for black-and-white photography. Today, some photographers have been known to surgically remove the color Bayer filter from in front of their digital camera sensors to produce a black-and-white-only camera. This generally irreversible step is a bit drastic, but may be worth consideration if you really, really want to take realistic black-and-white photos and are equipped to handle the technical repercussions.

Converting Color to Black and White

Elements makes it very, very easy to convert a good color photo into a bad black-and-white image. All you need to do is select Image > Mode > Grayscale from the menu bar, and, presto-change-o your color image has been converted to an inaccurate black-and-white rendition. Or, perhaps, you decide to use Enhance > Adjust Color > Remove Color, which does much the same thing, but only operates on a particular layer or selection.

Of course, images converted this way always seem to have low contrast. So, your next step would probably be to use Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast to boost the contrast a bit. In a process that took only a few seconds, you've managed to convert a good color image into an excessively contrasty black-and-white photo that doesn't necessarily offer a good representation of the original. What happened? You've fallen for the same trap that has snared photographers for decades. It has long been common to increase contrast when making a black-and-white print from a color negative, and the practice has become standard operating procedure in the digital world, too.

The fallacy lies in the fact that in a black-and-white photo, the contrast, or apparent differences between objects in an image that makes them distinct, is determined solely by the relationship between the light and dark tones. This is important: In a black-and-white picture, the only way to separate various objects in a picture is through the use of the monochrome tones, the variations between them, and how they provide a three-dimensional look as they represent the lighting that illuminates the objects. There are no other visual cues to differentiate between, say, a green Granny Smith and a Red Delicious apple.

That's not true when an image is presented in color. In a color photo, *three* separate factors determine true visual contrast among objects. Those include the hue (the various colors of the image), saturation (how rich they are), and brightness (the lightness or darkness of a tone). I see this glossed over in most books about Elements, so I'm going to take the time to clarify the inherent problems behind color to black-and-white conversions. Understanding the problems will help you avoid them.

The following illustrations should make the situation abundantly clear. I'll use the image shown in Figure 7.3, a landscape photo of a barren dirt field with mountains and sky in the background. When converted to grayscale using Elements' Mode changing operation, the image looks like Figure 7.4.

Figure 7.3 *The various components of this photo are easy to discern in full color.*

Figure 7.4 *Converted to grayscale using Elements' default methods tends to blend many of the colors together as similar tones.*

You can see that the conversion to black and white is less than satisfactory. The browns and blues that were distinct in the original image have all turned into similar shades of gray. The typical solution is to adjust the contrast of the grayscale image, creating a result like that shown in Figure 7.5.

Figure 7.5 *The knee-jerk response to a low-contrast grayscale conversion is to increase the contrast and/or brightness. Bad plan, as you can see in this example.*

However, as I said, color images consist of three components: hue, saturation, and brightness. Look what happens when we can change some of the color photo's characteristics and see what Elements does with them.

Hue

One of the ways our eyes see contrast between objects in a photo is through the differences in color. Figure 7.6 shows the same image with the colors all skewed. (I used Elements' Enhance > Adjust Color > /Hue/Saturation control and adjusted the Hue slider.) It's easy to differentiate between the green sky and magenta field, isn't it? However, when this garish image is converted to grayscale, the image shown in Figure 7.7 results. It's identical to Figure 7.4. Elements ignores the color differences in making the conversion, as long as the colors maintain their relationships.

Moving the Hue slider rotates all the colors in an image simultaneously in one direction or another around an imaginary color wheel. That's why the Hue slider begins in a neutral middle position and can move 180 increments (degrees) positive (clockwise) to the opposite side of the color wheel, or a negative 180 degrees counterclockwise to the same position on the wheel. All the colors move equal amounts, so as far as Elements is concerned their relationships haven't changed and the results are the same after the image is converted to grayscale.

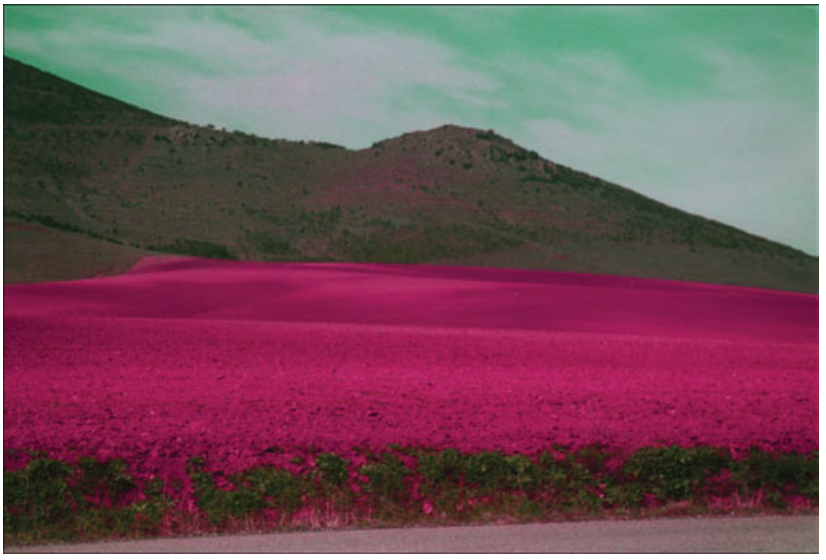


Figure 7.6 *Changing an image to a garish color scheme doesn't affect the grayscale conversion one whit.*

Figure 7.7 *Because all colors were changed equal amounts, the grayscale version looks exactly the same.*

Saturation

Saturation is another way of creating contrast between objects in a color image. You can think of saturation as a way of measuring how pure colors are. Imagine a can of pure red paint. It would produce a color like the one shown at left in Figure 7.8. Add some white paint to the can, and you'll get a less saturated red, eventually arriving at a totally desaturated white (if you added an overwhelming amount of white paint), as shown in the squares in the top row of the figure. If you added black paint instead, you'd end up with a darker, but also less saturated red, ending up with black, as you can see in the bottom row. This analogy doesn't precisely correspond to the way RGB colors become more or less saturated, but it's a useful way of thinking about the process.

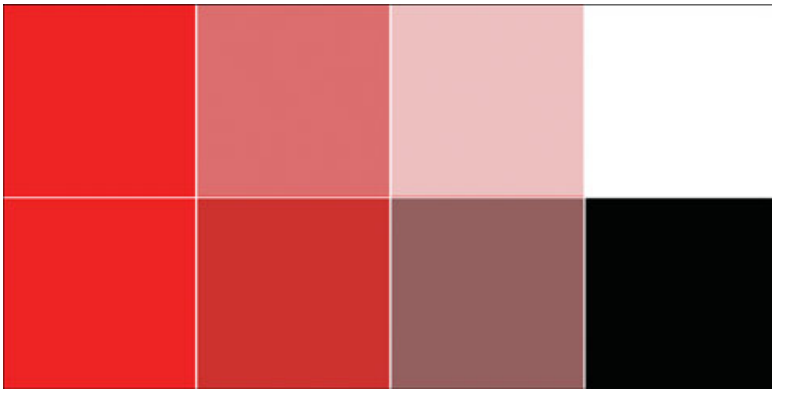


Figure 7.8 *Add white or black to red, and all you get is a desaturated red that is lighter or darker than the original color.*

As I said, this analogy isn't perfect, because the white paint is lighter than the red paint, and the black paint is darker, so, in terms of gray scales, the various degrees of saturation could still be told apart in a black-and-white version of the image, like the one in Figure 7.9.

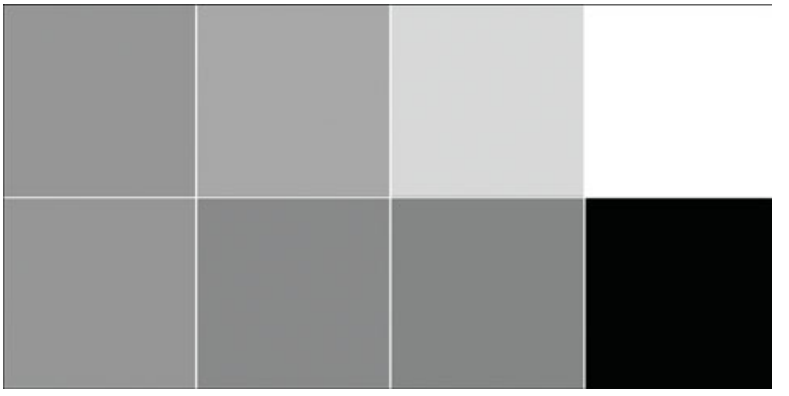


Figure 7.9 *After the saturation has been adjusted, converting the colors to gray doesn't provide an accurate image.*

However, if parts of an image were exactly the same color and brightness, and varied only in the degree of saturation, they'd look precisely the same when converted to grayscale. Figure 7.10 shows at top a gradient consisting of a single color, with the saturation carefully controlled to blend from the pure color (at the left side of the image) to the same color completely desaturated (at the right side of the image). When this saturation gradient is converted to grayscale, the completely uniform gray tone shown at the bottom of the figure results.

Figure 7.10 *At top is a smooth blend in which only the degree of saturation of the color changes. At bottom, you can see Elements has converted the blend to a uniform gray.*

CREATING A SATURATION GRADIENT

Still skeptical and want to try this for yourself? Just follow these steps:

1. Fill a rectangular image or selection with a color of your choice.
2. Choose Layer > New Adjustment Layer > Hue/Saturation to create a spanking new adjustment layer that will let you modify the saturation of your color with great precision.
3. Click OK in the New Layer box that pops up, and then click OK in the Hue/Saturation dialog box that appears. We're not going to use the sliders to adjust the saturation just yet.
4. You'll see two thumbnails in the Hue/Saturation adjustment layer in the Layers palette, as shown in Figure 7.11. Click the box on the right, the Layer Mask thumbnail.
5. Choose the Gradient Tool from the Tool Palette, and choose the foreground/background linear gradient from the Options bar.
6. Place the cursor at the left side of the image and, with the Shift key held down (to produce a straight line), drag to the right. The gradient will be applied to the Layer Mask, so that any changes to the saturation that you make will be least at the left side (where the gradient is darkest in the Layer Mask) and most significant on the right side (where the Layer Mask is lightest).
7. Double-click the Layer thumbnail (to the left of the Layer Mask thumbnail) to produce the Hue/Saturation dialog box. Drag the Saturation slider all the way to the left. Elements applies the saturation gradient, as shown in Figure 7.12.
8. Convert the image to gray and watch it turn into a single strip of exactly the same shade.

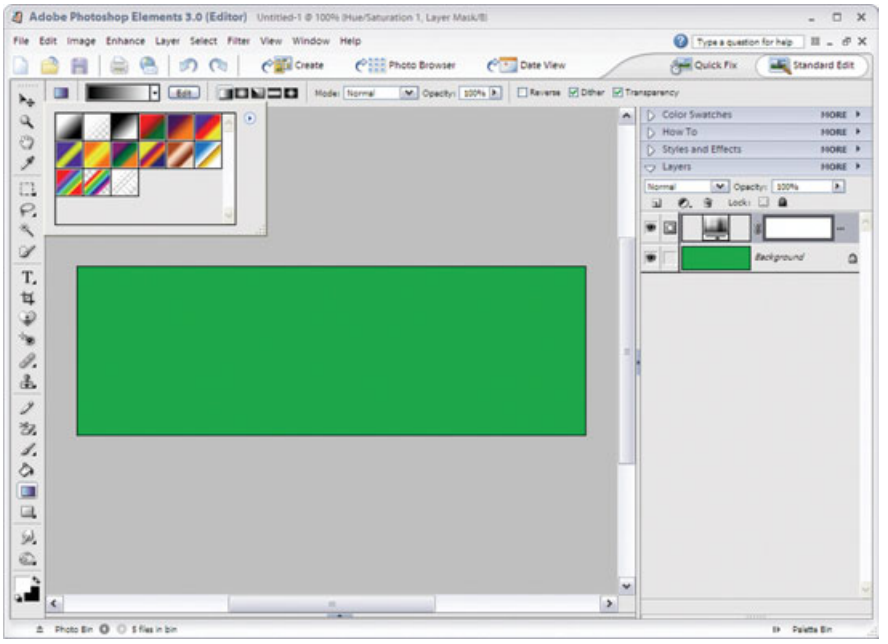


Figure 7.11 *Create a layer mask to a Saturation Adjustment Layer to create your own blend.*

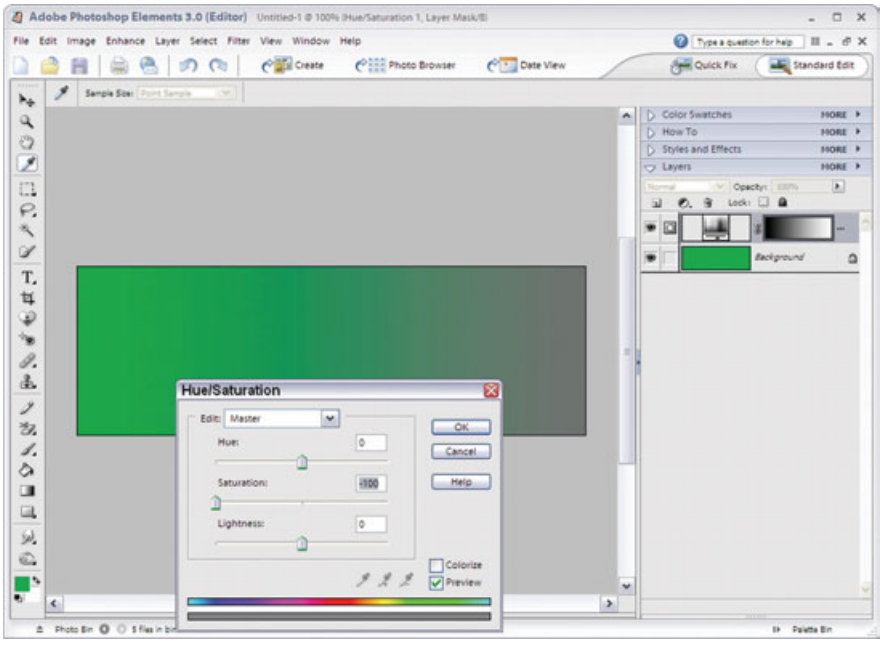


Figure 7.12 *You'll end up with a blend like this one, which you can convert to a uniform gray.*

In a real-world image, some colors may indeed have exactly the same brightness and color, and vary only in their degree of saturation. In such cases, we still have no difficulty differentiating the objects in the image, as you can see in the worst-case example shown in Figure 7.13. This image contains only white and "red" in various degrees of saturation, using the colors in the strip at the bottom of the figure. It's possible to make out the shapes of the objects (in this case leaves) when the only difference between them is the amount of saturation. Figure 7.14 shows the same image with all the "reds" converted to gray. It's just a big blob of gray, isn't it, just like the bottom row of Figure 7.10?

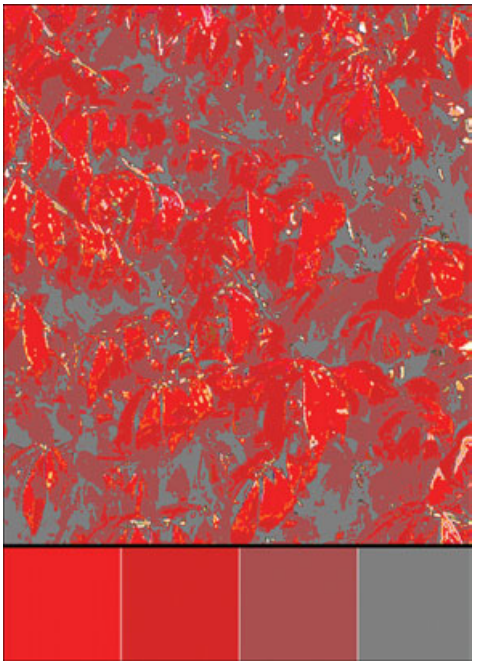


Figure 7.13 *This is a simplified real-world image of some leaves, posterized so only four colors remain, all the same shade of red at different levels of saturation.*

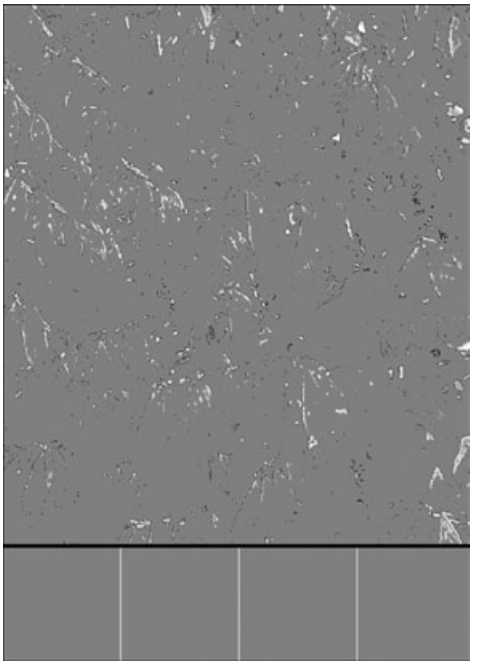


Figure 7.14 *Converted to gray by Elements, all the various reds merge into a uniform gray again.*

Getting back to our landscape photo, Figure 7.15 shows the image with the saturation boosted considerably. It's easy to differentiate the blue sky from the green mountains and brown field. However, converted to grayscale, it looks precisely like Figure 7.4. (Trust me, or try it yourself; we don't need yet another identical figure to prove this point.) When images have objects that differ from others in the picture chiefly through saturation or color, that information is lost when the photo is converted to grayscale.

Figure 7.15 *Even boosting the color saturation of the image makes no difference. The grayscale conversion looks exactly the same as Figure 7.4.*

Brightness

Brightness is the third clue we use to differentiate between objects in an image. A closely related factor is contrast, which is a way of comparing the number of different tones in an image. When you adjust the brightness of an image, you're increasing (or decreasing) the lightness of every pixel in an image equally, over a range of 0 (black) to 256 (white). When you modify the contrast, you're changing the number of tones at individual brightness levels: If all 256 tones are distributed equally from black to white, the image will be relatively low in contrast. If there are only a few different tones, the image will have high contrast.

The most important thing to know is that with a grayscale image, brightness and contrast are the only tools you have left to differentiate among objects. If, in the original image, it was the color or saturation components that made elements stand out, you'll no longer have control over those factors once the image is converted to black and white. You need to make any adjustments you need to apply *before* the image is converted. That's an important point. Too often, Elements users blithely convert a color image to grayscale using Elements' default settings, and then try to adjust the brightness/contrast. At that point, you're trying to restore a distinction between objects that no longer exists.

The other important thing to keep in mind is that Elements does not consider hue or saturation when converting an image from color to black and white using the Mode > Grayscale or Enhance > Adjust Color > Remove Color functions. Instead, it uses an algorithm calculated to provide the best compromise, which uses approximately 60 percent of the green component of your image, 30 percent of the red, and 10 percent of the blue. However, as you've seen in the previous examples, this algorithm provides results that are often acceptable, but which are not

necessarily accurate, particularly with images in which the colors or saturation provide the most important visual cues.

The best way to convert from color to grayscale is to work with the individual color layers, or channels, which, unfortunately, is possible in Photoshop CS, but not Elements 3.0. Your second-best method is to go ahead and use Elements' built-in tools, such as the Hue/Saturation dialog box or the Remove Color command, and then manipulate the tones using the Levels command rather than the tempting but often disastrous Brightness/Contrast controls.

If you're willing to play around until you get something you like, here's a method that might work for you:

1. Open the image you want to convert to black and white.
2. Switch to Quick Fix mode by clicking the tab in the upper right of the Elements workspace.
3. In the Color area, move the Saturation slider all the way to the left. This converts the image to black and white.
4. In the Lighting area, experiment with the controls until you get a realistic image. Try the Auto Levels button first, then see what Auto Contrast will do.
5. Finally, in the Lighting area experiment with the Lighten Shadows and Darken Highlights controls, as well as the Midtone Contrast slider. Unlike the gross changes that result from the Brightness/Contrast controls, these adjustments can be applied independently to the shadows, midtones, and highlights, giving you Levels-like command over the tonal values. Figure 7.16 shows this kind of conversion.

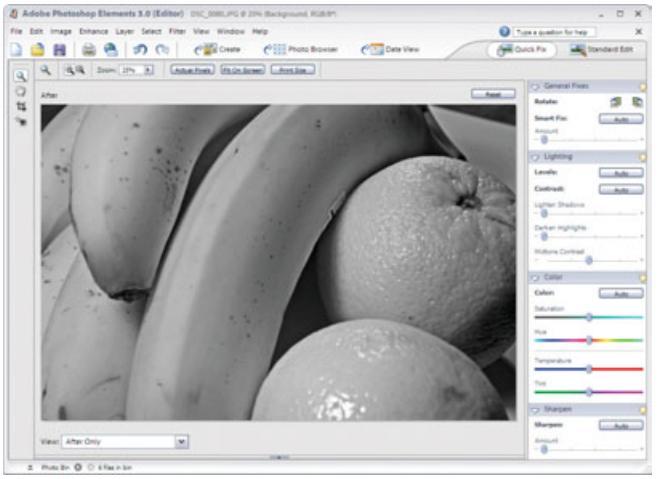
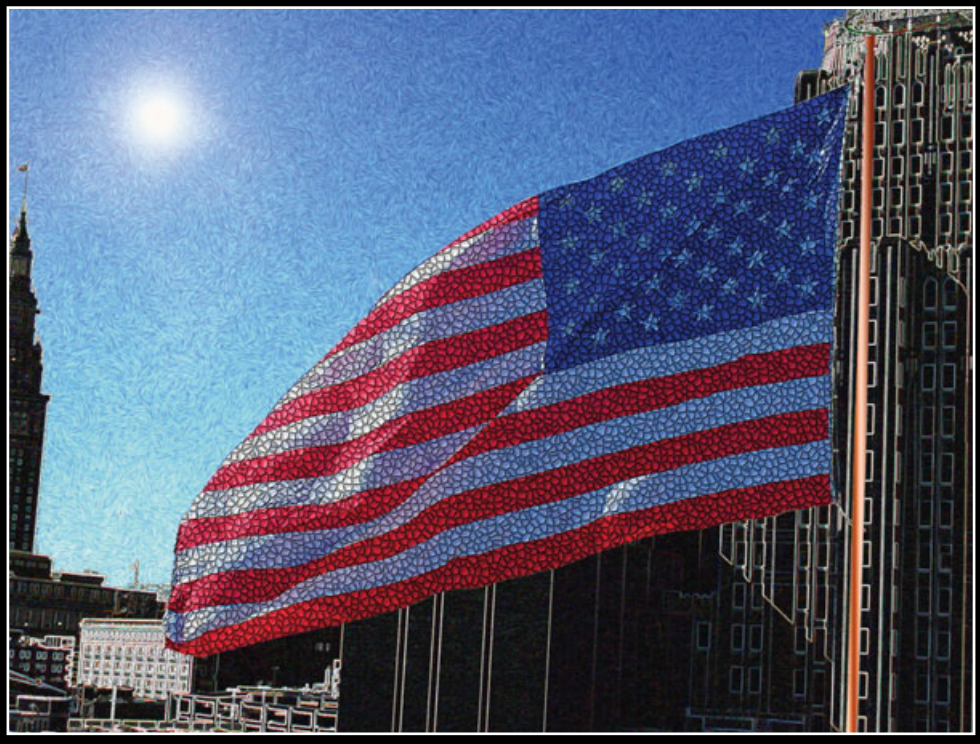


Figure 7.16 *Quick Fix mode can be your best bet for fine-tuning your black-and-white conversions.*

Next Up

Filters have been used on conventional cameras for more than 150 years, producing effects that enhance an image or add some creative flair. Elements has more than 100 filters of its own built in, and there are hundreds more available from third-parties like Alien Skin, Auto FX, and Andromeda. In the next chapter, I'm going to concentrate on the filters that are most like their conventional camera counterparts. You'll learn how to re-create filter effects, and apply some that aren't even possible outside the digital realm.



8

Using Photoshop Elements' Filters

In the realm of conventional photography, filters have long been an important corrective and creative tool. The same is true in the digital domain. Filters created for Photoshop Elements can fix bad images, add artistic flair, or transform a shoebox reject into a triumphant prize winner.

Anyone serious about photography comes to depend on the kit of filter attachments that fit in front of (or sometimes inside) his camera lens. Glass or gelatin filters can correct for improper lighting conditions, add a romantic fuzzy glow to an image, or provide incredible multi-image effects. Indeed, products like the versatile Cokin Filter System have become subgenres of photographic techniques on their own; there are entire books written on the use of Cokin filters, and a large number of unofficial Web sites dedicated to their use.

As you might guess, having ventured so deeply into this book, Photoshop Elements can duplicate many of these effects through its built-in capabilities. For example, all the capabilities of colorbalancing filters can be mimicked using Photoshop Elements' color correction features, as you learned in Chapter 6. Many of the special effects possible with Cokin and other filter sets can be achieved using the 100+ filters included with Photoshop Elements, and will be addressed in this chapter. You'll also learn how to use the brand-new Photoshop Elements Filter Gallery.

What Are Filters?

With traditional photography, filters are typically circles of glass (but sometimes made of plastic, or gelatin) that fit in front of a lens and change or attenuate the light passing through in some way. A few lenses with very large front diameters accept filters in a slot at the rear of the lens, to reduce the expense. My old fisheye lens has a few filters built in which can be changed by rotating a wheel. Filters also are available as inexpensive square sheets of gelatin that fit in holders that attach to the front of the lens.

Digital cameras too can use this kind of filter. Many digital camera lenses have threads on the front edge that accept conventional filters. Some cameras require a special adapter to let you mount filters. An increasing number of digital cameras have electronic filters—settings that can simulate various kinds of color filters without the need for actual pieces of glass.

They all work in much the same way. Some have a tint and partially or completely block light of other colors, as when a red filter is used with black-and-white film to darken the blue of the sky and the green of foliage. Others may remove certain types of light to reduce glare, or break up an image into multiple fragments, as if your subject were viewed through an insect's eye. Filters can blur parts of your photo, or add star-like twinkles to bright highlights. Figure 8.1 shows a popular effect that can be achieved with a split filter, orange on top and blue on the bottom.

Figure 8.1 *A split filter produces one color on top, and another color on the bottom.*

In Photoshop Elements, filters can perform even more amazing magic tricks with your images. They can transform a dull image into an Old Masters painting with delicate brushstrokes, or create stunning, garish color variations in a mundane photograph. Blast apart your images into a cascade of sparkling pixels, or simply add some subtle sharpness or contrast to dull or blurred areas. Plug-in image processing accessories have the power to affect a complete makeover on all or parts of a scanned photo or bitmapped painting you created from scratch. You can also use these add-ons to produce undetectable changes that make a good image even better.

Figure 8.2 shows a variation on the flag picture used in Chapter 1. There, the intent was to show how Elements could duplicate traditional photographic effects. In this illustration, however, you can see what the same image looks like with six different filters applied in a deliberate attempt to create a more highly "processed" appearance. While Elements can duplicate many traditional camera effects, it can go far beyond them, too.

Elements uses what are now called Photoshop-compatible plug-in filters which, whether created by Adobe or by third parties such as Alien Skin or Andromeda, are designed to be used with the filter applications programming interface (API) that first appeared in Photoshop. These are actually miniature programs in their own right, created in such a way that they can be accessed from within an image-editing application, to manipulate the pixels of a file that is open in the parent application. Some plug-ins can load files on their own, too, without resorting to Photoshop Elements at all.

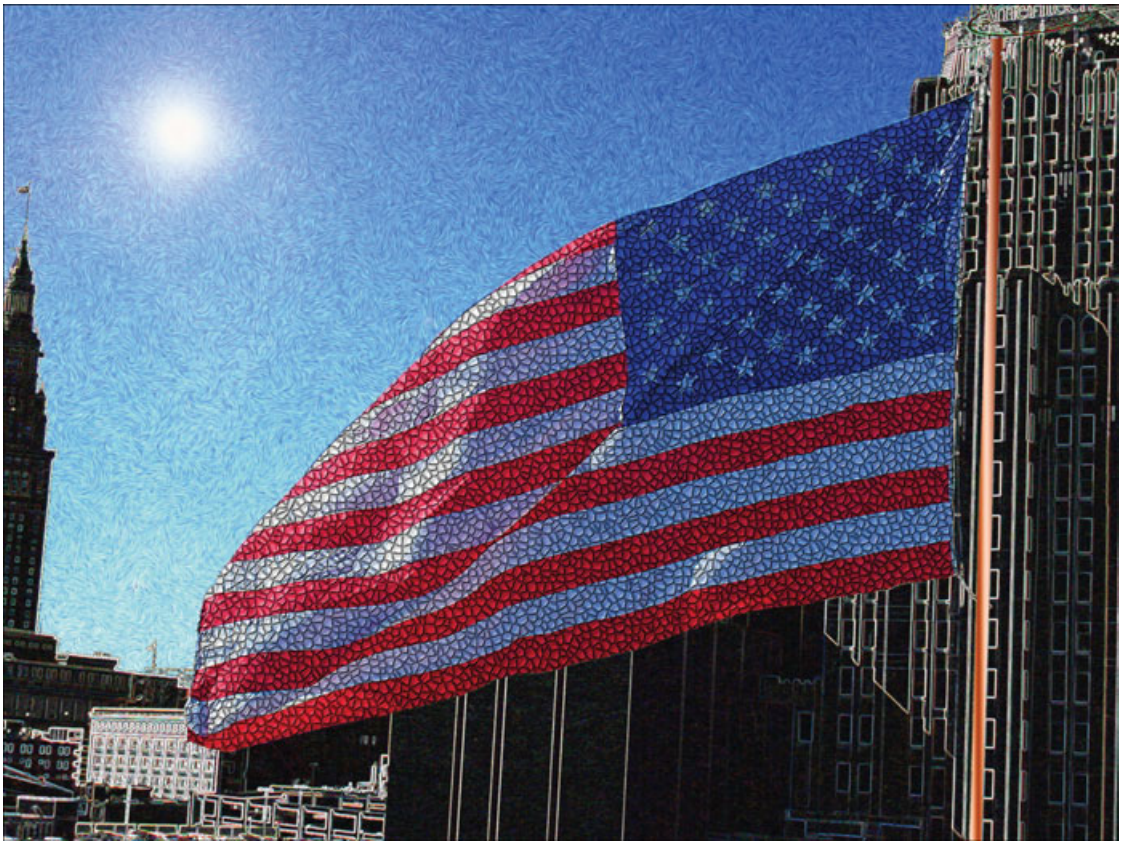


Figure 8.2 *Six different filters were applied to this image to create a combination of effects.*

They are called filters because in the most general sense they function much like filters you're familiar with in the real world. Like photographic filters, Photoshop Elements' plug-ins can modify the bits of light/pixels that pass through.

For example, one of the simplest filters of all is the Filter > Adjustments > Invert feature. It's actually part of the program's basic capabilities and doesn't "plug-in" at all, but it acts in exactly the same manner as other filters, and is found in the Filter menu with the rest of them.

The Invert command looks at each pixel in your image in turn and simply "flips" it to the exact opposite value. That is, a pure white or light gray pixel will be changed to pure black or dark gray. The color value of the pixel will be changed to the color opposite on the "color wheel." A dark blue pixel will become light yellow; a light cyan pixel will become a dark red pixel, and so forth. Figure 8.3 shows some color chips representing an array of pixels. At top are two rows of pixels in their original colors; the set at the bottom shows the same two rows that have been flipped to their opposite color and brightness value by the Invert function.

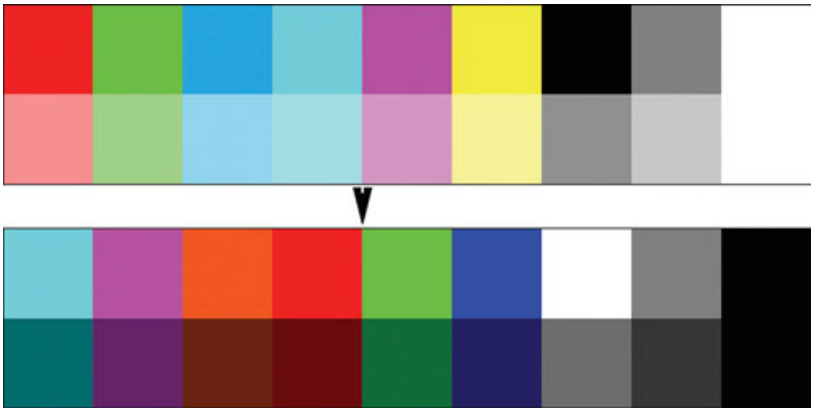


Figure 8.3 *The top two rows of color patches are converted to the colors shown in the bottom two rows when inverted.*

This is the simplest kind of filtering possible, because the values being modified are already stored as numbers, from 0 to 255 for each of the three color channels, plus gray. A single mathematical algorithm can be applied to each pixel to produce the filtered image. If you want an inside look at how filters work, check out Figure 8.4, Elements' "blank" filter, which goes by the name Custom, and is located in the Other submenu of the Filter menu.

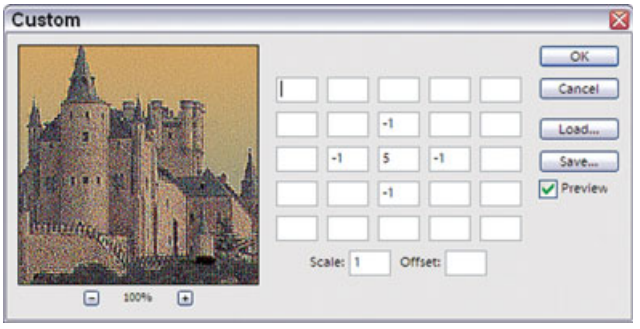


Figure 8.4 *Photoshop Elements' Custom filter shows how filters look at individual pixels in an image.*

The center box represents the pixel being examined. When processing an image or selection, Elements will look at each pixel in turn, then adjust the values of the pixels that surround it, based on the numbers in the boxes that ring the target pixel. That part is simple. Knowing what numbers to plug in to achieve a particular effect is difficult. Fortunately, unless you're a filter fanatic, you'll rarely have to resort to that (although the Custom filter is fun to play with). Instead, you can put Elements' built-in filters to work to achieve the looks you want.

Some filters may remove pixels entirely, change their contrast (thus blurring or sharpening an image), or shift them around in an image in relation to others that remain in place, creating some degree of distortion. The programs that make up filters can be very simple or extremely complex and require no user input or bristle with dialog boxes, slider controls, buttons, preview windows, and other features.

What makes Photoshop Elements' filters so versatile is the fact that they don't have to be part of the application's basic code. Photoshop Elements includes a programming interface that lets it talk to external programs like filters, which need only to plug in at the appropriate places in the interface. Plug-ins are a brilliant concept, even if the idea was not original to Adobe, having been adapted from a facility in the Digital Darkroom program marketed by Silicon Beach. All Adobe had to do to provide the same capabilities was build certain "hooks" into its image editors, including Photoshop and Elements, bits of program code that allowed these editors to temporarily turn over control to an outside module, which could then work with and manipulate the pixels within currently open images.

Upgrading, adding, or removing a filter is as easy as deleting the old filter file and dragging a new one into the Plug-Ins folder of your application. The next time you start your Adobe image editor, the application "builds" itself by looking for available modules, such as filters. Any suitable plug-ins are added to the Filters or File > Import menus automatically.

What Kinds of Filters Are Available?

The plug-ins available for Photoshop Elements fall into several broad categories:

- *Image Enhancement filters*. I use this term for filters that improve the appearance of images without making basic changes in the content of the images. You have to apply the term "basic changes" loosely, since some of these can make dramatic modifications. Sharpen, Unsharp Mask, Dust and Scratches, and similar filters are all image enhancement plug-ins. Blur filters are also image enhancement filters: There are many images that can be improved through a little judicious blurring. This kind of filter can be applied to an entire image, or just a portion that you have selected.
- *Attenuating filters*. I borrowed this word from the photographic world to describe filters that act like a piece of glass or other substance placed between the image and your eye, superimposing the texture or surface of the object on your picture. Think of a piece of frosted glass, translucent scrap of canvas fabric, or a grainy sheet of photographic film. These, or any of dozens of other filters, including most Noise and Texturizing filters, can add a texture or distort your image in predictable ways. Attenuating filters may be applied to a whole image, or just a selection.
- *Distortion filters*. These filters actually move pixels from one place in an image to another, providing mild to severe distortion. Filters that map your image to a sphere, immerse it in a whirlpool, or pinch, ripple, twirl, or shear bits here and there can provide distortion to some or all of an image.

- *Pixelation filters*. Adobe's own terminology is good enough for me to use in referring to a group of filters that add texture or surface changes, much like attenuating filters, but take into account the size, color, contrast, or other characteristics of the pixels underneath. These include Photoshop Elements' own Crystallize, Color Halftone, Fragment, and Mezzotint filters. The Pointillize or Facet filters, for example, don't simply overlay a particular texture—the appearance of each altered pixel incorporates the underlying image.
- *Rendering filters*. Again, Adobe's terminology is a good way to describe filters that create something out of nothing, in the way that a 3D rendering program "creates" a shaded model of an object from a wireframe skeleton. These filters may or may not use part of the underlying image in working their magic: Elements' Clouds filter creates random puffy clouds in the selected area, while Difference Clouds inverts part of the image to produce a similar effect. Lens Flare and Lighting Effects generate lighting out of thin air, whereas the Chrome filter produces Terminator-like surfaces.
- *Contrast-enhancing filters*. Many filters operate on the differences in contrast that exist at the boundary of two colors in an image. Sharpening and blurring filters are types of filters that do this, but I've lumped them into the Image Enhancement category. Other contrast-enhancing filters are used to produce special effects. By increasing the brightness of the lighter color or tone, and decreasing the brightness of the darker color or tone, the contrast is increased. Since these boundaries mark some sort of edge in the image, contrast-enhancing filters tend to make edges sharper. The effect is different from pure sharpening filters, which also use contrast enhancement. Filters in this category include all varieties of filters with names like Find Edges, Glowing Edges, Accented Edges, Poster Edges, Ink Outlines, and even most Emboss and Bas Relief filters.
- *Other filters and plug-ins*. You'll find many more add-ons that don't fit exactly into one of the categories above, or which overlap several of them. The About Plug-in option in the Help menu will show you what filters have been loaded by Photoshop Elements. You don't have to wend your way through nested menus to view this list.

Using Filters

I'll explain how to use particular filters as we go along, but there are some general tips that apply to nearly all filters that we'll be working with. To apply a filter, follow these steps:

Choose Portion of Image to Apply Filter To

You don't have to apply a filter to an entire image or layer; many times you'll want to use the filter only with a portion of the image. Use any of the selection tools, including the Marquee, Lasso, Magic Wand, or the Selection Brush.

It's often smart to copy the entire image to a duplicate layer (Layer > Duplicate), and make your selection on a copy. You can play around with different filter effects without modifying your original image. If you don't select a portion of an image, the filter will be applied to the entire image. Because it can take anywhere from a split second to a few seconds (or much longer), depending on the speed of your computer and the size of your image/selection, you may want to work with a representative section of the image first before applying the filter to the whole thing.

Select the Filter

Some filters, such as Sharpen > Sharpen and Sharpen > Edges, and Sharpen > Sharpen More, are known as single-step filters and operate immediately. They have no parameters to select, and thus offer less control over their effects. Other filters cause a dialog box to pop up with controls you'll need to adjust.

Most will also include a Preview window you can use to get an idea of what your filter will do when applied to a selected portion of an image. You'll find this useful to make broad changes in parameters, but I think it's still a good idea to select a somewhat larger area of an image and apply the filter to that on a duplicate layer. A basic filter dialog box is shown in Figure 8.5. I'll show you Elements' Filter Gallery, with additional options, later in this chapter.

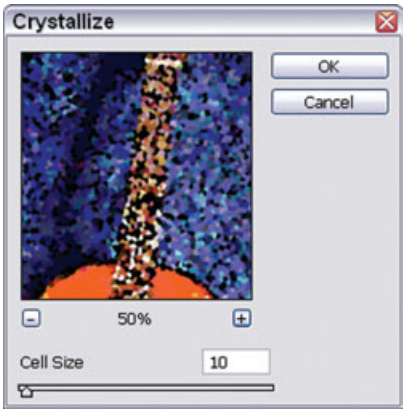


Figure 8.5 *A typical filter dialog box looks like this.*

Apply the Filter

Click OK to apply the filter. If you have a very large image (say, 10 MB or more), a slow computer, or a complex filter, find something to do. This might be a good time to set up your laptop and get some work done. Even filter/image combinations that do magical things in less than a minute seem terribly slow when you're sitting there staring at the screen. If you've marked the Beep When Done box in the Preferences > General dialog box, Elements will chirp when it's finished with its calculations.

When the filter is finished, be careful not to do anything else (such as move the selection) until you've decided whether or not the effect is the one you want. Although Elements has multiple levels of Undo, you'll save effort any time you can avoid using the Edit > Undo (Alt/Option + Ctrl/Command + Z) command multiple times. That way, if you totally hate the result, you can quickly press Ctrl/Command + Z and try again.

FADING FILTER EFFECTS

Elements lacks the filter fading capability of Photoshop (which can be activated by pressing Shift + Ctrl/Command + F) to reduce the amount of a filter's effects. However, you can achieve the same effect by applying the filter to a duplicate layer. You can vary the amount of the filtration by changing the opacity of the filtered layer in the Layers palette so it blends in with the unmodified layer underneath. You can selectively erase parts of the filtered layer so the filtration is applied only to portions of the image. You can also use Elements' Mode controls to merge the filtered and unfiltered layers in creative ways. Fade is handy to have in Photoshop, but it's a fast and less versatile way of modifying a filter's effects than using multiple layers.

Save the Image

When you're really, really certain that the effect is what you want, save the file under another name (use File > Save As...). Only flatten the layers to merge the effect with your main image when you're convinced you have the look you want. Some day, you'll be glad you saved a copy of the file when you change your mind about being really, really certain.

Photoshop Elements' Filter Gallery

New to Elements 3.0 is the Filter Gallery. Not all filters in the Photoshop Elements repertoire are included in the Gallery. The roughly four dozen filters that are included have a new look that's compatible with the Filter Gallery interface. You'll find them in the Artistic, Brush Strokes, Distort, Sketch, Stylize, and Texture categories (not all the filters in those general categories are included in the Filter Gallery). Other filters, found in the Pixelate, Render, Blur, Sharpen, and other categories are not included and use the familiar pre-Elements 3.0 dialog box.

There are several advantages to the Filter Gallery. These include:

- *Extra large preview area.* (Shown at left in Figure 8.6.) This generous, zoomable preview lets you view the effects you've applied with the Filter Gallery before you commit to them.

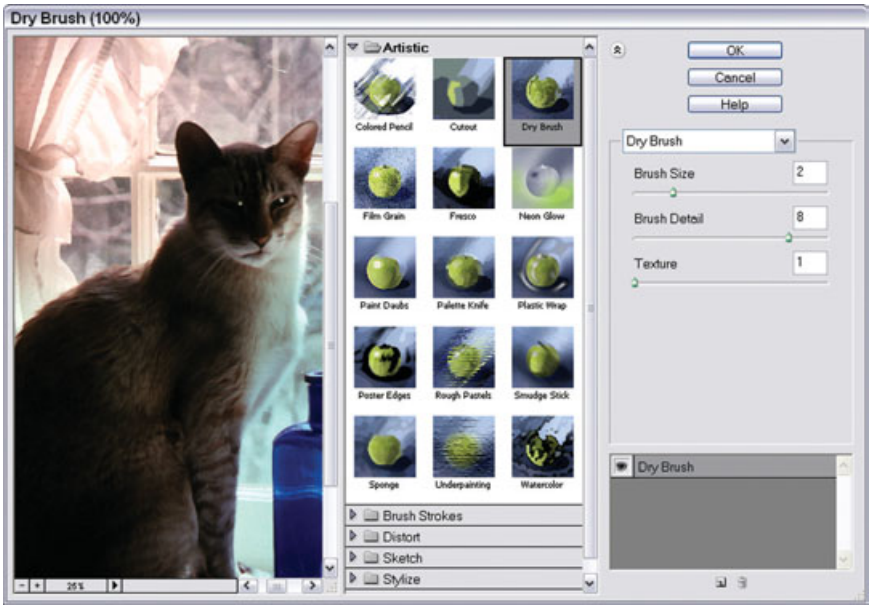


Figure 8.6 *The Filter Gallery has a new look and new features (shown here in the Windows version) that plug-in users will love.*

- *Multiple applications of the same filter*. You can apply the same filter several times and view the results in the preview window *before* committing to the special effect by clicking the OK button. Of course, you could always apply a filter repeatedly in Photoshop Elements, but it was necessary to exit the filter dialog box and then repeat the action. If you decided you'd added too much of a good thing, you had to use the Undo option to cancel your last action (or two).
- *Apply multiple filters*. The Filter Gallery lets you apply several different filters in any order you want, using your choice of settings, before committing to a specific set of effects.
- *Change the order and settings of filters*. If you decide you want to apply a certain Texture filter *before* adding an Artistic filter into the mix, rather than vice-versa, you can do that.

Filter Gallery Basics

The best way to learn how to use this versatile tool is to jump right in and begin working with it. If you want to use the same image I'm going to play with, find the catbottle.jpg picture on the web site. The original picture is shown in Figure 8.7. Then follow the series of steps I'm going to outline in this section.

Figure 8.7 *We're going to work with this photo.*

Prepping the Image

First, why not apply some of the techniques you've learned in this book to make the image even more suitable for some filter magic?

1. Choose Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Shadows/Highlights to produce the dialog box shown in Figure 8.8.
2. To lighten the shadows, the Lighten Shadows slider should be set to 50 percent.
3. To darken the highlights, the Darken Highlights slider should be set to 25 percent.
4. Set the Midtone Contrast slider to –10 percent.
5. Click OK to apply the change. The image will now look like Figure 8.9.

Figure 8.8 *Use the Shadow/Highlights command first to prep the image.*

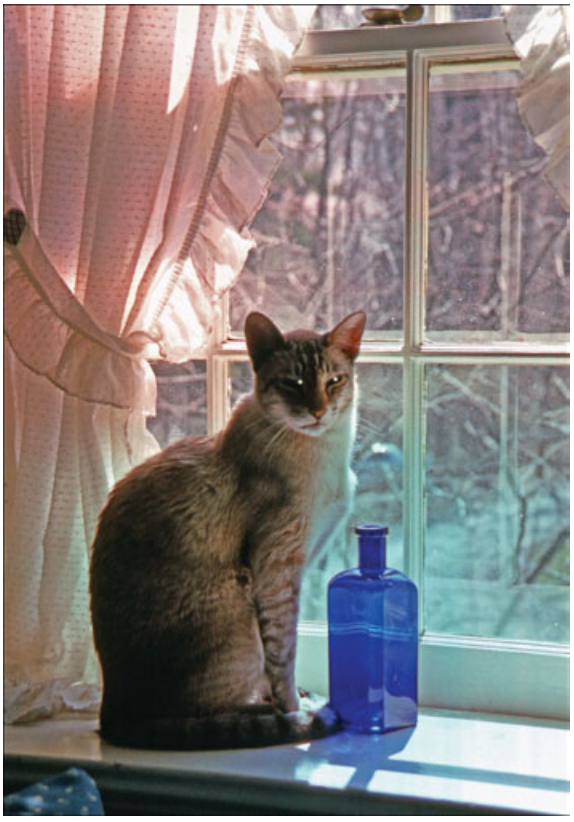


Figure 8.9 *The modified image looks like this.*

Accessing the Filter Gallery

The easiest way to access the Filter Gallery is to choose Filter > Filter Gallery. The Gallery dialog box shown in Figure 8.10 appears. (If you choose one of the filters included in the gallery from the Filter menu, the Filter Gallery also pops up.) There are several components to work with. These include:

- *The Preview window*. At the bottom of the window are plus/minus buttons you can click to zoom in and out, an activity indicator that shows the progress of the filter as it is applied, and scroll bars (at both bottom and right side) you can use to view all of an image that won't fit in the Preview window.
- *Categories/Thumbnails*. In the middle of the Filter Gallery is a list of filter categories which can display thumbnails of each filter available. The triangle next to each category name points toward the category when that folder is closed, and points downward when you open the category to display the filters it contains. You can show or hide all the filters in a category folder, and scroll through them.
- *Controls*. Each filter's controls, including sliders and buttons, appear to the right of the filter category list when a particular filter is selected. There is also a drop-down list you can use to scroll through an alphabetized listing of every filter in the Gallery.
- *Applied Filters*. At the lower-right corner of the Filter Gallery is a list of the filters that have been applied in this Gallery session.
- *Sizing Controls*. As with many PC and Mac dialog boxes, you can enlarge the box to provide more room for previews, lists, and other features without scrolling.

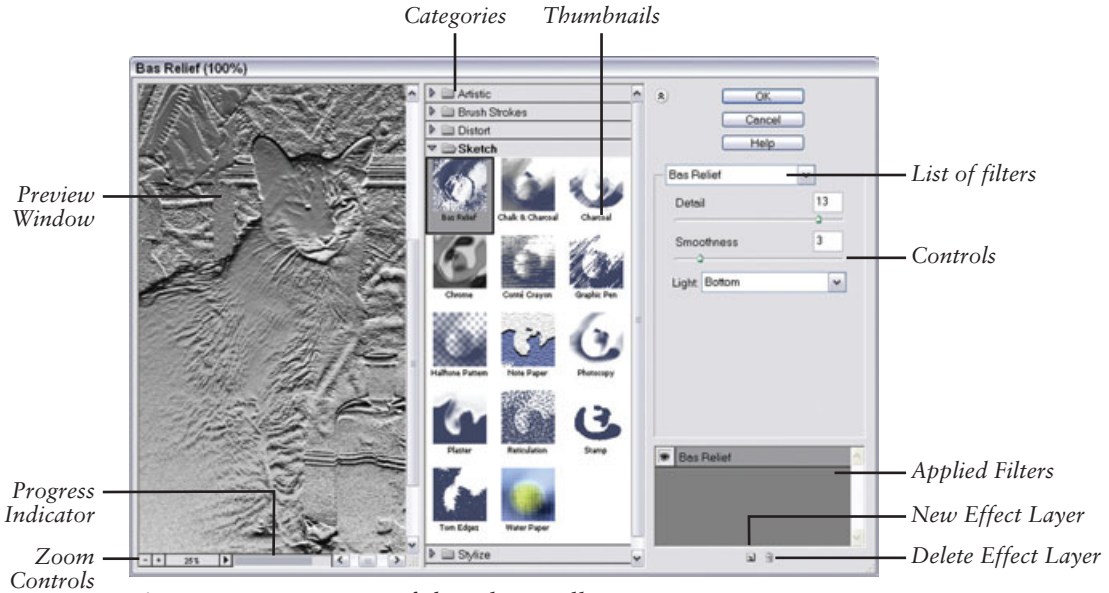


Figure 8.10 *Anatomy of the Filter Gallery*

Applying the First Filter

Let's jump right in and apply a filter to see how the Gallery works. Just follow these steps:

1. With the Filter Gallery visible, click the Zoom buttons until the catbottle image fills the preview area.
2. Open the Artistic folder in the categories/thumbnails area.
3. Select the Poster Edges filter, with the default settings. Photoshop Elements applies the filter, and Poster Edges appears in the list of applied filters in the lower-right corner of the Filter Gallery.
4. Notice the eyeball icon in the right-hand column of the applied filters area. Click the eyeball to make the Poster Edges effect you've applied invisible. That will return the image to its original appearance.
5. If you decide you don't want to use Poster Edges, just click on a different filter. The original filter's effects will be removed and replaced by those of the new filter.
6. Note that you can show or hide the Poster Edges effect with the eyeball, and change the settings of the effect at any time, up until you click the OK button to apply the modifications. The image will look like Figure 8.11.

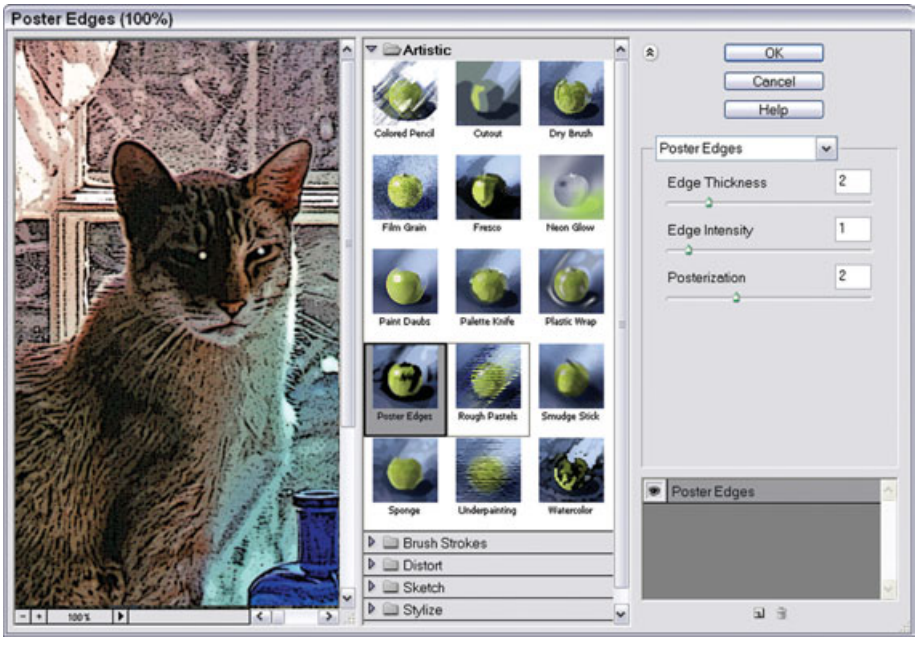


Figure 8.11 *With one filter applied, the image looks like this.*

Applying Another Filter

This is where the Filter Gallery gets very cool. You can add a second or third filter effect, view each of the effects separately or in any combination you choose, and modify any of their settings independently. Follow these steps to see for yourself:

1. To add an effect layer, click the New Page icon at the bottom left of the applied filters area. A new effect layer appears, listed above the Poster Edges effect (because the new effect will be applied "on top" of the original filter).
2. Open the Brush Strokes category and click the Sprayed Strokes thumbnail. Photoshop Elements will add the Brush Strokes effect to the effect achieved by the Poster Edges filter. The image will look like Figure 8.12.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 to add another filter effect of your choice.

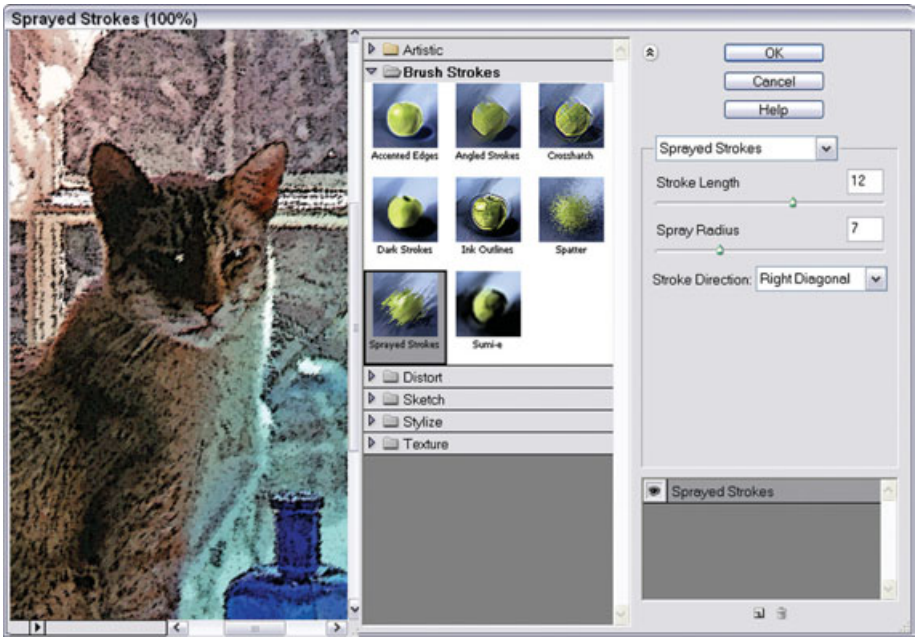


Figure 8.12 *With Sprayed Strokes and Poster Edges filters applied, the image looks like this.*

Now you have two or three filter effects applied using the Filter Gallery. Here are some of the things you can do before clicking OK to apply the effects you've chosen:

- To view any of the filter layers individually or in combination, click the eyeball icons in the column to the left of the applied filter name to show or hide a particular filter effect.
- When you click in an effect's layer, you can change the settings for that effect.

- Drag a layer from one position in the stack to place it "above" another effect, so that it will be applied after the effects below it have been applied.
- If you decide you don't want to use an effect, select that layer and click the Trash icon at the lower right of the dialog box.

That's about all there is to using the Filter Gallery. With any luck, Adobe will add more filters to the Gallery in the next release of Photoshop Elements.

Reproducing Photographic Filters in Photoshop Elements

I'm going to divide the rest of this chapter into two parts. This next section will show you how to reproduce some of the most common photographic filters in Photoshop Elements, whether the technique uses Elements' own filters or not. The section that follows this one will deal exclusively with using Photoshop Elements' built-in filters.

Polarizing Filters

Polarizing filters can provide richer and more vibrant colors while reducing some of the glare that infects many photos taken in bright daylight. Polarizing filters work in much the same way as polarized sunglasses. Figure 8.13 is a simplified illustration that may help you understand how polarizing filters work.

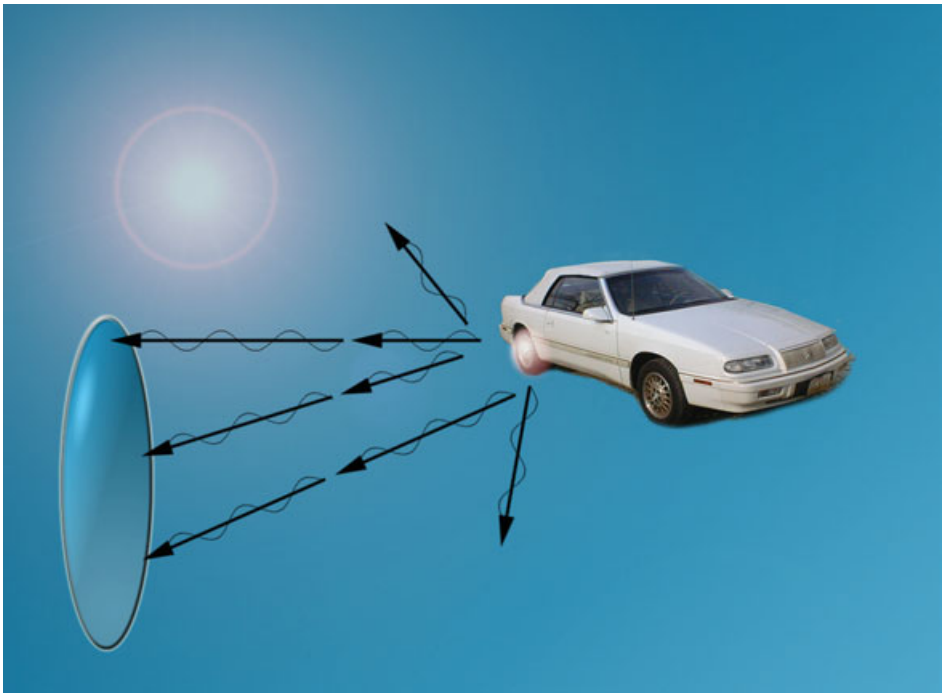


Figure 8.13 *Light bouncing from shiny surfaces scatters in all directions.*

In this figure, sunlight strikes all the shiny parts of the convertible (glass windows, the shiny plastic wheels and trim, and so forth), although for simplicity I'm showing only the glare off the rear wheel cover. The light bounces off in many different directions. As you probably know, light moves in waves, and in this case the waves vibrate at many different angles—some side-to-side, some up-and-down, others at diagonal angles. It's difficult to illustrate this, but I think you know what I'm saying. Some of this hodgepodge of light strikes the lens of your camera, producing glare and reduced contrast.

A polarizing filter contains what you can think of as a tiny set of parallel louvers which filter out all the light waves except for those vibrating in a direction parallel to the louvers. Again, this is difficult to demonstrate in two dimensions, but you can see the net result in Figure 8.14. All the light waves are blocked except for those vibrating from side-to-side (imagine them moving from side-to-side in the illustration) so they can pass through the horizontal louvers. The polarizer blocks all the scattered light.

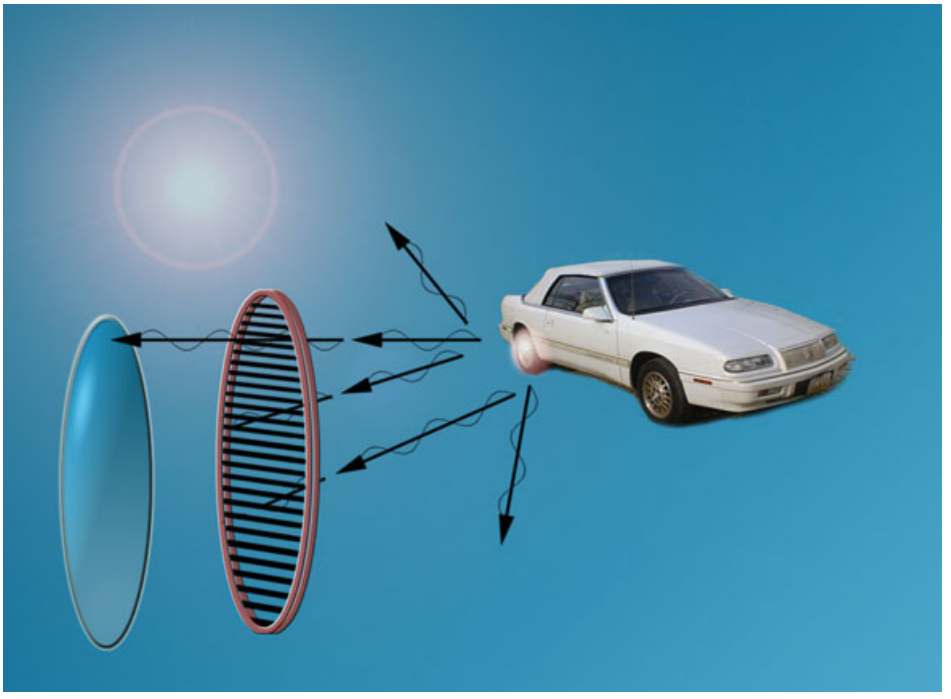


Figure 8.14 *A polarizing filter allows only the light waves that are vibrating in a single direction to pass through.*

A polarizing filter consists of two rings; one is attached to the lens, while the outer ring rotates the polarizing glass. This lets you change the angle of the louvers and selectively filter out different light waves. With a single lens reflex (SLR) camera (which lets you view through the same lens that takes the picture), you can rotate the ring until the effect you want is visible. Blue sky and water, which can contain high amounts of scattered light, can be made darker and more vibrant. You can also reduce or eliminate reflections from windows and other nonmetallic surfaces. The most dramatic changes can be produced when the sun is low in the sky and located off to your left or right shoulder.

As you might expect, polarizers work best with SLR cameras that let you preview the effect. If you're using a non-SLR digital camera, you may want to use the LCD viewfinder instead of the optical finder when making your adjustments.

Simulating a polarizer in Elements is tricky, because there is no easy way to replace information that is obscured by glare. Figure 8.15 shows a photo (at top) that's marred by unwanted reflections off the car windows. In this case, I was able to select the area of the glass that had the most glare, and reduce the brightness and contrast to bring that area back to the same level as the rest of the window. In other cases, you may have to use the Clone Stamp or Healing Brush tools to copy parts of the image that are glare-free over parts that have reflections. Then, you can adjust the overall brightness and contrast of the image to resemble what the image would look like if you had been able to use a polarizer filter.

Figure 8.15 *The unwanted reflections shown in the top image can be removed in Photoshop Elements even without resorting to a polarizing filter.*

Cross-Screen

Cross-screen filters are simple add-ons that let you make the specular highlights of an object sparkle, while providing a little bit of diffusion. My first cross-screen was a piece of tight-mesh window screen inside a set of empty Series 7 filter adapter rings. Later, filter manufacturers came out with glass versions of these with cross-hatch lines etched in the glass. Cross-screen filters work great with jewelry and other naturally sparkly items. Elements can easily duplicate this effect while giving you much greater control over the size and placement of your starbursts. Just follow these steps, using the watch.jpg photo from the Web site, or your own picture.

1. First create a cross-shaped star to add to your image. You can simply draw a star shape on a transparent layer, or do as I did by following the next couple steps.
2. Create a new, transparent layer by pressing Shift + Ctrl/Command + N.
3. Click the Brush tool in the Tool palette, or press B to activate it.
4. In the Options bar, click the fly-out menu and select Calligraphic Brushes from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 8.16.

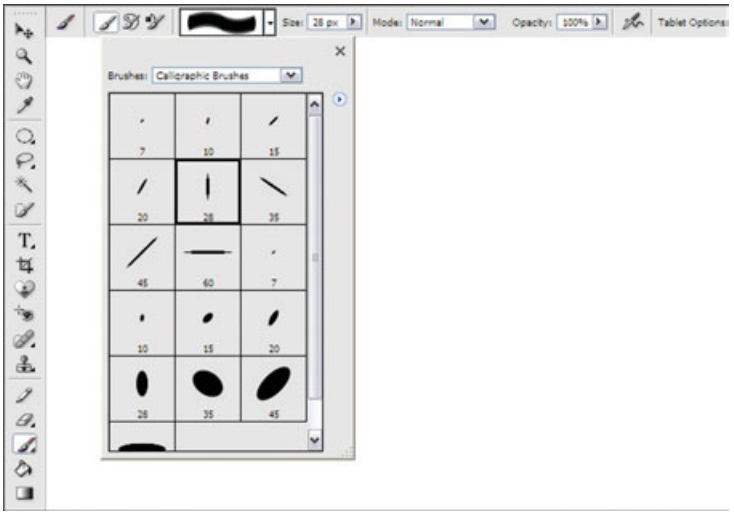


Figure 8.16 *Choose the Calligraphic Brushes in your Brushes palette.*

5. Select the 28-pixel calligraphic vertical stroke, and use it to draw one ray of the star on a transparent layer in black. Draw another vertical ray directly underneath it.
6. Use the Lasso selection tool to select the two rays and then choose Image > Rotate > Layer 90 Degrees Right. The rays will now be horizontal.
7. Use the same brush to create another pair of vertical rays at right angles to the first two.
8. Choose Filter > Stylize > Emboss to give the star a 3D texture, as shown in Figure 8.17.
9. Although you can use the star shape as-is, you may want to rotate it 45 degrees (Image > Rotate > Free Rotate Selection), and reduce it to a size more appropriate to the object you'll be adding cross-stars to. (Use Image > Transform > Free Transform.)

Figure 8.17 *The Emboss filter gives the star a 3D texture.*

10. Copy the star and apply it to several places on your image in a separate transparent layer.
11. Choose the Color Dodge mode for this transparent layer from the Layer palette, as you can see in Figure 8.18.
12. Use Enhance > Adjust Lighting > Brightness/Contrast to make the star as bright or as dark as you want for your particular image.
13. With the star layer still active, choose Filter > Blur More. This enhances the blurry star effect. Your finished image should look like Figure 8.19.

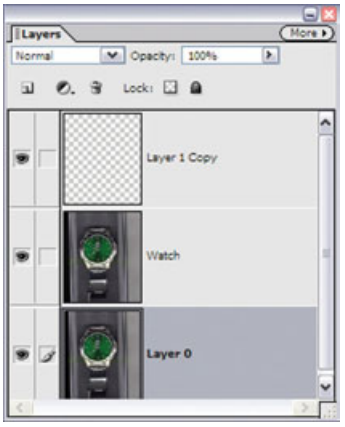


Figure 8.18 *Use Color Dodge to merge the star layer with the rest of the image.*

Figure 8.19 *The finished image with artificial "stars" looks like this.*

Split Filter

Split filters are nothing more than glass filters divided into two halves, each a different color. You see these used a lot in still photography to give the sky and ground an eerie look, and cinematographers use them extensively to create a moody atmosphere. Creating your own split filter in Elements is easy. Just follow these steps.

1. In a new, empty document, create two transparent layers (Shift + Ctrl/Command + N).
2. Choose the Gradient tool from the Tool palette.
3. Select Linear Gradient from the Option bar, and choose the Foreground to Transparent gradient from the drop-down list, as shown in Figure 8.20.

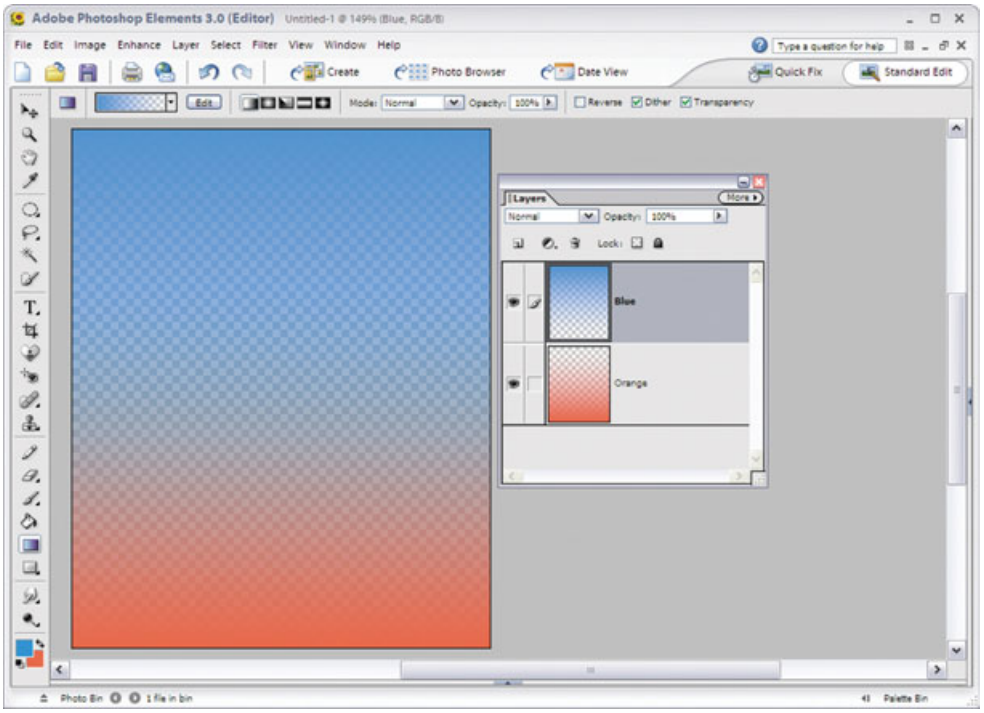


Figure 8.20 *Use two gradients to create a split-filter effect in Photoshop Elements.*

4. Select your two colors as the foreground and background colors, using your favorite method (the Eyedropper tool in the Color Swatches palette works for me).
5. Drag from the top to the bottom of one of the transparent layers, holding down the Shift key to make sure you drag in a straight line. This applies the foreground color as a gradient in that layer.
6. Press X to swap the foreground and background colors.
7. Drag from the bottom to the top in the other transparent layer to create the lower half of your split filter.

8. Choose Layer > Merge Visible to combine these two layers.
9. Save your split-filter document so you can use it as you want.
10. To use the "filter," copy the filter layer and paste it into the image you want to use it with, resizing so the filter covers the entire image. Use the Darken or Multiply layer modes to merge the filter layer with the underlying image without completely obscuring it. Figure 8.21 shows one typical result.

Figure 8.21 *The split-filter effect can add a moody look like this.*

Modifying Images with Photoshop Elements' Filters

Photoshop Elements' own filters offer a wealth of special effects you can apply to your photographs. They may not resemble the filter effects you can get with conventional glass or gelatin filters, but that's the whole point. Photoshop Elements lets you go beyond the limits of both film and digital cameras to create entirely new looks. This section will explore some of the things you can do with Photoshop Elements' own filters.

The section will not cover every one of the 100+ Photoshop Elements filters. Many of the filters, such as the Sharpen, Blur, Grain, and Lens Flare filters were covered in other chapters. Quite a few other filters, such as the Offset filter, do things that aren't particularly useful from a

photographic standpoint, but which are consummately handy for other applications, such as creating seamless backgrounds for Web pages. Instead, in this section we'll look at the best of the rest. I won't stick rigidly to Photoshop Elements' filter menu hierarchy, either. Filters that provide painterly effects will be grouped together, while those that add textures or drawing effects will be bundled among their own.

I've found that the easiest way to compare filter effects is to compare the same image as it is transmogrified by a variety of different filters, so the examples in this section will use the same basic image, shown in Figure 8.22, in our examples. I have to warn you that not all filters look good with human subjects, but I've found that using a human victim for filter experiments is a good way of clearly showing exactly what a filter does.

Figure 8.22 *This picture is our starting point for the filters that follow.*

Painting Filters

If you want to create pictures that look like they were painted, Photoshop Elements offers some great filters. You can get brush strokes without ever touching a brush. You'll find these filters in Photoshop Elements' Artistic, Brush Strokes, and Sketch submenus in particular. Digital effects applied with these filters can produce results in seconds that can't easily be achieved by an artist equipped with brush, paints, and traditional tools. It's also fairly easy to generate effects that are strongly reminiscent of the styles of "real" artists, using a group of filters found in the Pixelate and Stylize menus of Photoshop Elements.

These kinds of filters all have one thing in common: They reduce the amount of information in an image by combining or moving pixels. Some overlay an image with a texture or pattern, while other plug-ins group similar colors together or transform groups of hues into new tones. The result is an image that has been softened, broken up, selectively increased in contrast, or otherwise "pixelated."

At first glance, these filters seem to have turned a photograph into a painting. Instead of the harsh reality of the original image, we have a softer, more organic picture that appears to have been created, rather than captured. The process resembles the way in which video and film cameras convert moving images.

Just as the crystal clarity of video productions adds realism to documentaries and intimacy to videotaped stage plays or situation comedies, original photographs look real to us. For romantic stories and fantasy images, motion picture film provides a softer look with a feeling of distance, much like digital processing of still images. Would *Star Wars* or *Forrest Gump* have been as effective if originated on video? Do your hyper-realistic original photos qualify as portraits?

Of course, both kinds of images have their place. Painting-oriented filters are excellent for portraits, figure studies, or landscapes in which fine detail is not as important as general form, colors, or groups of shapes. Indeed, brushstrokes or other textures can mask defects, disguise or diminish distracting portions of an image, and create artful images from so-so photographs. That's especially true when the original image was too sharp, or, paradoxically, not sharp enough. Filters can tone down excessive detail while masking the lack of it.

You'll want to select your subjects for painting filters carefully. Pictures of older men and women may not look right when you blur all those hard-won wrinkles and character lines. Teenagers of both sexes, on the other hand, may prize the improvement to their complexions. Judicious application of a painting filter can add some softness to a glamour portrait, too.

Keep in mind that painting filters mimic, but do not duplicate the efforts of an artist. In real paintings, each brush stroke is carefully applied with exactly the right size, shape, and direction needed to provide a particular bit of detail. Years of experience and a good dose of artistic vision tell the artist where and how to put down those strokes.

A filter, in contrast, can base its operation only on algorithms built into it by the programmer. A skilled software designer can take advantage of variables such as lightness, darkness, contrast, and so forth to produce the illusion that an organic human, and not a silicon simulacrum, is behind the effect. You can further enhance the image by using your own judgment in applying parameters and choosing which sections of the picture are to be processed by a filter. However, you won't exactly duplicate the efforts of an artist with one of these plug-ins.

Craquelure

Professional photographers pay big bucks to have their photo labs give portraits an "old masters" look by cracking the surface as if it were a painting that had started to age. Paints used in ancient times weren't stable, as they were egg whites, clay, and plants used as pigment. So, old paintings tend to crack. Pro photographers sometimes have this texture applied to their photographs to give them an Old Masters patina. You can achieve a similar effect, which adds a nice 3D look, using the Craquelure filter.

Your controls can specify the crack spacing, depth, and brightness. You can adjust the spacing to produce a mixture of cracks and image area, and modify the depth and brightness settings to create deeper or shallower cracks.

Dark Strokes

The Dark Strokes filter reduces the number of tones in the image through a posterization-like effect that combines similar tones in an unusual way. Instead of grouping similar colors together, Dark Strokes makes dark tones darker and light tones lighter, increasing contrast, while rendering the image with diagonal brush strokes. Short strokes are used for dark tones and longer strokes for light tones. Figure 8.23 shows the Craquelure and Dark Strokes filters applied to the portrait image.

Figure 8.23 *Craquelure (left) and Dark Strokes (right).*

Dry Brush

The Dry Brush filter mimics a natural-media effect, that of stroking a canvas with a brush that's almost devoid of paint. It doesn't obscure as much detail as other painting-style filters, but retains a distinct painting look. As it posterizes your image, Dry Brush produces more distinct banding than Dry Strokes, combining all similar colors in a particular area. Adjust the size of the brush to produce different effects.

Paint Daubs

This Brush Strokes filter includes a selection of brush types and sizes, and sharpness controls. You can select from simple, light rough, dark rough, wide sharp, wide blurry, or sparkle brush types. Figure 8.24 shows the Dry Brush and Paint Daubs filters in action.

Figure 8.24 *Dry Brush (left) and Paint Daubs (right).*

Fresco

Traditional fresco is a technique in which water colors are applied to wet plaster and allowed to dry, forming a permanent image on the wall or other structure containing the plaster. If you're an artist-type, and can work fast, fresco is a great way to produce murals using short, jabby strokes. If you're a photographer, you'll want to use the Fresco filter to create a smeary effect. This filter is otherwise quite similar to Dry Brush.

Poster Edges

This filter transforms your image into a poster by converting full-color or grayscale images into reduced color versions by combining similar colors into bands of a single hue, like the Photoshop Elements Posterize command. However, Poster Edges outlines all the prominent edges with black, giving the photo a hand-drawn look.

Of course, the original non-electronic poster effect was created to allow simulating continuous tone images without actually using detailed halftones. The broad bands of color could each be printed on a separate run through a sheet-fed press at a relatively low cost. Posters were often created in this way for circuses, plays, and, later, motion pictures. Even when halftoning was a common and inexpensive process, poster printing techniques were an economical way to produce very large posters on thick stocks.

Poster Edges gives you three controls, allowing you to adjust the relative thickness of the black lines used to outline the edges, and specify their darkness or intensity. A third slider lets you specify the number of tones used to produce the effect. Figure 8.25 shows the Fresco and Poster Edges filter effects.

Figure 8.25 *Fresco (left) and Poster Edges (right).*

Spatter

The Spatter filter creates an airbrush-like painterly effect. You can use it to soften portrait or landscape subjects. Its controls include a Spray Radius slider, which adjusts the number of pixels covered by the spray of the airbrush, and a smoothness control, which modifies the evenness of the effect.

Watercolor

Watercolors produce great pastel effects because their water-soluble pigments are not as opaque as oils or acrylics, and they tend to soak into the paper, producing a soft, diffused effect. It's a good plug-in for landscapes, female portrait subjects, or any image which can be improved with a soft look. While you can select the amount of brush detail, Watercolor doesn't work well with detailed strokes. Figure 8.26 shows the Spatter and Watercolor filters at work.

Figure 8.26 *On Spatter (left) and Watercolor (right).*

Angled Strokes

Angled Strokes paints your image using diagonal strokes in one direction for the dark tones, and diagonal strokes going in the other direction to represent the light tones in an image.

With high-resolution files, the effects may not be as noticeable unless you either reduce the size of the image to 25 to 50 percent of its original size before applying the filter (scale it back up when you're finished), or use a high sharpness setting. This filter can be applied to primary subjects, but also makes a good tool for creating artsy background textures.

Palette Knife

This filter applies irregular gobs of color to your image. The Stroke Size slider adjusts the size of the digital knife you're using. The Stroke Detail control can be used to specify how much of the detail in your original image is retained. The Softness control increases or decreases the roughness of the edges of the palette strokes.

While you can use this filter alone, it works well with other plug-ins, as a first step to reduce the amount of detail before you apply a second filter, such as Watercolor or Grain. Textures, particularly canvas, can add to the painterly effect of this filter. Figure 8.27 shows the Angled Strokes and Palette Knife filters.

Figure 8.27 *Angled Strokes (left) and Palette Knife (right).*

Pointillize

This filter provides a randomized image with lots of little dots on it, produced by cell sizes that range from 3 to 300 pixels. The tricky part about using this filter is choosing your background color, as all the spaces between the dots are filled in with your current background color. Instead of using white, try soft pastels that won't overpower the tones of your image. Figure 8.28 shows the kind of effects you can get with the Pointillize filter.

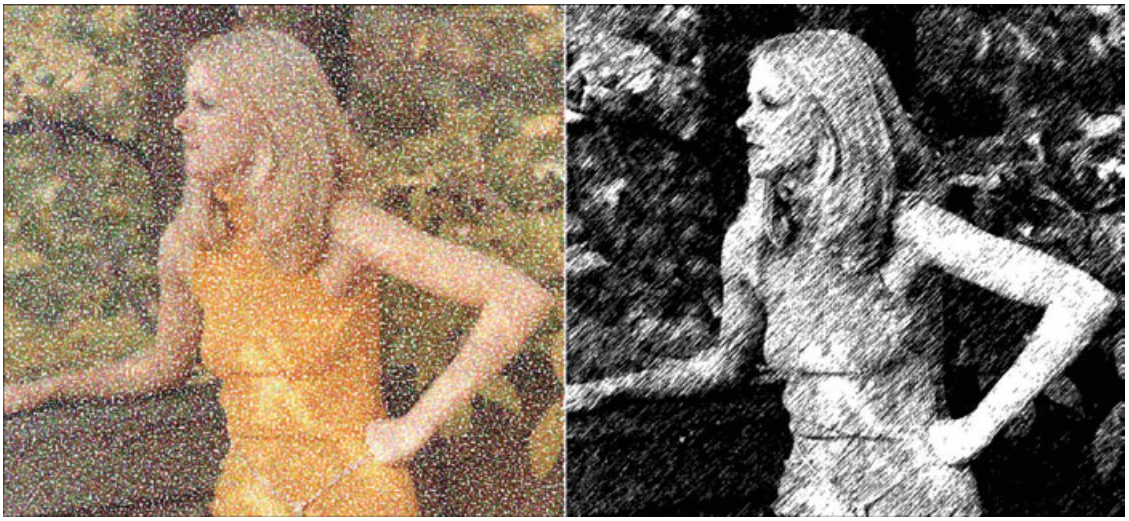


Figure 8.28 *Pointillize (left) and Graphic Pen (right).*

Sketching/Drawing Filters

You can also apply drawing-like effects, such as pen and ink, using Photoshop Elements' filters. Here are the best of them.

Graphic Pen

The Graphic Pen filter applies monochrome strokes that can be applied diagonally, horizontally, or vertically, using the foreground color, while filling in the rest of the image with the background color. If you keep that in mind you can create both positive (black on white) and negative (white on black) images. Controls include a Stroke Length slider that manages how much detail is preserved, and a Light/Dark Balance slider to select the areas of the image to which the strokes are applied. Lighter settings sketch in the highlights, while darker settings use the shadow areas for the strokes. Your choice of stroke direction should be determined by your subject matter: Horizontal strokes are great with vertically oriented subjects, such as buildings, while vertical strokes are best used on landscapes and other subjects with horizontal lines. Figure 8.28 shows the Graphic Pen filter's effects.

Ink Outlines

Ink Outlines produces an image with the outlines and edges enhanced, but retaining the original colors of an image, without losing the original colors. It creates an almost cartoon-like appearance.

Sponge

Sponge creates textured images with contrasting blobs of color. You can adjust brush size, definition, and smoothness, using the filter's slider controls. Figure 8.29 illustrates the Ink Outlines and Sponge filters.

Figure 8.29 *Ink Outlines (left) and Sponge (right).*

Sumi-e

Sumi-e is a Japanese technique that involves using an ink-loaded wet brush to draw on highly absorbent rice paper, much like painting on a blotter. It works best with abstracts or landscapes, as it blurs portrait subjects a bit too much. The only controls are stroke width, stroke pressure, and contrast.

Edgy Filters

Some filters do their work by finding the edges in your image, then enhancing them in some way. These filters all produce somewhat abstract effects, but if you check out the photography magazines you'll see that they are quite popular with traditional and digital photographers.

Find Edges

The Find Edges filter produces some dramatic effects, similar to drawings created with colored pencils. There are no controls or dialog boxes. This filter makes a great springboard for combining several filters or using other controls to generate outrageous variations. Use the Image > Adjustments > Hue/Saturation dialog box's sliders to warp the colors in your edge-enhanced image, juice up the saturation, or lighten/darken the effect. Pixelate your image, or merge it with a copy of the original image, adjusting the Opacity slider in the Layers palette to combine varying percentages of the unaltered and edge-enhanced versions. Figure 8.30 shows the Sumi-e and Find Edges filters applied to our portrait.

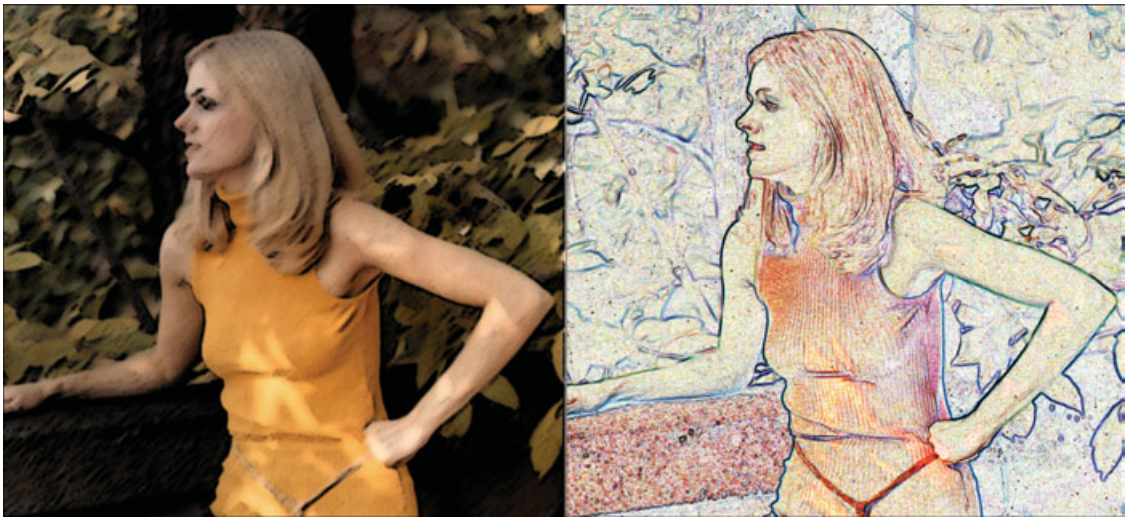


Figure 8.30 *Sumi-e (left) and Find Edges (right).*

Glowing Edges

Glowing Edges adds incredible colors to the edges of your image. None of the images it produces will look realistic—but I guarantee they'll all be interesting! The controls are the same as with Accented Edges, but this filter does not reverse the tones of your image. The Edge Width control adjusts the relative width of the edges; Edge Brightness controls whether the edges are stroked in a dark or light tone, while Smoothness determines how closely the edges follow the actual edges in the image.

Accented Edges

The Accented Edges filter works a little like Find Edges, but with additional control over the width, smoothness, and brightness of the edges in the image. Edge Width adjusts the relative width of the edges; Edge Brightness controls whether the edges are stroked in a dark or light tone, while Smoothness determines how closely the edges follow the actual edges in the image. Higher settings produce more gradual transitions from one angle to the next. Figure 8.31 shows the Glowing Edges and Accented Edges performing their edgy magic.

Figure 8.31 *Glowing Edges (left) and Accented Edges (right).*

Trace Contours

The Trace Contours filter is similar in concept to the Find Edges filter, but they produce very different looks. You can adjust the brightness level Trace Contours uses as the threshold to outline edges in your image. Trace Contours creates different outlines for each color channel. Experiment with this filter. This is another filter that can be used as a jumping off point. Try different level settings, merge a contoured image with the original, or invert your contour to create new effects.

Emboss

Emboss finds the edges in your image and raises them, discarding most of the colors in your image in the process, and producing a stamped metal effect. You can specify the angle for the imaginary light source that casts the shadow of the raised surface. Values from 0 degrees (right side of the image) to 90 degrees (directly overhead) and on to 180 degrees (left side of the image) produce a raised effect. From –1 (right) to –90 degrees (directly underneath) to –179 degrees (left) make the image seem to be pressed into the surface.

You can also specify the height of the embossing, from 1 to 10 pixels. The larger the number, the greater the 3D effect. Use this control with the Amount slider, described below. You can get some lovely, grainy effects even with only a one-pixel-high emboss if you ramp up the contrast by specifying 500 percent with the Amount slider. Also adjust the amount of embossing, from 1 to 500 percent. I've gotten some great results from using a very small height with a large Amount setting—and vice versa.

On its own, Emboss often isn't particularly useful with some images, since the 3D effect, while interesting, has bland coloration and featureless backgrounds. You'll want to combine this filter with other effects—pixelation, distortion, or even sharpening—to create a really outrageous image. Figure 8.32 shows the Trace Contours and Emboss filters applied.

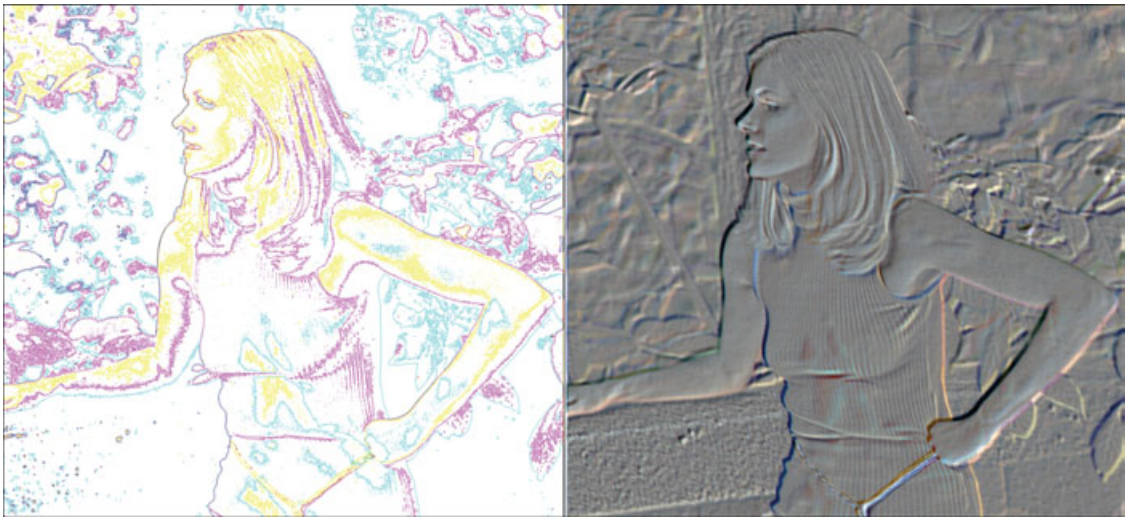


Figure 8.32 *Trace Contours (left) and Emboss (right).*

Distortion Filters

Distortion filters are all "pixel movers." They operate by shifting pixels from one location to another. Because distortion filters cause such dramatic changes, you'll want to select the images you use them with carefully. Here are descriptions of some of the more useful filters that distort.

Pinch

The Pinch filter squeezes the contents of an image towards the center, or pushes it out toward its outer edges. The only control available is an Amount slider, which can be varied from 0 to 100 percent (to pinch inward) or from 0 to –100 percent (to push outward).

Figure 8.33 shows an entire image that has been pinched by 50 percent. However, if you're pinching a rectangularly shaped selection, the filter automatically blends the affected area into the surrounding image. That's because Photoshop Elements applies the filter to the largest ellipse that will fit inside the square or rectangle. The effect is feathered into the rest of the selection, providing a smooth transition.

Ripple

The Ripple filter gives you a wavy effect, supposedly something like the ripples on a pond, except when we think of those we usually expect them to be concentric. If that's what you want, investigate the Zigzag filter instead. Personally, I think Adobe has the names of these two filters reversed.

The Ripple dialog box allows you to specify an Amount from 0 (little ripples) to 999 (big ripples) or 0 to –999 (the ripples go the other direction). You can also choose Small, Medium, and Large from a drop-down list, which controls not the size of the ripples (as you might expect), but how closely spaced together they are. Go figure. This ripple frequency is calculated in proportion to the selection: Choosing Small will produce differently sized ripples in small selections than in large selections.

This is one filter that produces a stark transition with the rest of your image unless you remember to feather the selection before you apply the effect. You can also produce some wonderful textures by applying the Ripple filter to the same selection multiple times, alternating negative and positive values, or mixing Small, Medium, or Large frequencies. Figure 8.33 shows the Pinch and Ripple filters.

Figure 8.33 *Pinch (left) and Ripple (right).*

Spherize

This filter wraps your image or selection onto a sphere. The dialog box shows a wireframe representation. You can specify outward and inward bulges from 0 to plus or minus 100 percent. The effect is quite similar to that of the Pinch filter. However, the Sphere filter also lets you distort your image around a vertical or horizontal cylinder, by choosing Horizontal Only or Vertical Only from a drop-down list. If your selection area is not round, Spherize carves out a circular area in the middle of the selection, and distorts that.

Spherize is great for creating spheres from scratch. If you want a plain sphere, try this trick: Select a circle and fill it with a radial gradient. Position the center of the gradient up and to one side of the circle. Use Filter > Render > Lens Flare to make the surface even more realistic. Then apply the Spherize filter. Presto! One ball-shaped object, ready to roll.

Twirl

The Twirl filter swirls your image around like so much wet paint. The center pixels move more drastically than those on the periphery. The only control available is the slider that specifies degrees of twisting from –999 to +999 degrees (more than two full rotations) so you can create a whirlpool-like effect. Positive numbers give you a clockwise spin effect; negative numbers reverse the spin to counterclockwise. Figure 8.34 shows the Spherize and Twirl filters.

Figure 8.34 *Spherize (left) and Twirl (right).*

Wave

The Wave filter offers more than a dozen controls you can use to specify how your image is roiled up. There are three kinds of waves, and you can choose the number, size, and frequency of the ripples.

The key controls include:

- Number of generators, or the number of points where waves are created, up to 999 (but that's far too many for most images—the effect is so muddled that each wave may be only a pixel or two wide). In my tests, high numbers ended up producing areas with plain tone, and no waves at all! You'll want to use from 5 to 20, tops.
- Wavelength Minimum/Maximum, which sets the distance from one wave crest to the next. What's the frequency, Kenneth? In this case, wavelength minimum and maximum (from 1 to 999) refer to the number of individual waves produced by each generator.
- Amplitude Minimum/Maximum, which controls the height of the waves, from 1 to 999.
- Horizontal/Vertical Scale, to adjust the amount of distortion provided by each wave, from 1 to 100 percent.
- How Undefined Areas Are Filled In, to have pixels wrap around from one side to another, or stretch from the edge to fill the empty spaces.
- Type of Wave, from smooth sine waves, sharp triangle waves, or blocky square waves.
- Randomize, to apply random values to your waves parameters.

Zigzag

The Zigzag filter is excellent for producing ripples in an image. You don't actually get zigzags at all with most settings. Choose the amount of distortion from –100 to +100 and the number of ridges from 1 to 20. You may also select pond-type ripples, ripples that emanate from the center of your selection, and whirlpool-like ripples that revolve around the center of the selection in alternating directions. The Zigzag filter is a good choice for creating any type of water effect, assorted liquids, and special textures. Figure 8.35 shows the Wave and Zigzag filters at work.

Figure 8.35 *Wave (left) and Zigzag (right).*

Pixelation and Stylizing Filters

These filters range from the mildly interesting to the wildly useful, and all of them provide distinct effects. You may have no parameters to enter, or just a few simple controls. Here's a quick rundown on the best of them.

Color Halftone

Don't confuse the Color Halftone filter with actual halftoning. Instead, it simply looks at the color layers of your image and changes them into a pattern of dots. As with real halftones, the highlight areas are represented by small dots, and shadow areas are represented by larger dots. The filter is a good way to add an interesting texture to your image.

Halftone Pattern

This is a versatile effect, changing your image into a black-and-white halftone screen, replacing all the original colors with shades of gray—or another set of colors, since Halftone Screen uses your application's current foreground and background colors. Only three controls are required: a Size slider that controls the size of the fake halftone dots used, you can also select the type of screen, from dot, line, and circle, and adjust the contrast of your image as the filter is applied. Figure 8.36 shows the Color Halftone and Halftone Screen filters.

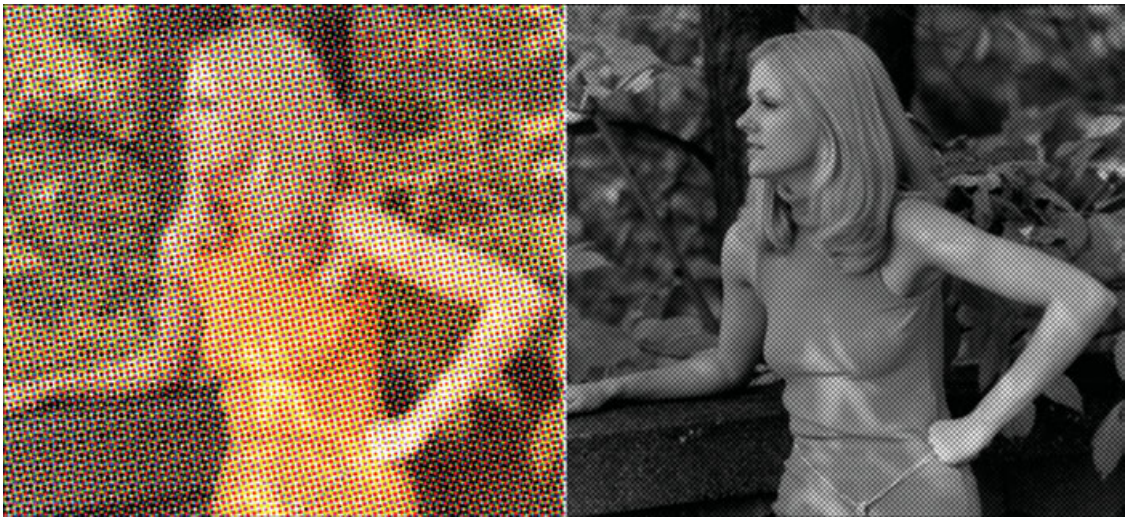


Figure 8.36 *Color Halftone (left) and Halftone Pattern (right).*

Crystallize

Crystallize converts an image to a series of random polygons, using a cell size you specify using a slider. As with the Color Halftone filter, the smaller the cell size, the more detail retained from your original image. Larger cells simplify your picture and mask defects.

Facet

Facet converts blocks of pixels of similar colors to a single tone, producing a faceted, posterized effect. This filter masks details, so it makes a good cover-up for subjects with defects in complexion or texture. This is one of those single step filters that has no dialog box. Just apply it once or several times until you get the effect you want. Figure 8.37 shows the Crystallize and Facet filters at work.

Figure 8.37 *Crystallize (left) and Facet (right).*

Diffuse

If you know a bit about photography, don't confuse this digital diffuser with the kind you're used to. If you're a true photo nut, you'll know that diffusion can be produced by a conventional filter with a texture—something as simple as women's hosiery stretched over a frame is sometimes used in the darkroom to provide a diffusing effect when a print is exposed. A glass filter placed in front of the camera lens with petroleum jelly applied also can be used to create diffusion.

The Diffuse filter carves up your picture into four-pixel elements then moves pixels towards the higher-contrast areas of your image, producing a smudgy effect. In photography, diffusing a positive image "spreads" lighter areas into darker areas, so an on-camera filter smudges highlights into the shadows. Diffusing a negative image during printing also spreads lighter areas into the darker areas, but in that case, those are the more transparent shadows of an image, smudged into the denser highlights. The final image diffused under the enlarger has a much different look than one diffused in the camera.

Photoshop Elements' diffusion does not work in this way, so don't bother inversing a picture or selection before applying the diffusion filter, and then converting it back. Even with multiple applications, the effect is virtually identical whether you diffuse a positive or negative image. Your only controls are options to perform this diffusion on all pixels, only darker pixels, or lighter pixels, and a new option, anisotropic (which is a type of surface in which long, thin features are aligned in one direction, such as brushed metal objects). You have to try this one out to see the interesting texture it produces.

Wind

Wind can create dozens of windy and streak effects. Although it works in a left-to-right or right-to-left direction, you can achieve vertical "wind" by rotating your image before applying the filter, then rotating it back to its original orientation. You'll get the best results if you work with images that have empty areas the wind can streak into. You can apply the filter several times from different directions to get some unique looks. It also works well with sports images. Wind looks especially good on silhouetted images. Figure 8.38 shows the Diffuse and Wind filters.

Figure 8.38 *Diffuse (left) and Wind (right).*

Chalk & Charcoal

This filter gives you the effects of a mixed-media drawing using rough chalk to express the midtones and highlights, and charcoal for the shadows. The diagonal lines used obliterate image detail, so this filter works best with photos that have strong areas. Choose background and foreground colors carefully to achieve different types of chalk/charcoal effects.

Crosshatch

Crosshatch adds a cross pattern of pencil-like strokes to your image, adding texture without destroying all the original colors and detail of the original. It's a good arty effect with an unusual degree of control. Not only can you specify the stroke length and sharpness, but the number of times in succession the filter is applied. The more repetitions, the stronger the effect. Figure 8.39 shows the Chalk & Charcoal and Crosshatch filters.

Figure 8.39 *Chalk & Charcoal (left) and Crosshatch (right).*

Glass

The Glass filter provides effects you might get if you placed a glass block in front of your lens. You can specify the amount of distortion and the smoothness of the glass. A separate Surface Controls dialog box allows you to choose from glass blocks, frosted glass, tiny glass lenses, and even canvas. For images with individual features you can select a scaling to control the relative size of the image and the underlying texture, or invert the texture. Figure 8.40 shows two variations of the Glass filter.

Figure 8.40 *Glass filter variations.*

Next Up

The final chapter in this book is going to explain a little about how printers work with Photoshop Elements, and includes an update of some special features that the very newest printers have.

Ink Tank
BCI-3eBK
Black
PUSH
Ink Tank
BCI-3C
Cyan
PUSH
Ink Tank
BCI-3M
Magenta
PUSH
Ink Tank
BCI-3eY
Yellow
PUSH
PUSH
PUSH
PUSH
Black
Cyan
Magenta
Yellow
Printhead QY6-0034
Made in Japan

9

Hardcopies Made Easy

The photographic print has a long and glorious history in photography. The earliest daguerreotypes and tintypes were very print-like, even though they were made of thin sheets of metal: they were positive images viewed by reflective light that could be displayed in frames or passed around for viewing. Later, paper prints grew beyond the original fuzzy efforts of William Fox Talbot to fully detailed copies made from film or glass plate negative originals, becoming the standard destination for photographic images.

Prints are what we think of when our mind's eye pictures a "photograph." Even photos originally captured and viewed as transparencies on a light box or with a slide projector frequently end up as reflective hard copies. Conventional photographers creating images with 120-format and larger transparency film or 35mm color slides make prints of their work. Digital photographers may capture, view, and store their images on a computer, but they still prize hardcopies for display or distribution. Despite entirely new channels for viewing photographic images, such as Web pages or electronic presentations, prints remain an important destination for a significant number of pictures. This chapter will explore some of the print options available with Photoshop Elements, as always, from the photographer's viewpoint.

Why Prints?

Back in 1990, I worked on the PR team that created publicity materials for an exciting new product: the Kodak Photo CD. The scientists who developed the technology showed me dozens of exciting applications for this high-resolution digital format. Many of these have come to pass, and today, more than a dozen years later, you can drop your pictures off at any retail photofinishing outlet and receive an inexpensive Photo CD along with your prints (although the less-expensive and lower resolution Picture CD has also become popular). Professional Photo

CDs are an important option for photographers who want to distribute their portfolios electronically in a format that allows both previewing of low-resolution prints and sale of "locked" high-resolution versions.

However, one of the most hyped capabilities of Photo CD technology never caught on. The prototype Photo CD players I looked at were cool enough. You could flip through your Photo CD albums at high speed on your own television screen, zooming in to view interesting details, moving back and forth in slide show fashion. Plans were to have inexpensive printmakers attached to the Photo CD player to make hardcopies. By the 21st Century, families would view their snapshots clustered around their television or home entertainment center. Certainly, prints would still be made, but viewing pictures on the TV would soon be the most popular mode.

What happened? What saved us from endless hours of viewing the neighbor's vacation pictures on television? The answer is a simple one: Humans are in love with prints. We fight to get the first look at handfuls of snapshots fresh from the photofinisher. We select our favorites for sharing, and like to hide or destroy the ones that make us look ugly. It's fun to pass a stack of photos around, letting each person view them at his own speed, hurrying through the boring ones and stopping to linger over the compelling images. Most of the time you don't want to call everyone into the family room to look at photos on the TV. You want to look at them where and when you want to.

Moreover, you can't stick a Photo CD on the refrigerator with a magnet or tack one on the wall of a cubicle at work. Photo CDs don't look good framed on the mantel, and can't be shown off in a gallery. Despite the encroachments of technology, we still like *prints*.

As a result, you can expect that prints will remain the favored end-result of photography, in both digital and conventional realms. Most amateur photographers who use film cameras work with negative films and make hard-copy prints. Even color transparencies, favored by professional photographers for their superior quality when reproduced, usually end up as paper prints or published in magazines.

Recently, digital photography has made some dramatic changes in the way we work with our images. Unlike photos captured on film, every digital picture you take isn't routinely converted into a print by a photofinisher. In that respect, digital pictures are like the color slides favored by amateurs and pros alike in the 1950s. Color slides and digital pictures are typically viewed on a screen and only the very best end up as prints.

Digital technology has further refined photographic Darwinism. Thanks to the "quick erase" buttons on many digital image grabbers, some pictures are deleted from your solid-state "film" before they even make it out of the camera. Only the most photographically fit images survive. Anyone who has shot an entire roll of film just to get a shot or two that was worth printing will appreciate the film-saving economy of a digital camera.

A significant number of electronic images are never intended for hard copies that you can pass around and show to friends. You might take a picture for a Web page, such as the one shown in Figure 9.1, drop a shot into your PowerPoint presentation, or place an image in a desktop publication without the slightest need for a print.

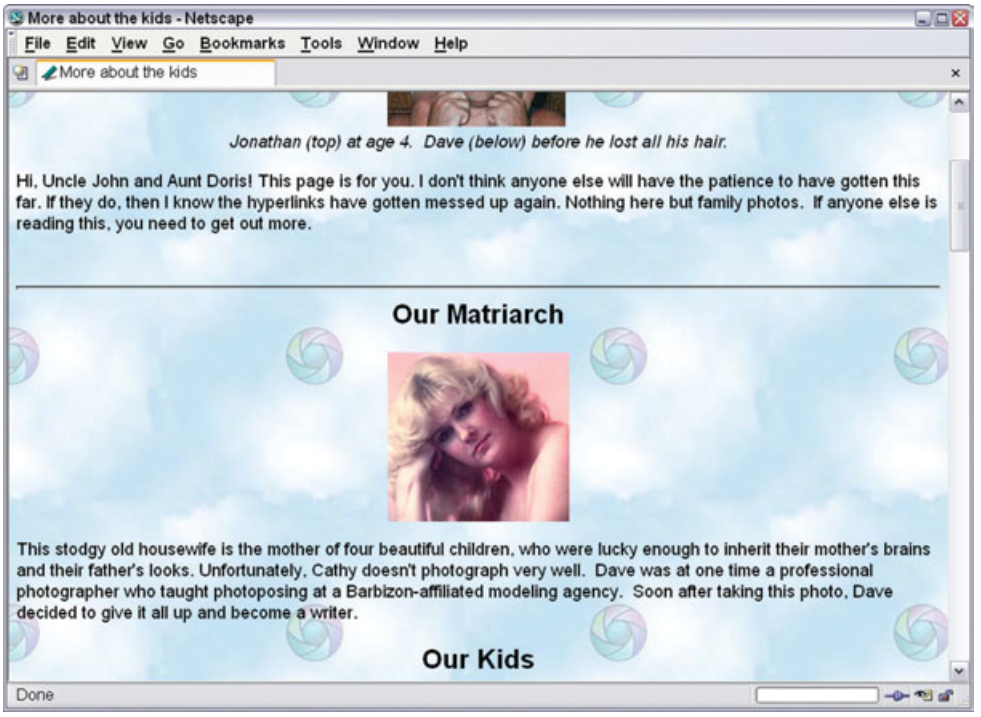

More about the kids - Netscape
File Edit View Go Bookmarks Tools Window Help
More about the kids
Jonathan (top) at age 4. Dave (below) before he lost all his hair.
Hi, Uncle John and Aunt Doris! This page is for you. I don't think anyone else will have the patience to have gotten this far. If they do, then I know the hyperlinks have gotten messed up again. Nothing here but family photos. If anyone else is reading this, you need to get out more.
Our Matriarch
This stodgy old housewife is the mother of four beautiful children, who were lucky enough to inherit their mother's brains and their father's looks. Unfortunately, Cathy doesn't photograph very well. Dave was at one time a professional photographer who taught photoposing at a Barbizon-affiliated modeling agency. Soon after taking this photo, Dave decided to give it all up and become a writer.
Our Kids
Done

Figure 9.1 *Many photos are displayed only on Web sites, and never are made into hard copies.*

Even so, we'll always need prints, and, if anything, the availability of inexpensive photo quality printers encourages digital photographers to make bigger and better prints of their efforts, where they might have been satisfied with small 4 × 6-inch prints from the photofinisher before. Photoshop Elements and rampant computer technology not only let you limit your hard copies to the prints you really want, but make the prints you do create better looking, with better colors, in larger sizes, and more quickly than ever before.

Color Prints as Proofs

Most of the time, your color prints will be your finished product, whether your intent is to display the print in a frame or pass it around among friends and colleagues. A print is a typical end product for most amateur and professional photographers. If the print looks good to you, that's usually enough. You may need to work with Element's color correction tools or your computer's color management system (as outlined in Chapter 6) so that producing pleasing color prints is fast and easy.

PROOFS VS. PROOFS

The word "proofs" has a dual meaning in photography. Portrait and wedding photographers create proof prints that are used by clients to select final images. Today, it's more common to display proofs using a projection system or digital viewing system in the actual finished size of the print, but hard copy proofs are still used for this purpose. A second kind of proof, discussed in this section, is a print used to judge the color balance and quality of an image as it will appear when printed.

However, professional photographers and serious photographic artists may have additional hardcopy concerns related to print permanence and image accuracy that aren't addressed fully by any of the output options outlined in the rest of this chapter. One of the most common pro applications for color prints are as *proofs*, which are high-accuracy color prints designed to reflect as closely as possible how an image will appear when printed. While pre-press operations are beyond the scope of this book (and covered in depth by classics like Dan Margulis' *Professional Photoshop*), you should know some of what is involved.

In the printing industry, proofs are made of images that have been separated into their component colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black in the case of full-color images). Chromalin proofs are a standard, albeit expensive way of producing accurate color proofs of these color images. Chromalins are film proofs made using a patented DuPont system of mixing colored cyan, magenta, yellow, and black dye powders to approximate the printed colors, in the case of full color images. (Chromalins can also be produced to proof spot color images using other colors of ink.) They provide a way of previewing a printed image without actually making plates and printing it on a press.

For digital prints, it's becoming more common to use Scitex Iris digital proofing devices, a kind of superexpensive inkjet printer on steroids that can produce hyperaccurate, hyperdetailed photos, for both proofing and making art prints intended for display. The quality is truly gorgeous, but the equipment is expensive (justifiable only by a service bureau or a high-volume internal department), and you should be prepared to pay $50 and up per print. Affordable desktop proofing devices, priced at a few thousand dollars but capable of printing 11 × 14 and 11 × 17-inch photos or larger are available from companies like Hewlett-Packard and Epson.

Once you reach this print output stratosphere, you'll find that Elements doesn't really have all the tools you need to create professional output. For that, you need its big brother, Photoshop, as shown in Figure 9.2, which lets you print CMYK hard proofs from files that have been saved in CMYK format (not RGB) and include color calibration bars, registration marks, and additional features. Elements does let you save files in Scitex CT format, a CMYK file format used for color separations, but really isn't geared up for high-end prepress manipulations. However, for all other applications, Elements works just fine.

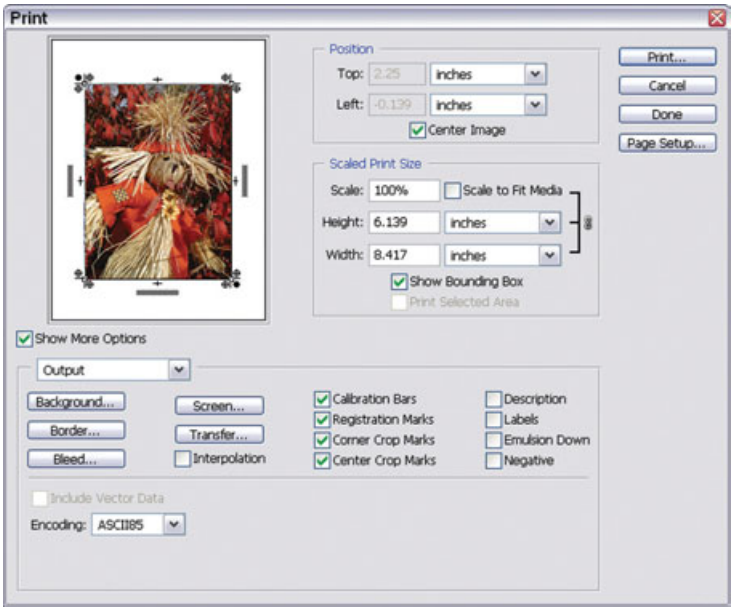


Figure 9.2 *If you need hard proofs, you'll have to print them out using Photoshop; Elements doesn't include all the options shown here.*

Your Output Options

If you want to examine digital printers using the darkroom analogy, they roughly correspond to an automated print processing system. You feed the paper into the processor, and the finished print comes out the other end. As with a darkroom print processor, you have relatively little control over the print once processing begins. The job of the printer/processor is to control variables and produce similar results every time when fed similar photos. A printer provides the repeatability and ease of use that a print processor offers. Photoshop and the printing controls included in your printer's driver software are the "enlarger" component in our digital darkroom.

If you still have doubts that paper prints will continue to thrive in the digital age, check out the ads in your local newspaper. You'll find sales on dozens of different color printers, including many capable of photo-quality reproduction at $99 to $149. You'll also see blurbs for photofinishers eager to make prints from your digital images sent to them over the Internet, on CD-ROM, or the most popular memory card formats. You'll also see promotions for those stand-alone photo kiosks that make it easy to capture an image of a print through a built-in scanner, or view your digital pictures from CD, floppy disk, or memory card, then crop, rotate, enlarge, and print them while you wait. There are many options for creating hardcopies, and you'll find all of them useful from time to time.

Laser Printers

If you work with text documents, create desktop publications, output lots of overhead transparencies, or are involved in other business printing, you may already have a black-and-white or color laser printer (or, alternatively, one that uses light emitting diodes (LEDs) to create an image instead of a laser). For business printing and making copies of documents, laser printers are great.

They're fast, especially when multiple copies are made, use ordinary paper, and subsist on a diet of powdered toner that is, page for page, much less expensive than the pigments or dyes used for other printing systems. However, these printers are best suited for text and line art. If you have business documents with black text spiced with spot color charts and graphs or colored headlines added for emphasis, a laser printer is ideal.

However, photographers will find many applications for both black-and-white and color laser printers. For example, even a monochrome laser can produce an acceptable grayscale image that can be pasted into a layout on a "for position only" (FPO) basis. You can run off 20 or 30 copies quickly and inexpensively and route them for approval of pose or content, saving color hard copies for final approval. A color laser printer can be used for the same purposes at a slightly higher per-page cost, but with the added dimension of color. You might not want to use your laser printer for proofing, but it can have many other uses. When my daughter's cat ran astray, we printed up 100 "Have You Seen Our Kitten" miniposters on my black-and-white laser printer at a cost of a few cents per page. I've also used color laser printers for low-cost print-on-demand publications, like the one shown in Figure 9.3.

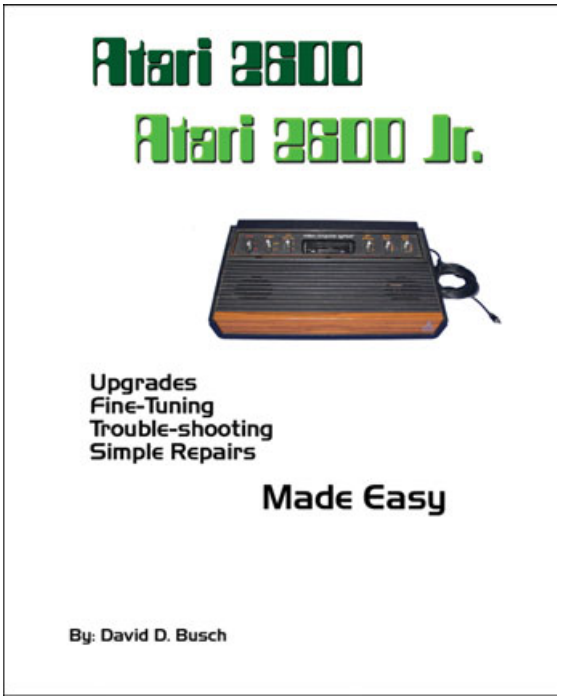


Figure 9.3 *Color lasers are excellent for low-run print-on-demand publications.*

Laser page printers are particularly fast when making multiple copies of the same original. The image is downloaded to the printer once, charging an electrically sensitive drum, which revolves at high speed, picking up toner and applying it to a sheet of paper. Once a page has been imaged on the drum, you can print multiple copies as quickly as the printer can feed sheets of paper. Inkjet printers, in contrast, must print each and every page dot-by-dot, line by line, whether you're printing one copy or 100 of the same image.

Color page printers work in much the same way as their black-and-white cousins. However, each image is run through the exposure, image writing, and toning steps four times, once each for cyan, magenta, yellow, and black portions of the image.

Obviously, separate toning stations must be provided inside the printer for each color, making for a larger, bulkier device. Once all four colors of toner are transferred to the electrically charged drum or belt, they are transferred to the paper and permanently heat-fused to the paper.

Because of their complexity, color page printers are often considerably more expensive, with the least expensive models starting at around $600 and moving swiftly to the $3,000 and up price range. Laser-type color printers typically don't provide quality that is as good as other types of printers for photographic output, but do much better on fine lines and text. These printers are best suited for spot color—images with specific elements that must be represented in cyan, magenta, yellow, red, green, blue, or some other shade. The consumables cost for ordinary paper and the color toners is likely to be less than for an inkjet printer, so if you have many images to print, a color laser can reduce your incremental per-print costs.

Inkjet Printers

Inkjet printers have become ubiquitous. You can buy them in your supermarket for $50, trot down to your electronics or computer store and purchase a photo-quality model for around $100, or spend as little as $300 to $400 for an inkjet specifically designed to print eye-popping color photos on glossy or matte paper. These printers are cheap enough to buy that virtually any amateur photographer can afford one, and serious amateurs and pros can easily justify the best models available.

Whether you can afford to *operate* an inkjet printer is something else again. One of the reasons inkjets are priced so low is that the vendors tend to make lots of money on the consumables. One inkjet printer I purchased last year cost $75 on sale. One month and two ink cartridges later I'd spent more than my original investment on ink alone. I ended up giving the printer away and purchasing a more economical model.

Why do inkjet printers cost so much to operate? Start with the paper. Most inkjet printers can make acceptable prints on ordinary copier paper that costs a cent or two per sheet. However, the paper is thin and flimsy, has a dull paper-like finish, and neither looks nor feels like a real photograph. Plain paper inkjet prints have a look and quality that resembles a picture you might clip out of the newspaper rather than an actual photo.

For best results, you must use special "photo" papers that cost 50 cents to $1 a sheet or more. These sheets have a water-resistant plastic substrate that doesn't absorb ink, coated with glossy and matte surfaces (some with both surfaces, on alternate sides, so you can print on whichever side of the sheet you need). Because the ink doesn't spread, the printer is able to apply smaller, more distinct dots of color, producing sharper photographic-quality prints. While the improved quality is important, a buck per print isn't cheap, especially if you like to experiment or if you make many mistakes.

Special paper is only part of the cost. Color ink cartridges can cost $25-$35 each, and generally must be used in conjunction with a black-and-white ink cartridge at $20 and up. Some printers use two color cartridges (a "strong" color cart for cyan, magenta, and yellow; and a "weak" color cart for cyan and magenta) to provide additional tones. A single cartridge may output

hundreds of pages if you're outputting text that covers roughly 5 to 15 percent of the page. A full-color image, on the other hand, typically covers 100 percent of the area printed (whether it's a 4 × 6 print or a full 8 × 10) so you may get as few as 20 to 30 full-page prints per ink cartridge. Plan on allocating another $1 per page just for ink.

It gets worse. If your particular printer's ink cartridge includes all three colors in a single module, you may find that one color runs out even more quickly (because, say, you're printing images that contain lots of yellow) and you must throw away a cartridge even when there are plenty of the other hues in the remaining tanks.

Of course, you may want to try out one of those inkjet refill kits, which come with bottles of ink and one or more syringes. They can provide two or three fillings at less than the cost of a single new tricolor cartridge. Some people swear by them, although I, personally, swear at them. The process takes a lot of time, which can be better spent taking pictures or working with your image editor. If you have only one syringe, you must clean it with distilled water to remove all the ink before refilling another tank with a different color. If you use three syringes, you have to clean all three when you're done. The ink tends to spill and get all over your fingers and everything else in the vicinity. If you don't refill at exactly the right time, the innards of the cartridge may dry out, leaving you with a freshly refilled, non-working ink cartridge. Nor can cartridges be refilled indefinitely. If your printer uses nozzles built into the cartridge itself, these nozzles may wear out after a few refills. You'll have to buy a new one at full price and start over.

Many inkjet printers accept third-party ink cartridges that cost half or a third of what the vendor sells them for. Of course, you must take your chances that the cartridges are as good and that the ink is of the same quality and permanence as that in the vendor's own cartridges.

Saving Money with Inkjets

In the long run, of course, even an inkjet printer that is the most expensive to operate is still cheaper to use than your photolab, and, for the Elements-adept, provides much more control. Printing your own pictures is the equivalent of working in a darkroom: You can tailor your output precisely to your own needs. Even so, you don't have to pay top dollar for your inkjet prints. Here are some tips for saving money.

Reducing Paper Costs

Paper costs are easy to trim. Try these cost-savers:

- *Buy photo paper in larger quantities*. You'll find that a 50-sheet or 100-sheet pack can be 50 percent cheaper per sheet than the 10-sheet or 25-sheet packages. Buy smaller quantities only to test the quality of a particular kind of paper. Once you're certain you like it, stock up on the larger packages.
- *Don't lock yourself into the vendor's product line*. Vendors guarantee that their papers will be compatible with their inks. In practice, there have been some combinations of paper stocks and inks that perform poorly, particularly when it comes to archival permanence. Use the wrong paper with the wrong ink and you may find yourself with faded photos in a few months. However, you should test a variety of papers, including generic store-brand stocks to

see which provide the best combination of performance and longevity. For example, many of the color prints I make are submitted to newspapers. I don't care what they look like three months later; I never see them again.

- *Experiment with premium-quality plain paper*. I've used various brands with Bright White, Heavy Weight, or Premium Weight designations, including some that have a fairly glossy finish. I've even used old thermal printer paper stocks with inkjet printers. Paying $5 and up for a ream of "ordinary" paper can pay off if it gives you superior results when printing photos. You may have to test to see which of your printer's paper settings work best. For example, when I use glossy plain paper with my inkjet, I must use a High Resolution Paper setting (but not any of the glossy photo paper settings) to get the best results.
- *Choose appropriate print sizes*. If a 5 × 7 will do the job (which is the case with the prints I submit for publication), don't make an 8 × 10. You can fit two 5 × 7s on a single 8.5 × 11-inch sheet, which cuts your cost for paper in half.
- *Use plain paper instead of photo paper where plain paper will do the job*. You don't always need a glossy or matte photo-quality print. You'd be surprised at how good a picture can look on $2-a-ream paper that costs less than half a cent a sheet.

Reducing Ink Costs

The cost of ink is the consumable expense that offers the most options for control. Try these:

- *Choose an ink-frugal printer*. When I chucked my old ink-hog inkjet, I invested a whopping $149 in a Canon model that uses individual ink tanks for each color, plus black, as shown in Figure 9.4. I no longer worry about what mix of colors my prints have, or whether I'm about to deplete my yellow, cyan, or magenta inks. When one color runs out, instead of dropping a new $35 cartridge in the printer, I replace only one color tank, for $10 or less. As a bonus, my new printer's larger tanks get many more prints per color than my old clunker.

Figure 9.4 *Separate ink tanks for each color provide the best economy.*

- *Investigate less expensive ink sources*. Actually, I don't pay anywhere near $10 for an ink tank. I found a source that sells Canon-brand ink tanks, still factory sealed, for half the regular price. If you can't find discounted ink cartridges or tanks for your printer, check out third-party cartridges, which are available for the most common Epson and Hewlett-Packard models.
- *Give one of those ink refilling kits a try*. If you like to tinker and aren't as clumsy as I am these could work for you. Shop carefully so you purchase kits with good quality ink. And don't forget to buy some extra syringes.
- *Watch those print sizes*. An 8 × 10 uses a lot of ink. Save the larger sizes for your portfolio, or for display on a mantel.

How Inkjets Work

Inkjet printers work exactly as you might think—by spraying a jet of ink onto a piece of paper, under precision computer control. Images are formed a dot at a time with a fine stream of ink, either water-based or solid (which is melted just before application) in disposable or (sometimes) refillable ink cartridges. With one common technology, piezoelectric crystals in the print head vibrate as electric current flows through them, issuing carefully timed streams of ink from a tiny nozzle, generating a precisely positioned dot.

Liquid inks tend to soak into regular paper, which enlarges the size of the dots in a process similar to the dot gain you see on printing presses. A low-end 720 dpi printer (most inkjets today have much higher resolutions) may produce output that looks no better than 300 dpi when the page dries. Liquid inks can also smear when wet. You may need to use a special paper stock for optimal results with this kind of printer.

The very first inkjet color printers used just three ink tanks—cyan, magenta, and yellow—and simulated black by combining equal quantities of all three colors. There may even be a few very low end inkjet printers available that still use this method. (I've seen no-name inkjet printers advertised as low as $19.) However, there are several problems with the three-ink approach. So-called "composite blacks" tended to be brown and muddy rather than true black. In addition, black ink is a lot cheaper than colored ink, so it made little sense to use three times as much expensive ink to create black tones. Three-color printers are particularly wasteful when generating black-and-white-only pages, such as pages of text. So, most color inkjet printers today use four tanks, adding black. Some vendors have experimented with printers that use a total of six color ink tanks, black, plus a "strong" cyan, "strong" magenta, and yellow ink plus a diluted "weak" cyan, and magenta (yellow only comes in one color: weak), to allow creating many more color combinations. Others have *eight* tanks: cyan, magenta, yellow, red, blue, matte black, photo black, and gloss optimizer!

The results with inkjet printers can be amazing. Figure 9.5 shows a nearly full-frame digital camera image of about 2000 × 1500 pixels. The yellow box around the little girl's face marks a 240 × 200-pixel area. Figure 9.6 shows the original digital camera image of that area at left, with a high-resolution (6400 dpi) scan of that area from an actual 5 × 7 digital print. While you can clearly see the ink dots in the close-up scan, the original print looks, for all intents and purposes, as if it were made on photographic paper from a photographic negative.

Figure 9.5 *The original image looks like this. The enlarged portion in the figure below is highlighted in yellow.*

Figure 9.6 *Even a tiny portion of the original image looks sharp when enlarged, both in the original (left) and the inkjet print (right).*

Inkjet printers are fairly low-maintenance devices. You'll have to clean the nozzles from time to time (the printer's driver software will offer an option for that chore). If the printer's nozzles are built into the printer itself rather than the ink cartridges, you may have to replace the nozzles after making many prints. I've personally found this to be a non-issue. My first "photo" printer, an ancient Epson Stylus Color from 1995 (which didn't produce true photo quality at all) is still plugging away with its original built-in print head after thousands of prints. Inkjet printers are now so inexpensive that you're likely to replace any model you own with a built-in print head within a year or two in favor of a newer, cheaper device that provides better quality, long before the original print head expires.

The chief danger to built-in heads is frequent changing of ink cartridges, especially those that have been refilled, because each change can introduce some dirt that can clog the head. I've had some luck cleaning my old Epson's print heads with a cotton swab dipped in alcohol. Some online sources offer cleaning systems for ink jet print heads, using glycerine and distilled water solutions.

It's also important to keep the paper path and advance mechanism clean, because any "stutter" in the movement of your paper can cause a pattern of white lines in the finished output.

Dye Sublimation Printers

A third type of color printer uses a thermal process to transfer dye to the printed page. The advantage of thermal dye sublimation is that the heat used to transfer the dye can be varied continuously over a range of 0 to 255, so, many, many different shades of a given color can be printed; the hotter the printing element, the more dye that is melted and applied. Other printers, in contrast, can provide only a single color of each pigment per dot (or, both strong and weak colors of each pigment), providing many fewer colors. Indeed, inkjet and laser printers use a dithering process to vary the amount of color by producing digital dots that are larger than the minimum quality—dithering results in much lower effective resolution.

Dye-sub printers don't need dithering to produce many different colors. With 256 variations on each color available, such a printer can reproduce $256 \times 256 \times 256$ individual colors (16.8 million hues) at its maximum resolution. That's also why dye-sub printers don't need the super-high resolution that inkjets require to achieve true photographic quality. If you want the absolute best quality reproduction of your images, a dye sublimation printer is your best choice.

Unfortunately, most affordable dye-sub photo printers produce only snapshot-size prints, chiefly because of the complexity of the printing system and the fact that dye-sub consumables make inkjet materials look cheap by comparison. So, you can't use a low-cost dye-sub printer for enlargements, and their relatively low resolution means you can't use them to print documents. They are strictly photo printers. However, if you want to make lots of snapshots, a low-cost printer in this category can be a good choice.

Unlike inkjet devices, the typical dye-sub printer doesn't complete each line in all four colors before moving on to the next. Instead, each page is printed three or four times, once in each color, depending on whether a three-color or four-color process is being used. These printers must maintain rigid registration between colors to ensure that the dots of each color are

positioned properly in relation to those of other colors. The need for precise registration makes larger format dye-sub printers (8 × 10 and larger) commensurately more expensive to design and produce. In most cases, only a professional photographer can justify a large format dye sublimation printer.

How Dye Sublimation Printers Work

The dye sublimation device's print head includes tiny heating elements, which are switched on and off to melt dots of dye coated on a wide roll of plastic film, contained in a cartridge like the one shown in Figure 9.7. The roll contains alternating panels of cyan, magenta, yellow (and, often, a protective overcoat layer), each the size of the full page. The print head applies all the dots for one color at a time as the page moves past. Then the roll advances to the next color (each panel is used only once) and those dots are printed. After three or four passes, the full-color page is finished.

Figure 9.7 *Dye-sublimation printers use cartridges that contain print-sized panels of alternating cyan, magenta, and yellow dye, plus a clear overcoat protective layer.*

The dye-sub printer's image quality comes from its print head. However, these heaters aren't just switched on and off: their temperature can be precisely controlled to transfer as much or as little dye as required to produce a particular color. The dye sublimates—turns from a solid into a gas, without becoming liquid—and then is absorbed by the polyester substrate of the receiver sheet. However, a special receiver paper with a substrate and coating that accepts the dye transfer is required for this type of printer. Media costs can run to several dollars per page.

Because a dye-sub printer always uses all three or four panels in a set, some capacity is wasted if your image only requires one or two of those colors, or applies color only in a small area of a page. On the other hand, it costs no more to produce pages that have heavy color demands (such as overhead transparencies), so you may come out ahead of inkjet printers in cost (as well as image quality) if you do much work of that type. In addition, the capacity of each roll is precisely predictable: a roll capable of 100 images will produce 100 images, no more, no less. You'll never wonder about when your dye-sub printers colors are about to poop out.

Because they don't need dithering to reproduce colors, dye sublimation printers can offer photographic quality without needing as high a linear resolution as other printers. The dots diffuse smoothly into the receiver sheet, producing smooth blending of colors. However, while you'd never notice that a dye-sub printer uses many fewer dots per inch to generate vivid full-color images, text printed in small sizes and finely detailed line art at that resolution definitely suffer from this diffusion. These printers are great for 24-bit images, but less stunning when your bitmaps are combined with text or lines. You might find such output useful for preparing special reports and other photo-intensive material in small quantities. Full page size thermal sublimation printers are expensive (both to buy and to operate) and slow. Since these printers are entirely practical for use as color-proofing devices, make sure you get and use a color matching system to calibrate your printer to the final output device.

Other Printer Types

There are other types of color printers, each with its own roster of advantages and disadvantages. For example, thermal wax printers, which use wax instead of ink or dye, are not as cheap as inkjet models, but they are capable of producing great quality at high speeds. These printers no longer necessarily require special ultrasmooth paper, and many can now use ordinary cut-sheet paper.

Solid-ink printers use a block of wax or resin ink, which is melted and sprayed directly onto a page, or applied to a drum that rolls against a piece of paper like an offset printing press. These so-called phase change printers are less finicky about paper quality, since the ink is not readily absorbed by the substrate. On the flip side, solid inks can produce washed-out overheads when you print on transparency material, so your choice between these two technologies should include that factor, as well as the extra ink costs of phase change printers.

Using Professional Services

Serious photographers can be loathe to let their pictures out of their control. After all, making a print can be as important a part of the creative process as taking a photo. Even so, your best choice for getting the hard copies may be to let a professional service handle it. There are hundreds of eager picture services ready to create prints for you. They'll output your images directly from your camera's film card or allow you to upload them over the Internet for printing at a remote site.

The easiest way is to stop in at your local department store and look for one of those standalone kiosks, like the Kodak Picture Maker. I've used these when I was on the run, going directly from a photo opportunity to a nearby discount store, making a print, and dropping it off at a newspaper with handwritten cutline. Total elapsed time, 30 minutes, and at a cost of $5.99 for two 5 × 7 prints made from my camera's memory card.

Photo kiosks accept images in many formats, including Secure Digital and CompactFlash memory cards, plus CDs and Photo CDs, floppy diskettes, or original prints, slides, or negatives. The latter are captured with a built-in scanner. It's worthwhile to check out your local kiosk *before* you need pictures in a crunch. The one located nearest to me doesn't accept memory cards and works only with original prints, floppy disks, and Photo CDs (not conventional CD-Rs with photos you've burned yourself). Determine whether the kiosk will accept the file types you want to work with, such as PCX or TIF. You may have to present the device with a JPG file when using a memory card, for example. (Save your JPG in its highest resolution, and you may not notice any loss of quality.)

This option is quick-and-dirty, but you don't lose all control. The kiosk's software has tools for fixing bad color, removing red-eye, and adding borders or text. You can crop, enlarge, or reduce your photos, but not with complete freedom. You may have to crop using the aspect ratio of your selected picture size (for example, 5 × 7 or 8 × 10) and you may be unable to produce an odd-size image (say, a 3 × 7) using the kiosk's controls alone. (You can add white space yourself using Elements' tools, then print a 5 × 7 with very, very wide borders along the long dimension, for example.)

The kiosk will let you print various combinations of pictures that will fill an 8.5 × 11-inch sheet, such as a single 8 × 10, two 5 × 7s, four 4 × 5s, and so forth, but only with duplicates of a single image. You can't print two different 5 × 7s on one sheet, for example, without creating a special image in Elements. I've done this on occasion, ganging several images in one file, then printing it on the kiosk as an 8 × 10. Many photofinishers and stores have standalone kiosks and new desktop printing units connected to their minilabs, so they can produce traditional photographic prints from digital images. You can even transmit images from cell phone cameras directly to a Kodak Picture Maker using Bluetooth or infrared technology!

You can also find printing services online. Companies like Kodak PhotoNet let you upload your images, display them on Web pages, or order prints. There also are firms that accept unprocessed or processed film and convert them to both hard copies and digital images that you can share, download over the Internet, or choose to receive on Photo CD. These are a good choice for those using conventional film and prints, but who don't have a scanner to make digital copies.

Getting Set Up

If you're setting up your first photo-quality printer, there are a few things to consider beyond those already discussed. Here are some points to think about.

- If you're selecting a printer and have a choice between one that has only a parallel port connection and one that has a universal serial bus (USB) connection (or both USB and parallel), choose the USB printer. Printers used with Photoshop have traditionally had parallel port connections (under Windows) or conventional serial port links (under Mac OS with older Macintoshes that have a serial port). While those worked fine in the past, the traditional ports had some serious drawbacks, including limitations on the number of printers you could attach to your computer. The universal serial bus can handle 127 different devices, eases installation (especially under Windows; Microsoft's operating system will automatically locate your new printer and install the right drivers under most conditions), and allows hot swapping. You could, for example, unplug one USB printer and replace it with another, or with another device, such as a scanner, without bothering to reboot. While you can buy parallel-to-USB adapters that let you plug a parallel printer into a USB port, a native USB printer is your best choice.
- Take the time to calibrate your monitor, scanner, and printer, as described in the manuals that came with each. Spend the time now so that what you see more or less resembles what you get.
- Use plain paper rather than the expensive photo paper to do all your test prints and calibrations. As the long-distance commercial says, you can save a buck or two.
- Take some time to compare the results you get with different paper stocks and using different paper settings in your printer's driver. Don't automatically assume that choosing Plain Paper, Pro Paper, or Glossy Paper in the driver will give you the best results with any particular type of printing media.
- Don't go overboard when you first get your printer set up. Resist the urge to print everything on your hard disk just to see how it looks. Instead, use Photoshop Elements' Contact Sheet and Picture Package features to create multiple images on a single page to save time, paper, and ink.

A Typical Print Session

Each color printer you use will have its own options and features. I'm going to follow the typical workflow you might use to print a particular photograph using Photoshop Elements to illustrate the choices you may have to make. Unless you are working with Windows XP and the same Canon inkjet printer I used, you can't follow along exactly, but I hope you'll get the general idea nevertheless. The options are similar under other operating systems, including Mac OS X, and with other inkjet printers.

1. To print a single photograph, choose File > Print (or press Ctrl/Command + P) to produce Elements' basic Print with Preview dialog box, shown in Figure 9.8. If you'd like to print multiple photographs in one session, choose File > Print Multiple Photos (or press Alt/Option + Ctrl/Command + P).

   Not all of the options shown in the dialog box may appear. Some of them (such as the Color Management options shown at the bottom of the box) appear only when you check the Show More Options box. The choices you have on this page include:

   - *Print Size*. You can choose the actual size of your image, or select another standard size, such as 4 × 6-inches or 8 × 10-inches, or Fit on Page (to fill as much of the page as possible) or Custom Size (a size of your choosing).
   - *Scaled Print Size*. This option lets you specify a scale, such as 100 percent or 50 percent. You can also select an area of your image prior to invoking the Print Preview dialog box, and choose to print only the selected area.
   - *Position*. Usually, you'll want to center your image on the page, but you can also position it a selected distance from the top or left edge of the paper.
   - *Crop to Fit Print Proportions*. If you print an image that has a 4:5 aspect ratio (such as a 4 × 5 or 8 × 10-inch print) in a size that uses a different aspect ratio (such as 5 × 7 or 11 × 14 inches), you'll end up with a wide white border along two sides of your print. If including all the image isn't important, you can mark this box to tell Elements to crop the picture to fit within the print proportions you've chosen, deleting some image area.
   - *Border*. You can add a border of a size you select to your print.

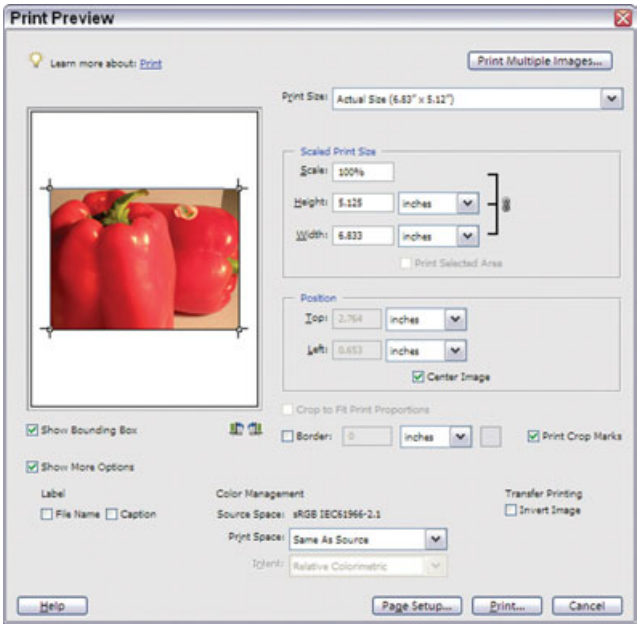


Figure 9.8 *The Photoshop Elements Print Preview dialog box looks like this.*

- *Print Crop Marks*. This option adds vertical and horizontal lines that show the actual edges of the image, and can be used to trim a picture that doesn't fill up a sheet.
- *Show Bounding Box*. This option draws a box around your image with corner handles you can drag to interactively enlarge or reduce the relative size of the image on the sheet of paper.
- *Show More Options*. Marking this box makes the Label, Color Management, and Transfer Printing options available.
- *Label*. You can choose to print the name of the image file, or a caption you add to the file, or both, on the sheet.
- *Color Management*. This option lets you choose to override the color space the image was created in, and print using any of a zillion alternative color spaces shown in the drop-down list. These include professional style color management systems for various printing press systems, color spaces that compensate for dot gain (the tendency of printer dots to enlarge on the press), and dozens of other options. Most Elements users never need to change the Print Space option from the default Same as Source value.
- *Transfer Printing*. This option is useful for applying the settings you'd need to print on t-shirt-type transfer material. You can invert the image (print its negative image) if you need to for a particular transfer system.
- *Print*. If you're happy with the settings, you can click the Print button to move to the next step, or, click Page Setup for additional options.

2. Click the Page Setup button to access options like those shown in Figure 9.9. You can set paper size (Letter, Legal, etc.), paper source (usually the paper tray you want to use), orientation (portrait or landscape), and set margins. There is also a Printer button for choosing your printer and its options. Click OK to return to the initial dialog box.

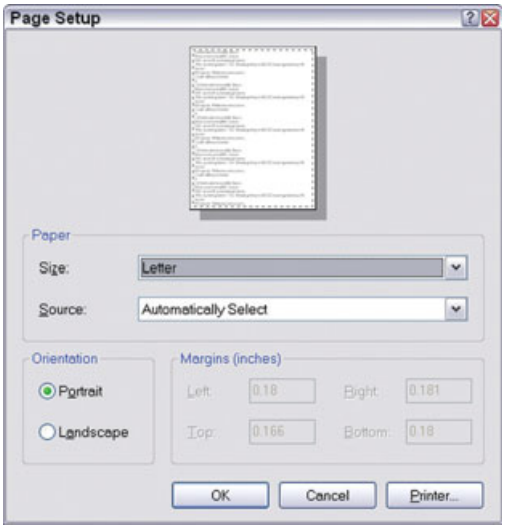


Figure 9.9 *The Page Setup dialog box has additional options.*

3. When you click the Print button, the dialog box shown in Figure 9.10 pops up. It has options for choosing a printer, print range (all pages, a range of pages, or selected pages), and number of copies. Click the Properties button for additional options related to your printer.

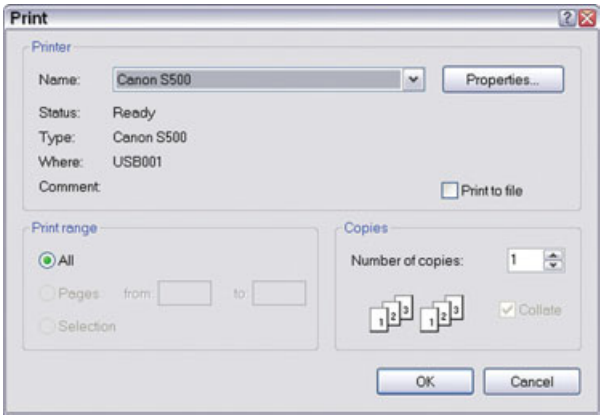


Figure 9.10 *The standard Windows XP Print dialog box includes a few more options.*

4. For my Canon printer, the general properties are fairly simple, and can be found in many other printers of this type. In this case, as shown in Figure 9.11, I can choose from among:
   - Paper type, including plain paper, various types of photo paper, photo film, transparencies, and other specialized stocks.
   - Paper source, including the autofeed paper tray and individual sheet feeder. Your printer may have additional paper trays to choose from.
   - Image quality, from among High (slow), Standard, and Draft (fast) choices.
   - Automatic or manual color adjustment, letting you use the printer's built-in color tools or settings that you manipulate yourself, like those shown in Figure 9.12.
   - Whether you want grayscale printing of a color image.
   - This particular Canon printer also has a Print Advisor wizard that leads you through the various options for printing.

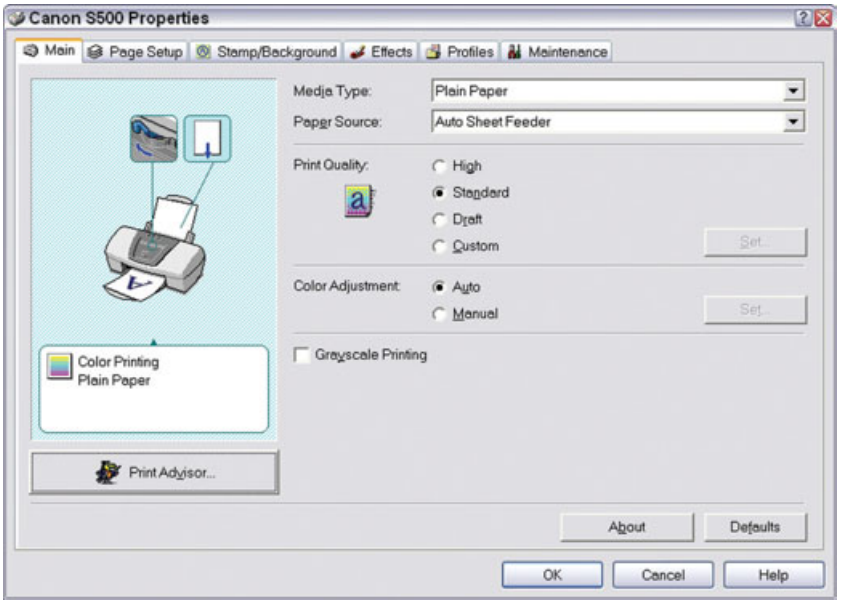


Figure 9.11 *My printer's default printer options can be selected from this dialog box.*

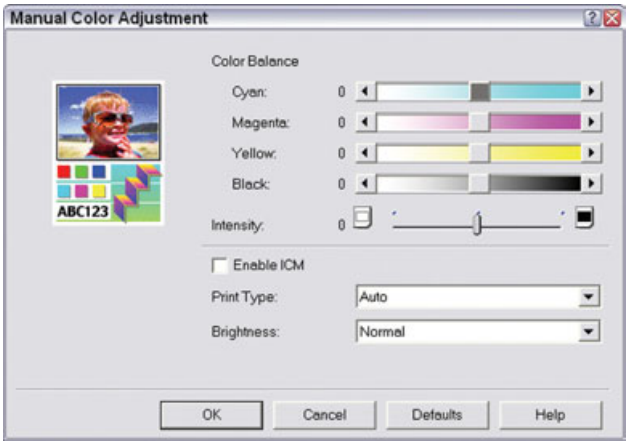


Figure 9.12 *Many printers have automatic and manual color adjustment, a tool of last resort or a way of bypassing Photoshop if you're in a hurry.*

5. Click the Page Setup tab (or your printer's equivalent) and choose from among options like those shown in Figure 9.13.
   - *Page Size*. Which is different from Paper Size. Some printers let you print pages that are larger than the paper size by automatically scaling the image down to fit the paper size you choose.
   - *Paper Size*. Choose any paper size supported by your printer.
   - *Printing Type*. Choices may include normal size printing, printing a page scaled to fit your particular page, poster printing (an image will be divided and printed in segments on several sheets which can be butted together to form a larger, poster image), and banner printing (which divides an image to create a long, banner-type print made up of several sheets).
   - *Orientation*. Either tall (portrait) or wide (landscape).
   - *Number of copies*. Specify how many prints you want here.

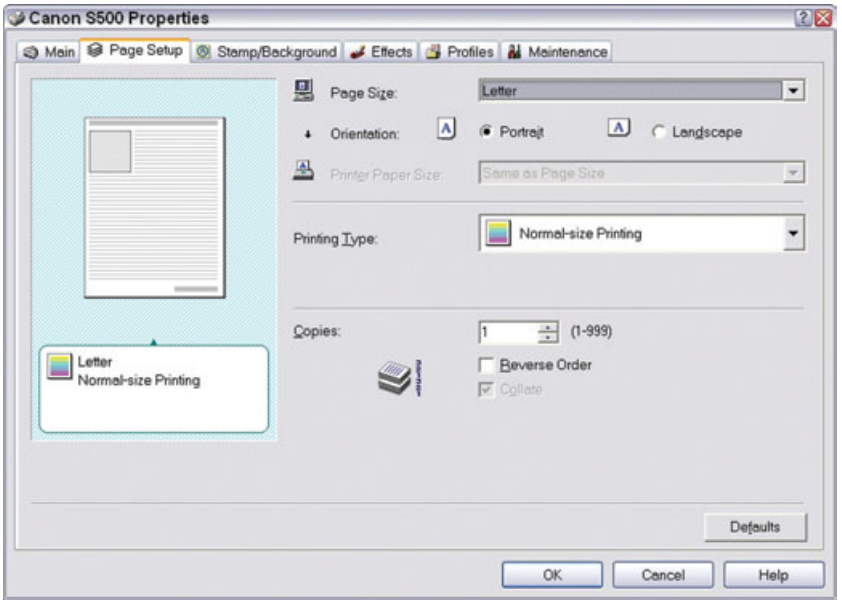


Figure 9.13 *Set the orientation, paper size, and other page parameters in a dialog box like this one.*

6. Click the tab for your printer's stamp/background or overprinting tab (or the equivalent). This option, shown in Figure 9.14, lets you create proof prints by putting watermarks or other messages (such as DRAFT or FOR APPROVAL) on top of the image, as well as a background image of your choice. Portrait and wedding photographers like this feature because it lets them mark their proof prints in such a way that a client can't easily take their proofs to another photographer or their local photo kiosk and make their own copies.

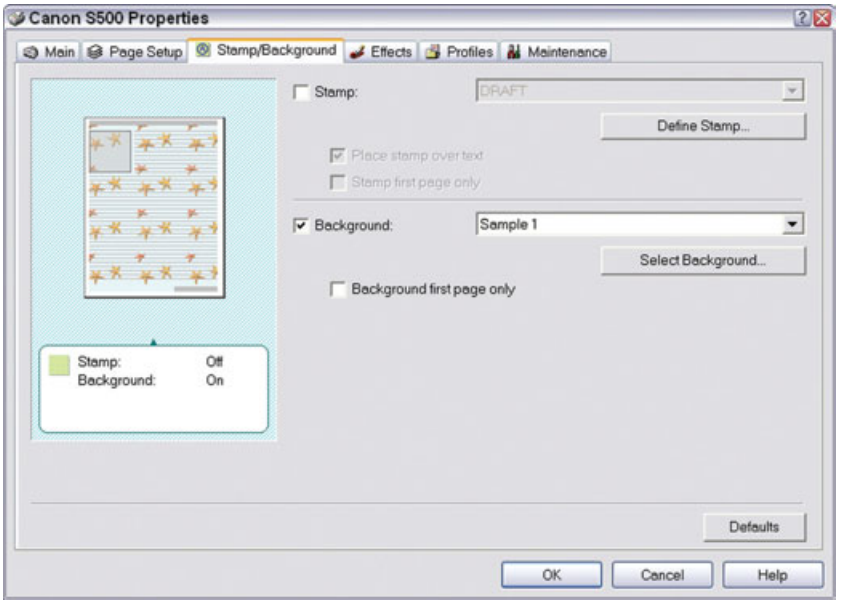


Figure 9.14 *Some printers let you overlay an image with a watermark of some sort.*

7. If your printer has an Effects tab, or something similar, you can use this dialog box to apply some Elements-like effects at the last minute, such as image smoothing, monochrome toning, and so forth. This option, shown in Figure 9.15, can be handy if you're in a hurry and don't have time to apply these effects in Photoshop Elements.
8. Profiles are an option provided by some printers to let you set up categories of print jobs that can be selected with a few clicks. Parameters include the type of paper, paper source, quality level, orientation, and most of the other choices offered on the previous pages. With Profiles, shown in Figure 9.16, you can reuse a set of parameters with later jobs of the same type.

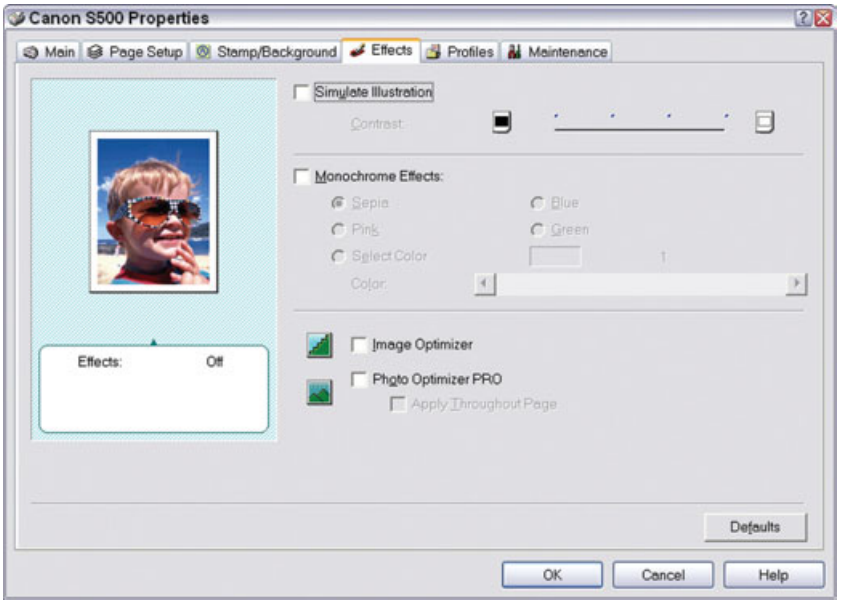


Figure 9.15 *Some Elements-like effects may be available with your printer driver.*

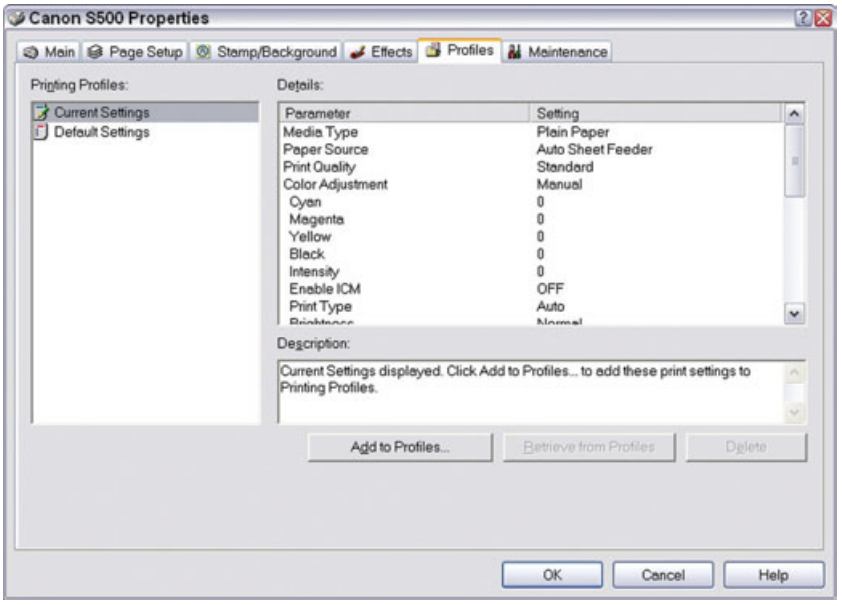


Figure 9.16 *Profiles let you set printing parameters for reuse later.*

9. Click the Maintenance tab, shown in Figure 9.17, and found in virtually every inkjet printer's driver, to perform important tasks like nozzle cleaning and print head alignment. Nozzles should be cleaned when your printer has sat idle for a few days or any time enough ink has dried in the nozzles to partially or completely block some of the head's orifices. You'll want to realign your print heads when you change ink cartridges. Realignment doesn't actually change the alignment of the print heads themselves; it informs your printer's driver software of their precise position so the actual location can be taken into account when printing. The printer generates a test sheet with horizontal and vertical lines arranged in a pattern. You choose the pattern that shows the lines aligned properly.

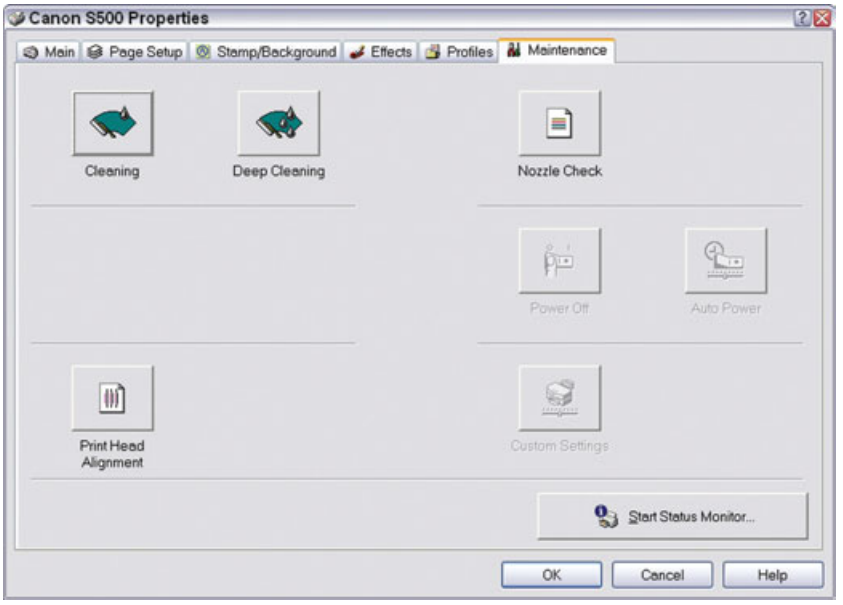


Figure 9.17 *Printer maintenance tasks include nozzle cleaning and print head alignment.*

Printing Multiple Photos with Photoshop Elements

You can also print multiple photos from the Photoshop Elements Organizer and the Print Photos dialog box, shown in Figure 9.18. You can use this tool to print several pictures, one to a page, or to print picture packages that include, say, one 5 × 7-inch print, two 2.5 × 3.5-inch photos, and four wallet-size pictures on a single 8.5 × 11-inch sheet of photo paper.

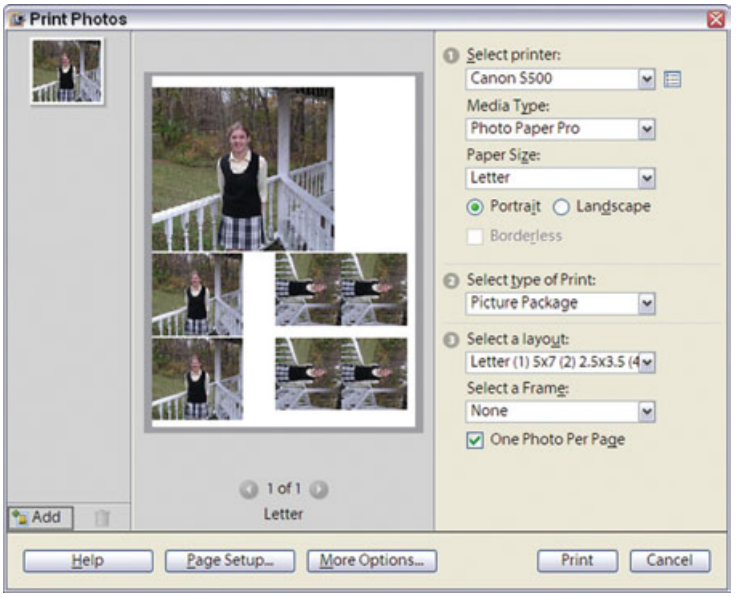


Figure 9.18 *Print multiple copies to create your own picture package.*

Using this facility is literally as easy as 1-2-3, and the steps in the dialog box are numbered in exactly that way. The steps are as follows:

1. Choose your printer from the drop-down list, select the paper size and paper type, and choose whether you want the photo printed in portrait or landscape orientation. You can select borderless prints, too.
2. Choose the kind of print you want, whether it's a picture package (several versions of one picture), a contact sheet (small images of multiple photos on one sheet of paper), or picture labels.
3. Select a layout, which might be the sizes of the prints in a picture package, or the number of rows and columns of images in a contact sheet, or the arrangement of pictures on a sheet of labels. Then choose other options, such as frame, whether you want a date or caption included on your print, or page numbers.
4. To add another photo to your multiple picture selection, click the Add button.

That's all there is to it.

Tips for Getting the Best Digital Prints

If you make prints from your digital images yourself, you'll want to keep these tips in mind to get the best quality and best economy.

- Calibrate your monitor, printer, and scanner using the tools provided with your hardware. Your scanner also may have calibration procedures to help match your scanner's output to your printer. This will help ensure that what you see (on your monitor) is what you get (in your prints). If you're an advanced worker, learn to use the color-matching software provided with your particular printer. Every device comes with different software, so we can't cover them here, but most have wizards and other tools to let you calibrate or characterize your equipment quickly. You can use the Adobe Gamma software for Windows or the Apple calibration utility under Mac OS X to create a monitor profile for your display.
- As mentioned earlier, if image quality is important to you, get the best glossy photographic paper for printing out your images. Experiment with several different stocks to see which you like best. You'll probably find that the paper offered by your printer manufacturer will be fine-tuned for your particular printer, but you needn't limit yourself to those products.
- Don't ruin one of those expensive sheets to a paper jam. If you're making prints one at a time, load your printer with one sheet of photo paper each time. Load multiple sheets only if you want to print many pages unattended, and even then make sure that only photo paper is loaded.
- Remember to clean your inkjet's print heads periodically and keep the printer's rollers and paper path clean. You'll avoid blurry or spotted prints and unwanted artifacts like visible lines.
- Don't touch your prints after they've emerged from the printer. Give them a chance to dry before you handle them. If you can't spread them out individually and must place them in stacks, put a sheet of plain paper between your prints so that any ink won't transfer to the print above.
- Experiment with special paper stocks that let you get even more use from your digital prints. You'll find paper designed especially for making t-shirt transfers, fabric printing, making greeting cards, or creating overhead transparencies.
- Don't enlarge digital camera images more than the resolution of your camera allows. Use these guidelines as a rule of thumb. The sensor dimensions in pixels are approximate, as different digital cameras offer different-sized sensors in the same megapixel range:

Camera Resolution	*Recommended Maximum Print Size*
640 × 480 (.3 Mpixels)	4 × 5-inches
1024 × 768 pixels (.75 Mpixels)	5 × 7-inches
1280 × 960 pixels (1.2 Mpixels)	8 × 10-inches
1600 × 1280 pixels (2 Mpixels)	11 × 14-inches
2400 × 1600 (3.3 Mpixels)	16 × 20-inches
3600 × 2400 pixels (6 Mpixels)	20 × 30-inches

Printers and Digital Cameras

In recent months, printers and digital cameras began working in tandem even more closely, with features found in both types of components that, sometimes, eliminate the need for Elements or even a computer altogether. Yes, it's now become easier to print your digital camera images directly, especially if your images don't require the manipulations Elements can provide.

For example, many digital cameras support the DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) so that the camera owner can select images for printing right in the camera. The DPOF file is written to the camera's removable media and is read and executed by photofinishers and other printing services as well as applications that are compatible with DPOF. You can use this format just as if you were filling out a film order envelope at your retailer's photofinishing counter. You can choose photos, quantities, specify index prints of thumbnail information, rotate your images, and include along with your print order a title and description for each print as well as your name, address, and other personal information.

PictBridge is another format that allows transferring pictures from a digital camera directly to a printer using a USB cable. However, unlike some proprietary camera-to-printer technologies available from a few manufacturers, PictBridge is an industry standard, so you can interconnect equipment from different vendors. Your Pentax digital camera can link with your Canon color printer, for example, because both support PictBridge.

PictBridge devices let you print multiple copies, specify print size, view images to be printed on an LCD screen, and choose options from a series of menus. Depending on the equipment models, you may be able to add date and time stamps. It's all very cool.

You may not even need to connect your digital camera to the printer. Some printers include built-in memory card readers like the one shown in Figure 9.19. Just slip the memory card out of your camera, plug it into the printer's card slot, and then view the pictures on the printer's LCD screen and choose your prints using the printer's function keys, similar to those shown in Figure 9.20.

Figure 9.19 *Some printers have multiple slots that accept digital camera memory cards.*

Figure 9.20 *View and choose your prints from the printer's control panel.*

Next Up

The next step is up to you. Neither photography, in its last 160+ years, nor Photoshop and Photoshop Elements, in their briefer years of life, has been fully explored by their millions of devotees. I hope this book has been an idea starter that showed you some of the exciting things you can do with the power of Photoshop Elements and photography combined.

Appendix A

Illustrated Glossary

You, too, can be image-editing literate! Here is a list of the most common words you're likely to encounter when working with photographs with your digital or film camera or within Photoshop Elements. It includes most of the jargon included in this book, and some that is not within these pages, but which you'll frequently come across as you work. While every Photoshop Elements feature is not listed here, some of the most important new features are included to help you get your bearings.

16-bit images So-called "48-bit" image files that contain 16 bits of information (65,535 different tones) per channel, rather than the 8 bits per channel found in ordinary, 24-bit 16.8 million color images.

additive primary colors The red, green, and blue hues which are used alone or in combinations to create all other colors you capture with a digital camera, view on a computer monitor, or work with in an image editing program like Photoshop. See also *CMYK* and *subtractive primary colors*.

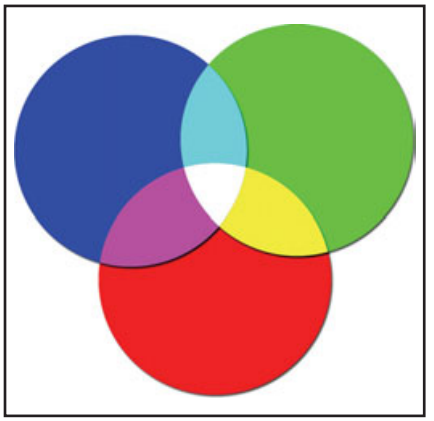


Figure A.1 *The additive primary colors, red, green, and blue combine to make other colors, plus white.*

airbrush Originally developed as an artist's tool that sprays a fine mist of paint, the Photoshop Elements version of an airbrush is used both for illustration and retouching.

ambient lighting Diffuse nondirectional lighting that doesn't appear to come from a specific source but, rather, bounces off walls, ceilings, and other objects in the scene when a picture is taken.

angle of view The area of a scene that a lens can capture, determined by the focal length of the lens. Lenses with a shorter focal length have a wider angle of view than lenses with a longer focal length.

anti-alias A process in image editing that smoothes the rough edges in images (called jaggies or staircasing) by creating partially transparent pixels along the boundaries that are merged into a smoother line by our eyes.

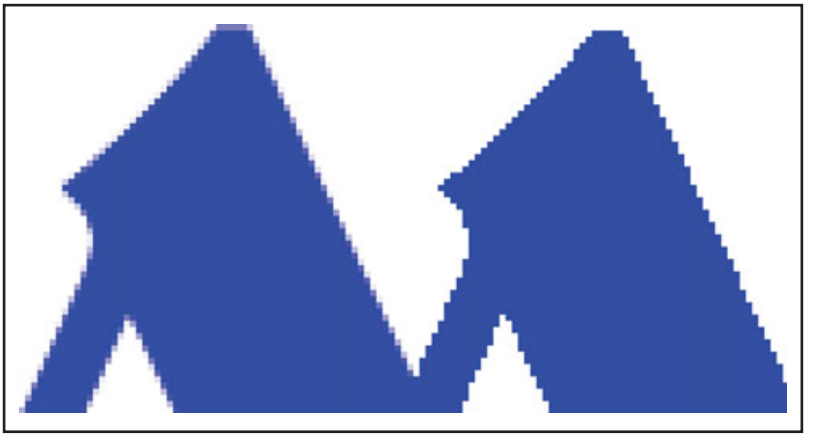


Figure A.2 *A diagonal line that has been anti-aliased (left) and a "jaggy" line that displays the staircasing effect (right).*

aperture-preferred A camera setting that allows you to specify the lens opening or f-stop that you want to use, with the camera selecting the required shutter speed automatically, based on its light-meter reading. See also *shutter-preferred*.

artifact A type of noise in an image, or an unintentional image component produced in error by a digital camera or scanner during processing.

aspect ratio The proportions of an image as printed, displayed on a monitor, or captured by a digital camera. An 8 × 10-inch or 16 × 20-inch photo each have a 4:5 aspect ratio. Your monitor set to 800 × 600, 1024 × 768, or 1600 × 1200 pixels has a 4:3 aspect ratio. When you change the aspect ratio of an image, you must crop out part of the image area or create some blank space at the top or sides.

auto-focus A camera setting that allows the camera to choose the correct focus distance for you, usually based on the contrast of an image (the image will be at maximum contrast when in sharp focus) or a mechanism such as an infrared sensor that measures the actual distance to the subject.

averaging meter A light measuring device that calculates exposure based on the overall brightness of the entire image area. Averaging tends to produce the best exposure when a scene is evenly lit or contains equal amounts of bright and dark areas that contain detail.

background In photography, the background is the area behind your main subject of interest. In Photoshop Elements, the background is the bottom or base layer of an image.

back-lighting A lighting effect produced when the main light source is located behind the subject. Back-lighting can be used to create a silhouette effect. See also *front-lighting, fill lighting,* and *ambient lighting.*

Figure A.3 *Back-lighting can create interest in a photo by emphasizing the shape of a subject.*

balance An image that has equal elements on all sides.

bilevel image In Photoshop parlance, an image that stores only black-and-white information, with no gray tones.

bin A repository for assets and tools in Photoshop Elements, arranged so they can be accessed quickly. Various Elements *bins* include the Organize Bin, Palette Bin, and Photo Bin.

bit A binary digit—either a 1 or a 0—used to measure the color depth (number of different colors) in an image. For example, a grayscale 8-bit scan may contain up to 256 different tones (2^8), while a 24-bit scan can contain 16.8 million different colors (2^{24}).

bitmap In Adobe parlance, a bitmap is a bilevel black/white-only image. The term is also widely used to mean any image that represents each pixel as a number in a row and column format.

black The color formed by the absence of reflected or transmitted light.

black point The tonal level of an image where blacks begin to provide important image information, usually measured by using a histogram. When correcting an image with a digital camera that has an on-screen histogram, or within an image editor, you'll usually want to set the histogram's black point at the place where these tones exist.

blend To create a more realistic transition between image areas, as when retouching or compositing in image editing.

blowup An enlargement, usually a print, made from a negative, transparency, or digital file.

blur In photography, to soften an image or part of an image by throwing it out of focus or by allowing it to become soft due to subject or camera motion. In image editing, blurring is the softening of an area by reducing the contrast between pixels that form the edges.

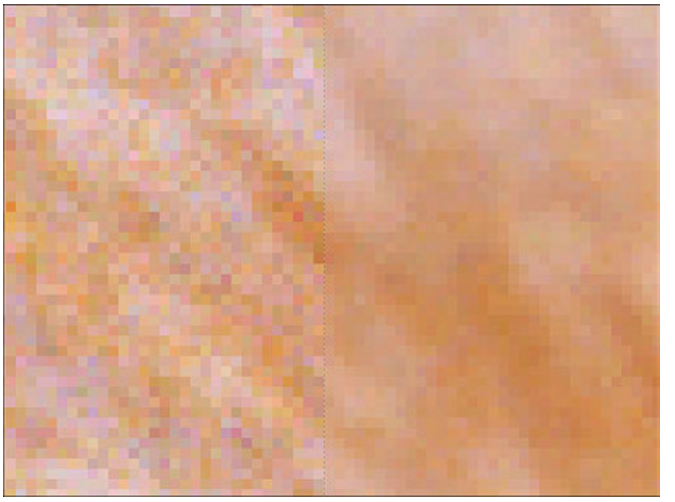


Figure A.4 *Blurring reduces the contrast between pixels.*

bounce lighting Light bounced off a reflector, including ceiling and walls, to provide a soft, natural-looking light.

bracketing Taking a series of photographs of the same subject at different settings to help ensure that one setting will be the correct one. Many digital cameras will automatically snap off a series of bracketed exposures for you. Other settings, such as color balance, can also be "bracketed" with some models.

brightness The amount of light and dark shades in an image, usually represented as a percentage from 0 percent (black) to 100 percent (white).

burn A darkroom technique, mimicked in image editing, which involves exposing part of a print for a longer period, making it darker than it would be with a straight exposure. Photoshop Elements has a Burn tool that performs this darkening function. *Burn* is also slang for recording a CD or DVD.

calibration A process used to correct for the differences in the output of a printer or monitor when compared to the original image. Once you've calibrated your scanner, monitor, and/or your image editor, the images you see on the screen more closely represent what you'll get from your printer, even though calibration is never perfect.

Camera RAW A plug-in included with Photoshop Elements 3.0 that can manipulate the unprocessed images captured by digital cameras.

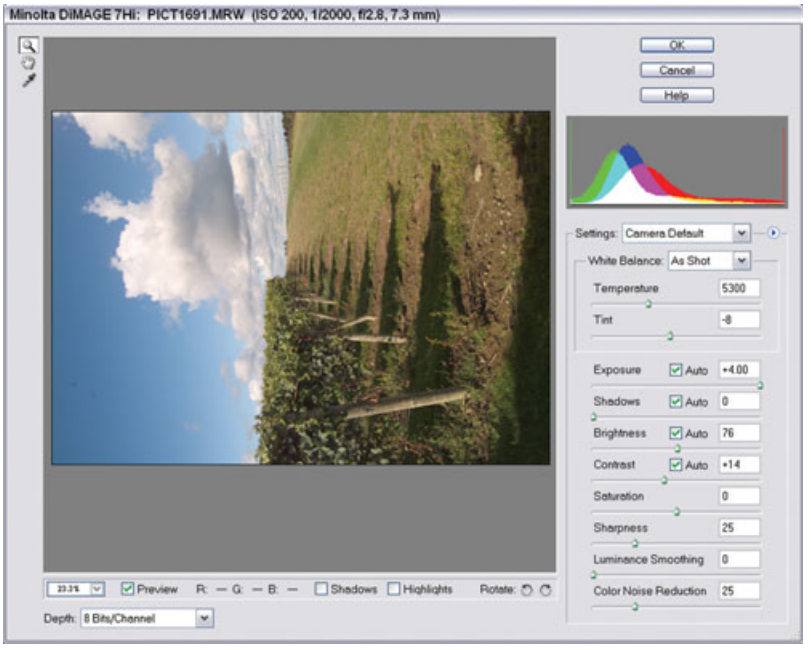


Figure A.5 *Use the Camera RAW plug-in to correct the color, sharpness, or other attributes of your original digital images.*

camera shake Movement of the camera, aggravated by slower shutter speeds, which produces a blurred image.

cast An undesirable tinge of color in an image.

Catalog A collection of images and thumbnails that can be browsed with Photoshop Elements 3.0's Organizer feature.

CCD Charge-Coupled Device. A type of solid-state sensor that captures the image, used in scanners and digital cameras. See also *CMOS*.

center-weighted meter A light measuring device that emphasizes the area in the middle of the frame when calculating the correct exposure for an image.

chroma Color or hue.

chromatic aberration An image defect, often seen as green or purple fringing around the edges of an object, caused by a lens failing to focus all colors of a light source at the same point.

chromatic color A color with at least one hue and a visible level of color saturation.

chrome An informal photographic term used as a generic for any kind of color transparency, including Kodachrome, Ektachrome, or Fujichrome.

CIE (Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage) An international organization of scientists who work with matters relating to color and lighting. The organization is also called the International Commission on Illumination.

close-up lens A lens add-on that allows you to take pictures at a distance that is less than the closest-focusing distance of the prime lens alone.

CMY(K) color model A way of defining all possible colors in percentages of cyan, magenta, yellow, and frequently, black. Black is added to improve rendition of shadow detail. CMYK is commonly used for printing (both on press and with your inkjet or laser color printer). Photoshop can work with images using the CMYK model, but converts any images in that mode back to RGB for display on your computer monitor. Photoshop Elements does not support CMYK files.

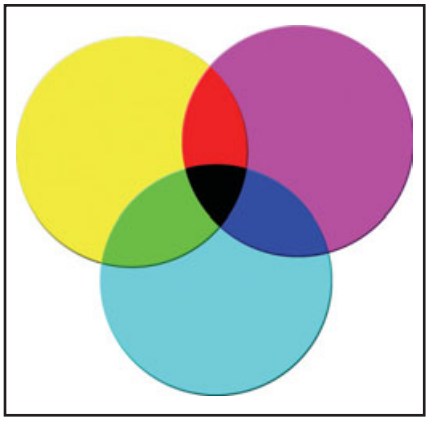


Figure A.6 *Cyan, magenta, and yellow colors combine to form the other colors, plus black.*

color correction Changing the relative amounts of color in an image to produce a desired effect, typically a more accurate representation of those colors. Color correction can fix faulty color balance in the original image or compensate for the deficiencies of the inks used to reproduce the image.

Color Replacement A new tool that simplifies changing all of a selected color to another hue.

comp A preview that combines type, graphics, and photographic material in a layout.

composite In photography, an image composed of two or more parts of an image, taken either from a single photo or multiple photos. Usually composites are created so that the elements blend smoothly together.

composition The (hopefully) pleasing or artistic arrangement of the main subject, other objects in a scene, and/or the foreground and background.

compression Reducing the size of a file by encoding using fewer bits of information to represent the original. Some compression schemes, such as JPEG, operate by discarding some image information, while others, such as TIF, preserve all the detail in the original, discarding only redundant data. See also *GIF*, *JPEG*, and *TIF*.

CMOS Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor. A type of solid-state sensor that captures the image, used in scanners and digital cameras. See also *CCD*.

continuous tone Images that contain tones from the darkest to the lightest, with a theoretically infinite range of variations in between.

contrast The range of difference in the light to dark areas of a photo.

Figure A.7 *High contrast image (left); low contrast image (right).*

contrasty Having higher than optimal contrast.

Cookie Cutter tool A Photoshop Elements tool that allows cutting shapes out of images and resizing, rotating, or otherwise manipulating the affected shapes.

crop To trim an image or page by adjusting its boundaries.

dedicated flash An electronic flash unit designed to work with the automatic exposure features of a specific camera.

density The ability of an object to stop or absorb light. The less light reflected or transmitted by an object, the higher its density.

densitometer An electronic device or software tool used to measure the amount of light reflected by or transmitted through a piece of artwork, used to determine accurate exposure when making copies or color separations.

depth-of-field A distance range in a photograph in which all included portions of an image are at least acceptably sharp.

Figure A.8 *Depth-of-field determines how much of an image, such as the dog in this photo, is in sharp focus, and what parts, such as the background, are out of focus.*

depth-of-focus The range that the image capturing surface (such as a sensor or film) could be moved while maintaining acceptable focus. See also *depth-of-field*.

desaturate To reduce the purity or vividness of a color, making a color appear to be washed out or diluted.

diaphragm An adjustable component, similar to the iris in the human eye, which can open and close to provide specific sized lens openings, or f-stops and control the amount of light that reaches the film or sensor.

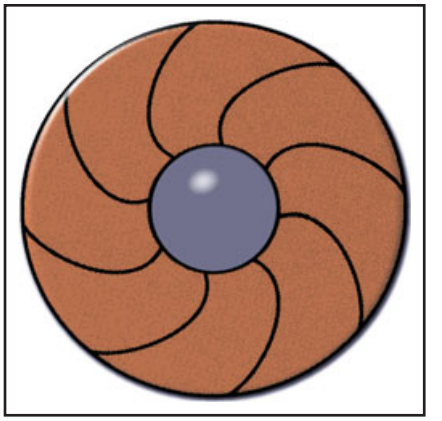


Figure A.9 *The diaphragm admits light through the lens to the film or sensor.*

diffuse lighting Soft, low-contrast lighting.

diffusing Softening detail in an image.

diffusion The random distribution of gray tones in an area of an image, producing a fuzzy effect.

dither A method of distributing pixels to extend the number of colors or tones that can be represented. For example, two pixels of different colors can be arranged in such a way that the eye visually merges them into a third color.

docking The ability to lock toolbars, palettes, and other features of the interface at a fixed location, usually one edge of the application window.

dodging A darkroom term for blocking part of an image as it is exposed, lightening its tones. Image editors can mimic this effect by lightening portions of an image using a brush-like tool.

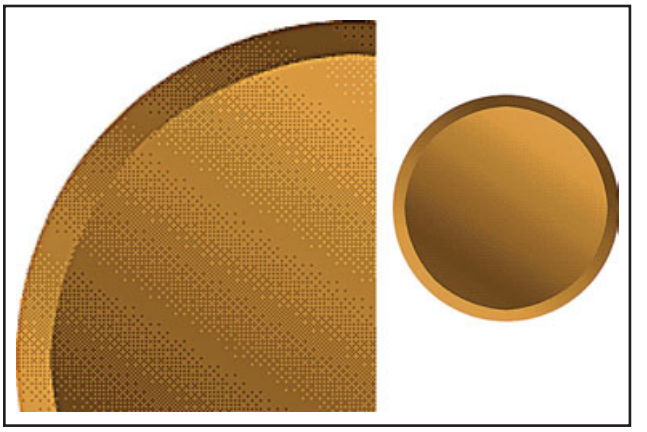


Figure A.10 *A dithered image.*

dot A unit used to represent a portion of an image, often groups of pixels collected to produce larger printer dots of varying sizes to represent gray or a specific color.

dot gain The tendency of a printing dot to grow from the original size to its final printed size on paper. This effect is most pronounced on offset presses using poor quality papers, which allow ink to absorb and spread, reducing the quality of the printed output, particularly in the case of photos that use halftone dots.

dots per inch (dpi) The resolution of a printed image, expressed in the number of printer dots in an inch. You'll often see dpi used to refer to monitor screen resolution, or the resolution of scanners. However, neither of these uses dots. The correct term for a monitor is pixels per inch (ppi), whereas a scanner captures a particular number of samples per inch (spi).

dummy A rough approximation of a publication, used to evaluate the layout.

dye sublimation A printing technique in which inks or dyes are heated and transferred to a polyester substrate to form an image. Because the amount of color applied can be varied by the degree of heat (and up to 256 different hues for each color), dye sublimation devices can print as many as 16.8 million different colors.

emulsion The light-sensitive coating on a piece of film, paper, or printing plate. When making prints or copies, it's important to know which side is the emulsion side so the image can be exposed in the correct orientation (not reversed). Advanced image editors, such as Photoshop, include "emulsion side up" and "emulsion side down" options in its Print Preview feature.

EXIF Exchangeable Image File Format. Developed to standardize the exchange of image data between hardware devices and software. A variation on JPEG, EXIF is used by most digital cameras and includes information such as the date and time a photo was taken, the camera settings, resolution, amount of compression, and other data.

existing light In photography, the illumination that is already present in a scene. Existing light can include daylight or the artificial lighting currently being used, but not electronic flash or additional lamps set up by the photographer.

export To transfer text or images from a document to another format.

exposure The amount of light allowed to reach the film or sensor, determined by the intensity of the light, the amount admitted by the iris of the lens, and the length of time determined by the shutter speed.

exposure program An automatic setting in a digital camera that provides the optimum combination of shutter speed and f-stop at a given level of illumination. For example a "sports" exposure program would use a faster, action-stopping shutter speed and larger lens opening instead of the smaller, depth-of-field-enhancing lens opening and slower shutter speed that might be favored by a "close-up" program at exactly the same light level.

eyedropper A Photoshop Elements tool used to sample color from one part of an image, so it can be used to paint, draw, or fill elsewhere in the image. Within some features, the eyedropper can be used to define the actual black points and white points in an image.

feather To fade out the borders of an image element, so it will blend in more smoothly with another layer.

Figure A.11 *A feathered edge, so to speak.*

fill lighting In photography, lighting used to illuminate shadows.

filter In photography, a device that fits over the lens, changing the light in some way. In image editing, a feature that changes the pixels in an image to produce blurring, sharpening, and other special effects. Photoshop Elements includes several new filter effects, including Lens Blur and Photo Filters.

Filter Gallery Photoshop Elements' facility for previewing and applying multiple filter effects to an image from a single dialog box.

FireWire (IEEE-1394) A fast serial interface used by scanners, digital cameras, printers, and other devices.

flat An image with low contrast.

flatbed scanner A type of scanner that reads one line of an image at a time, recording it as a series of samples, or pixels.

focal length The distance between the film and the optical center of the lens when the lens is focused on infinity, usually measured in millimeters.

focus To adjust the lens to produce a sharp image.

focus range The minimum and maximum distances within which a camera is able to produce a sharp image, such as two inches to infinity.

focus tracking The ability of the automatic focus feature of a camera to change focus as the distance between the subject and the camera changes.

four-color printing Another term for process color, in which cyan, magenta, yellow, and black inks are used to reproduce all the colors in the original image.

framing In photography, composing your image in the viewfinder. In composition, using elements of an image to form a sort of picture frame around an important subject.

frequency The number of lines per inch in a halftone screen.

front-lighting Illumination that comes from the direction of the camera. See also *backlighting* and *sidelighting*.

f-stop The relative size of the lens aperture, which helps determine both exposure and depth-of-field. The larger the f-stop number, the smaller the f-stop itself. It helps to think of f-stops as denominators of fractions, so that f2 is larger than f4, which is larger than f8, just as 1/2, 1/4, and 1/8 represent ever-smaller fractions. In photography, a given f-stop number is multiplied by 1.4 to arrive at the next number that admits exactly half as much light. So, f1.4 is twice as large as f2.0 (1.4×1.4), which is twice as large as f2.8 (2×1.4), which is twice as large as f4 (2.8×1.4). The f-stops which follow are f5.6, f8, f11, f16, f22, f32, and so on.

full-color image An image that uses 24-bit color, 16.8 million possible hues. Images are sometimes captured in a scanner with more colors, but the colors are reduced to the best 16.8 million shades for manipulation in image editing.

gamma A numerical way of representing the contrast of an image. Devices such as monitors typically don't reproduce the tones in an image in straight-line fashion (all colors represented in exactly the same way as they appear in the original). Instead, some tones may be favored over others, and gamma provides a method of tonal correction that takes the human eye's perception of neighboring values into account. Gamma values range from 1.0 to about 2.5. The Macintosh has traditionally used a gamma of 1.8, which is relatively flat compared to television. Windows PCs use a 2.2 gamma value, which has more contrast and is more saturated.

gamma correction A method for changing the brightness, contrast, or color balance of an image by assigning new values to the gray or color tones of an image to more closely represent the original shades. Gamma correction can be either linear or nonlinear. Linear correction applies the same amount of change to all the tones. Nonlinear correction varies the changes tone by tone, or in highlight, midtone, and shadow areas separately to produce a more accurate or improved appearance.

gamut The range of viewable and printable colors for a particular color model, such as RGB (used for monitors) or CMYK (used for printing).

Gaussian blur A method of diffusing an image using a bell-shaped curve to calculate the pixels which will be blurred, rather than blurring all pixels, producing a more random, less "processed" look.

GIF An image file format limited to 256 different colors that compresses the information by combining similar colors and discarding the rest. Condensing a 16.8-million-color photographic image to only 256 different hues often produces a poor quality image, but GIF is useful for images that don't have a great many colors, such as charts or graphs. The GIF format also includes transparency options and can include multiple images to produce animations that may be viewed on a web page or other application. See also *JPEG* and *TIF*.

grain The metallic silver in film which forms the photographic image. The term is often applied to the seemingly random noise in an image (both conventional and digital) that provides an overall texture. Elements includes Grain and Film Grain filters.

gray card A piece of cardboard or other material with a standardized 18 percent reflectance. Gray cards can be used as a reference for determining correct exposure.

grayscale image An image represented using 256 shades of gray. Scanners often capture grayscale images with 1024 or more tones, but reduce them to 256 grays for manipulation by Photoshop.

halftone A method used to reproduce continuous-tone images, representing the image as a series of dots.

Healing Brush The Healing Brush and Spot Healing Brush tools are new Photoshop Elements 3.0 tools that copy pixels from one portion of an image (or images) to another, adjusting the brightness and color of the copied pixels to take into account the values of the pixels they are being copied over.

high contrast A wide range of density in a print, negative, or other image.

highlights The brightest parts of an image containing detail.

Histogram palette A new Photoshop palette that allows making changes in tonal values using controls that adjust the white, middle gray, and black points of an image. Unlike the histogram included with Photoshop's Levels command, this palette is available for use even when you're using other tools.

History Log A new feature that lets you track the changes you've made to your work over time.

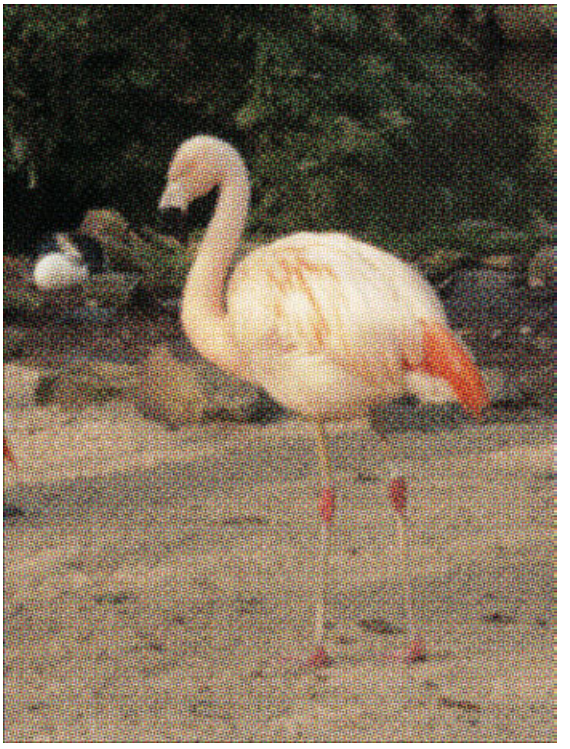


Figure A.12 *The dots of a halftone simulate continuous tones in a printed image.*

hue The color of light that is reflected from an opaque object or transmitted through a transparent one.

incident light Light falling on a surface, as opposed to light reflected from a surface.

indexed color image An image with 256 different colors, as opposed to a grayscale image, which has 256 different shades of the tones between black and white.

infinity A distance so great that any object at that distance will be reproduced sharply if the lens is focused at the infinity position.

interchangeable lens Lens designed to be readily attached to and detached from a camera, a feature found in more sophisticated digital cameras.

International Standards Organization (ISO) A governing body that provides standards used to represent film speed, or the equivalent sensitivity of a digital camera's sensor.

interpolation A technique digital cameras, scanners, and image editors like Photoshop use to create new pixels required whenever you resize or change the resolution of an image, based on the values of surrounding pixels. Devices such as scanners and digital cameras can also use interpolation to create pixels in addition to those actually captured, thereby increasing the apparent resolution or color information in an image.

invert In image editing, to change an image into its negative; black becomes white, white becomes black, dark gray becomes light gray, and so forth. Colors are also changed to the complementary color; green becomes magenta, blue turns to yellow, and red is changed to cyan.

iris A set of thin overlapping metal leaves in a camera lens which pivot outwards to form a circular opening of variable size to control the amount of light that can pass through a lens. See also *diaphragm*.

jaggies Staircasing effect of lines that are not perfectly horizontal or vertical, caused by pixels that are too large to represent the line accurately. See also *anti-alias*.

Figure A.13 *A negative is an inverted image.*

JPEG (Joint Photographic Experts Group) A file format that supports 24-bit color and reduces file sizes by selectively discarding image data. Digital cameras generally use JPEG compression to pack more images onto memory cards. You can select how much compression is used (and therefore how much information is thrown away) by selecting from among the Standard, Fine, Super Fine, or other quality settings offered by your camera. See also *GIF* and *TIF*.

landscape The orientation of a page in which the longest dimension is horizontal, also called wide orientation.

latitude The range of camera exposures that produce acceptable images with a particular digital sensor or film.

layer A way of managing elements of an image in stackable overlays that can be manipulated separately, moved to a different stacking order, or made partially or fully transparent. Photoshop allows collecting layers into layer sets.

lens One or more elements of optical glass or similar material designed to collect and focus rays of light to form a sharp image on the film, paper, sensor, or a screen.

lens aperture The lens opening, or iris, that admits light to the film or sensor. The size of the lens aperture is usually measured in f-stops. See also *f-stop*, *diaphragm*, and *iris*.

lens flare A feature of conventional photography that is both bane and a creative outlet. It is an effect produced by the reflection of light internally among elements of an optical lens. Bright light sources within or just outside the field-of-view cause lens flare. Flare can be reduced by the use of coatings on the lens elements or with the use of lens hoods. Photographers sometimes use the effect as a creative technique, and Photoshop includes a filter that lets you add lens flare at your whim.

Figure A.14 *Lens flare.*

lens hood A device that shades the lens, protecting it from extraneous light outside the actual picture area which can reduce the contrast of the image, or allow lens flare.

lens shade A hood at the front of a lens that keeps stray light from striking the lens and causing image flare.

lens speed The largest lens opening (smallest f-number) at which a lens can be set. A fast lens transmits more light and has a larger opening than a slow lens. Determined by the maximum aperture of the lens in relation to its focal length; the "speed" of a lens is relative: a 400 mm lens with a maximum aperture of f/3.5 is considered extremely fast, while a 28mm f/3.5 lens is thought to be relatively slow.

lighten A Photoshop Elements function that is the equivalent to the photographic darkroom technique of dodging. Tones in a given area of an image are gradually changed to lighter values.

lighting ratio The proportional relationship between the amount of light falling on the subject from the main light and other lights, expressed in a ratio, such as 3:1.

line art Usually, images that consist only of white pixels and one color, represented in Elements as a bitmap.

line screen The resolution or frequency of a halftone screen, expressed in lines per inch.

lithography Another name for offset printing.

lossless compression An image-compression scheme, such as TIFF, that preserves all image detail. When the image is decompressed, it is identical to the original version.

lossy compression An image-compression scheme, such as JPEG, that creates smaller files by discarding image information, which can affect image quality.

luminance The brightness or intensity of an image, determined by the amount of gray in a hue.

LZW compression A method of compacting TIFF files in Photoshop and other applications using the Lempel-Ziv-Welch compression algorithm, an optional compression scheme offered by some digital cameras.

macro lens A lens that provides continuous focusing from infinity to extreme close-ups, often to a reproduction ratio of 1:2 (half life-size) or 1:1 (life-size).

Figure A.15 *When carried to the extreme, lossy compression methods can have a serious impact on image quality.*

macro photography The process of taking photographs of small objects at magnifications of 1X or more.

magnification ratio A relationship that represents the amount of enlargement provided by the macro setting of the zoom lens, macro lens, or with other close-up devices.

Match Color A new feature that allows synchronizing color palettes between images to provide consistent hues.

maximum aperture The largest lens opening or f-stop available with a particular lens, or with a zoom lens at a particular magnification.

mechanical Camera-ready copy with text and art already in position for photographing, as a step in making a printing plate.

midtones Parts of an image with tones of an intermediate value, usually in the 25 to 75 percent range. Many image-editing features allow you to manipulate midtones independently from the highlights and shadows.

moiré An objectionable pattern caused by the interference of halftone screens, frequently generated by rescanning an image that has already been halftoned. An image editor can frequently minimize these effects by blurring the patterns.

monochrome Having a single color, plus white. Grayscale images are monochrome (shades of gray and white only).

negative A representation of an image in which the tones are reversed: blacks as white, and vice versa.

neutral color In image editing's RGB mode, a color in which red, green, and blue are present in equal amounts, producing a gray.

noise In an image, pixels with randomly distributed color values. Noise in digital photographs tends to be the product of low-light conditions, particularly when you have set your camera to a higher ISO rating than normal.

Figure A.16 *Boosting the sensitivity of your camera so you can freeze action may just fill your images with noise.*

normal lens A lens that makes the image in a photograph appear in a perspective that is like that of the original scene, typically with a field-of-view of roughly 45 degrees. A quick way to calculate the focal length of a normal lens is to measure the diagonal of the sensor or film frame used to capture the image, usually ranging from around 7mm to 45mm.

orthochromatic Sensitive primarily to blue and green light.

overexposure A condition in which too much light reaches the film or sensor, producing a dense negative or a very bright/light print, slide, or digital image.

panning Moving the camera so that the image of a moving object remains in the same relative position in the viewfinder as you take a picture. The eventual effect creates a strong sense of movement.

panorama A broad view, usually scenic. Some digital cameras also have a Panorama mode used with software to stitch the images together.

parallax compensation An adjustment made by the camera or photographer to account for the difference in views between the taking lens and the viewfinder.

perspective The rendition of apparent space in a photograph, such as how far the foreground and background appear to be separated from each other. Perspective is determined by the distance of the camera to the subject. Objects that are close appear large, while distant objects appear to be far away.

perspective control lens A special lens that allows correcting distortion resulting from high or low camera angle.

Photo Browser Photoshop Elements' facility for quickly searching and finding files using thumbnail images.

Photo CD A special type of CD-ROM developed by Eastman Kodak Company that can store high-quality photographic images in a special space-saving format, along with music and other data. Today, the lower resolution Picture CD is more common.

pixel The smallest element of an image that can be assigned a color. The term is a contraction of "picture element."

pixels per inch (ppi) The number of pixels that can be displayed per inch, usually used to refer to pixel resolution from a scanned image or on a monitor.

plug-in A software module such as a filter that can be accessed from within an image editor to provide special functions.

point Approximately 1/72 of an inch outside the Macintosh world, exactly 1/72 of an inch within it.

portrait The orientation of a page in which the longest dimension is vertical, also called tall orientation. In photography, a formal picture of an individual or, sometimes, a group.

positive The opposite of a negative, an image with the same tonal relationships as those in the original scenes—for example, a finished print or a slide.

prepress The stages of the reproduction process that precede printing, when halftones, color separations, and printing plates are created.

process color The four color pigments used in color printing: cyan, magenta, yellow, and black (CMYK).

Quick Fix The Photoshop Elements 3.0 mode that allows fast and direct repair of common problems, such as contrast, color, and sharpness.

RAW An image file format offered by many digital cameras that includes all the unprocessed information captured by the camera. RAW files are very large, and must be processed by a special program, such as Photoshop's Camera RAW plug-in, after being downloaded from the camera.

red-eye An effect from flash photography that appears to make a person's or animal's eyes glow red (or among animals, yellow or green). It's caused by light bouncing from the retina of the eye, and is most pronounced in dim illumination (when the irises are wide open) and when the electronic flash is close to the lens and therefore prone to reflect directly back. Image editors can fix red-eye through cloning other pixels over the offending red or orange ones.

red-eye reduction A way of reducing or eliminating the red-eye phenomenon. Some cameras offer a red-eye reduction mode that uses a preflash that causes the irises of the subjects' eyes to close down just prior to a second, stronger flash used to take the picture.

Red Eye tool A tool that automatically fixes most red-eye problems just by dragging over or clicking in the affected area.

Figure A.17 *Digital cameras usually have several features for avoiding the demon red-eye look.*

reflection copy Original artwork that is viewed by light reflected from its surface, rather than transmitted through it.

reflector Any device used to reflect light onto a subject to improve balance of exposure (contrast). Another way is to use fill in flash.

register To align images.

registration mark A mark that appears on a printed image, generally for color separations, to help in aligning the printing plates. Photoshop can add registration marks to your images when they are printed.

reproduction ratio Used in macrophotography to indicate the magnification of a subject.

resample To change the size or resolution of an image. Resampling down discards pixel information in an image; resampling up adds pixel information through interpolation.

resolution In image editing, the number of pixels per inch used to determine the size of the image when printed. That is, an 8 × 10 inch image that is saved with 300 pixels per inch resolution will print in an 8 × 10-inch size on a 300 dpi printer, or 4 × 5 inches on a 600 dpi printer. In digital photography, resolution is the number of pixels a camera or scanner can capture.

retouch To edit an image, most often to remove flaws or to create a new effect.

RGB color mode A color mode that represents the three colors—red, green, and blue—used by devices such as scanners or monitors to reproduce color. Photoshop works in RGB mode by default, and even displays CMYK images by converting them to RGB.

saturation The purity of color; the amount by which a pure color is diluted with white or gray.

Figure A.18 *Fully saturated (left) and desaturated (right).*

scale To change the size of a piece of an image or the entire image.

scanner A device that captures an image of a piece of artwork, slide, or negative and converts it to a digitized image or bitmap that the computer can handle.

Secure Data memory card Another flash memory card format that is gaining acceptance for use in digital cameras and other applications.

selection In image editing, an area of an image chosen for manipulation, usually surrounded by a moving series of dots called a selection border.

Selection Brush A painting tool in Photoshop Elements that allows painting selections or masks.

selective focus Choosing a lens opening that produces a shallow depth-of-field. Usually this is used to isolate a subject by causing most other elements in the scene to be blurred.

self-timer Mechanism delaying the opening of the shutter for some seconds after the release has been operated. Also known as delayed action.

sensitivity A measure of the degree of response of a film or sensor to light.

sensor array The grid-like arrangement of the red, green, and blue-sensitive elements of a digital camera's solid-state capture device.

shadow The darkest part of an image, represented on a digital image by pixels with low numeric values.

Shadow/Highlight Adjustment A new Photoshop feature used to correct over- or underexposed digital camera images.

sharpening Increasing the apparent sharpness of an image by boosting the contrast between adjacent pixels that form an edge.

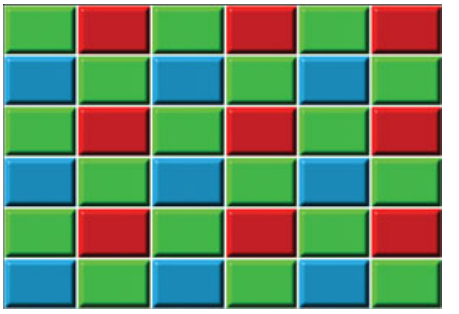


Figure A.19 *CCD sensors have alternating rows of green/red- and green/blue-sensitive elements.*

shutter In a conventional film camera, the shutter is a mechanism consisting of blades, a curtain, plate, or some other movable cover that controls the time during which light reaches the film. Digital cameras can use actual shutters, or simulate the action of a shutter electronically. Many include a reassuring shutter "sound" that mimics the noise a mechanical camera makes.

shutter-preferred An exposure mode in which you set the shutter speed, and the camera determines the appropriate f-stop. See also *aperture-preferred*.

sidelighting Light striking the subject from the side relative to the position of the camera; produces shadows and highlights to create modeling on the subject.

single lens reflex (SLR) camera A type of camera, often with interchangeable lenses, that allows you to see through the camera's lens as you look in the camera's viewfinder. Other camera functions, such as light metering and flash control, also operate through the camera's lens.

slave unit An accessory flash unit that supplements the main flash, usually triggered electronically when the slave senses the light output by the main unit.

slide A photographic transparency mounted for projection.

SmartMedia A type of memory card storage for digital cameras and other computer devices.

smoothing To blur the boundaries between edges of an image, often to reduce a rough or jagged appearance.

soft focus Produced by the use of a special lens that creates soft outlines.

soft lighting Lighting that is low or moderate in contrast, such as on an overcast day.

solarization In photography, an effect produced by exposing film to light partially through the developing process. Some of the tones are reversed, generating an interesting effect. In image editing, the same effect is produced by combining some positive areas of the image with some negative areas. Also called the Sabattier effect, to distinguish it from a different phenomenon called overexposure solarization, which is produced by exposing film to many, many times more light than is required to produce the image. With overexposure solarization, some of the very brightest tones, such as the sun, are reversed.

Figure A.20 *Digital photographers can manipulate the color curves of an image to simulate one kind of solarization.*

specular highlight Bright spots in an image caused by reflection of light sources.

spot color Ink used in a print job in addition to black or process colors.

subtractive primary colors Cyan, magenta, and yellow, which are the printing inks that theoretically absorb all color and produce black. In practice, however, they generate a muddy brown, so black is added to preserve detail (especially in shadows). The combination of the three colors and black is referred to as CMYK. (K represents black, to differentiate it from blue in the RGB model.)

telephoto A lens or lens setting that magnifies an image.

thermal wax transfer A printing technology in which dots of wax from a ribbon are applied to paper when heated by thousands of tiny elements in a printhead.

threshold A predefined level used by a device to determine whether a pixel will be represented as black or white.

thumbnail A miniature copy of a page or image that provides a preview of the original. Photoshop Elements uses thumbnails in its Layer Channels palette, for example.

TIFF (Tagged Image File Format) A standard lossless graphics file format that can be used to store grayscale and color images plus selection masks.

time exposure A picture taken by leaving the lens open for a long period, usually more than one second. The camera is generally locked down with a tripod to prevent blur during the long exposure.

tint A color with white added to it. In graphic arts, often refers to the percentage of one color added to another.

tolerance The range of color or tonal values that will be selected, with a tool like the Photoshop's Magic Wand, or filled with paint, when using a tool like the Paint Bucket.

transparency A positive photographic image on film, viewed or projected by light shining through film.

transparency scanner A type of scanner that captures color slides or negatives.

tripod A three-legged supporting stand used to hold the camera steady. Especially useful when using slow shutter speeds and/or telephoto lenses.

tungsten light Light from ordinary room lamps and ceiling fixtures, as opposed to fluorescent illumination.

underexposure A condition in which too little light reaches the film or sensor, producing a thin negative, a dark slide, a muddy-looking print, or a dark digital image.

unipod A one-legged support, used to steady the camera. Also called monopod. See also *tripod*.

unsharp masking The process for increasing the contrast between adjacent pixels in an image, increasing sharpness, especially around edges.

USB A high-speed serial communication method commonly used to connect digital cameras and other devices to a computer.

viewfinder The device in a camera used to frame the image. With an SLR camera, the viewfinder is also used to focus the image if focusing manually. You can also focus an image with the LCD display of a digital camera, which is a type of viewfinder.

vignetting Dark corners of an image, often produced by using a lens hood that is too small for the field-of-view, or generated artificially using image editing techniques.

white The color formed by combining all the colors of light (in the additive color model) or by removing all colors (in the subtractive model).

white balance The adjustment of a digital camera to the color temperature of the light source. Interior illumination is relatively red; outdoor light is relatively blue. Digital cameras often set correct white balance automatically, or let you do it through menus. Image editors can often do some color correction of images that were exposed using the wrong white-balance setting.

white point In image editing, the lightest pixel in the highlight area of an image.

wide-angle lens A lens that has a shorter focal length and a wider field-of-view than a normal lens for a particular film or digital image format.

zoom In image editing, to enlarge or reduce the size of an image on your monitor. In photography, to enlarge or reduce the size of an image using the magnification settings of a lens.

Appendix B

What's New in Elements 3.0

Adobe Photoshop Elements 3.0 is indeed a major upgrade from the previous Version 2.0, with lots of new features and enhancements. Many of these relate specifically to digital photography and editing digital images, and you'll find them covered throughout this book. Others deal with peripheral issues, such as new ways to create greeting cards or attach photos to your e-mail. While these capabilities are interesting, discussions of them belong in more general books rather than one that is intended to be a Photographers' Guide, so if you intend to make calendars, burn DVDs, edit pictures captured with cell phones, or order prints from Ofoto through the Elements 3.0 interface (all new or enhanced features), you'll find all you need in the Elements Help files. I won't waste pages covering them in this book.

In addition, we're starting to see some divergence in the features available in the Macintosh and Windows versions. Where previously Elements looked and operated almost identically on both platforms, Adobe has decided not to include some features found in the Windows version in the Macintosh edition of the application. Most of these were left out because Macintosh OS X already has the same facility with equal or superior capabilities. For example, you won't need to use Adobe Gamma to calibrate your monitor, because Mac OS has its own tool for that task. Nor will you need to use the Organizer found in Photoshop Elements 3.0 for Windows, because OS X users generally favor iPhoto anyway.

Here is a summary of the key new and upgraded features found in Photoshop Elements 3.0 (both Mac and Windows versions).

Organization

Photoshop Elements 3.0 for Windows now folds in the functionality of Adobe Photoshop Album, so you can use the separate program (called the Organizer) to catalog your digital photos, view them, and search for them among catalogs of thumbnail images that you create. You'll find tools for automatically downloading pictures from your digital camera (and movies, too, if your camera can produce motion picture clips). Organizer can find and collect all the photos on your hard drives, CDs, or DVDs, too. Define any folders on your hard disk as a Watched Folder, and Organizer will automatically update your catalogs when new pictures are found.

When it comes time to review your photos, you can view them in a slide show of full-screen images (add music, dissolves, and other effects if you like), sort them into favorite collections, add keywords to make them easier to locate through searches, or compare two similar shots side-by-side in large screen previews. You can also arrange related photos into "stacks" so that one thumbnail can represent a whole group of thumbnails stored "underneath." Stacks can be expanded and collapsed so you can view as few or as many of the thumbnails as you want. Different versions of the same image, compiled as you make editing changes to your favorite pictures, can also be stored in stacks called Version Sets. You can also browse through photos based on dates, and how you've used the photos.

Editing Tools

Most of the new features and upgrades discussed in this book deal with the changes in Photoshop Elements' editing tools. These can be broken down into several different categories.

Editing Modes

Both Mac and Windows versions have new editing modes. You can choose to work with your images in Standard Edit mode, or switch to the brand new Quick Fix and Smart Fix modes. Quick Fix puts the most common adjustments in a single column at the right side of the editing window, so you can rotate, adjust highlights, contrast, color saturation, hue, sharpness, tint, and other parameters with easy-to-use sliders. Or, press the General, Lighting, Color, and Sharpen controls' Auto button to let Elements make these fixes fore you. Quick Fix shows Before and After views of your image, and you can switch back and forth between pictures by selecting the one you want to work on from the Photo Bin of open images at the bottom of the editing window.

Smart Fix doesn't even require sliders. Click the Smart Fix button, and Elements 3.0 fixes most lighting, contrast, and color balance problems immediately. You can use a slider to specify just how much Smart Fix you want to apply.

Interface Changes

As a reader of this book, you're probably inclined to do most of the image editing chores yourself, and Elements 3.0 makes that easier, too. The interface has been improved considerably, with the collapsible Photo Bin that has thumbnails of all the open images, located at the bottom of the workspace. Various tool palettes can float around in your workspace, as with previous versions, or you can keep all of them conveniently at hand in the new Palette Bin. The Tools palette, which formerly floated on top of your workspace in two-column mode, can be docked at the left side as a convenient one-column tool stack.

If you're working on several pictures at once, Elements now lets you tile several photos in the workspace at one time, lock them together so that zooming in on one produces the same amount of zoom, in the same location, on the other. Your displayed photos can also be locked so they scroll together, too.

New and Improved Tools

There's a new Red Eye tool that vanquishes demon-red eyeballs with a single click (although it works only with humans, and not animals). The Crop tool has options for trimming your pictures to standard printing sizes. You'll also love the new Healing Brush and Spot Healing Brush, which blot out flaws like dust on scanned images, skin blemishes, wrinkles, or ugly things like your ex-brother-in-law.

A new Divide Scanned Photos capability streamlines scanning of batches of images. Just arrange as many photos as you can fit on your scanner glass, scan all of them, and let Divide Scanned Photos locate the borders between them, separate them into individual shots, and straighten photos that weren't placed on the scanner glass perfectly aligned.

Photoshop Elements 3.0 adds a couple features formerly found only in high-end programs like Photoshop CS. These include a new Camera RAW import filter that lets you load and optimize the RAW files that some digital cameras produce. If your scanner or camera can produce "extra color" files (so-called 48-bit images, rather than the 24-bit images that you normally work with), Elements 3.0 can handle these extended-range images with some of its tools, including the Camera Raw feature, Levels, a few of Elements' built-in filters, and the Shadows/Highlights feature. The latter lets you brighten dark areas without washing out the highlights of your images, or darken bright areas without destroying details in the shadows. If you want to work on pictures captured with video camcorders or cell phones, you'll find that noise problems are likely to be much worse than what you get with a digital camera, so you'll like the new Noise Reduction feature in Elements 3.0.

Elements has also adopted Photoshop CS' advanced Histogram palette feature, so you can view the tonal levels of your images in real time as you make editing changes. Also imported from Photoshop CS are the Photo Filters effects (which simulate those screw-on filters photo buffs sometimes use with their cameras), and the Filter Gallery, which allows you to preview and apply several filters in one step.

Photomerge, previously available with Elements 2.0, now allows you to store your combined photos on individual layers, so you can make additional changes if you need to. There's a new Cookie Cutter facility that clips geometric shapes out of your pictures.

When You're Done Editing

This book deals mostly with image editing, rather than organizing or sharing photos, but you'll find that Elements 3.0 has a ton of new options to play with once all the major work is completed.

For example, you can output your photos as albums and other formats in Adobe PDF form, including transitions, sound, and special effects, so they can be enjoyed by anyone with Adobe Reader software, which is available for Windows, Macs, Linux, and other platforms. Or, you can use the templates provided to create fancy e-mail messages with photos embedded, produce customized slide shows and multi-media products, design personal wall calendars, greeting cards, Web page photo galleries, and much more. Make your own slide-shows, too.

When you're ready to make prints, use Adobe Photoshop Services to order pictures, hardbound books, and other hardcopy options through Ofoto. Or select a Picture Package to layout one or more photos for printing on a single sheet of paper using your own printer. You can create contact sheets of thumbnails or personal labels using your own pictures, too.

You'll want to keep your valuable images safe, too, so Elements will help you back up your files by burning them to CDs or DVDs. You can create VideoCDs for display with DVD players, or output them to your cell phone or PDA to take with you anywhere.

Index

Numbers

13-pixel soft brush, 89

A

About Plug-in option, 192
Accented Edges filter, 216
accidental exposure, 57
acidic stop bath, 59
Add eyedropper tools, 166
Add Noise filter, 67
Add To Selection icon, 108
additive color model, 143–146
Adjustment layer, 65
Adobe Gamma tool, 152, 166, 168
Adobe Illustrator program, 5
Adobe Photoshop Album, 1
Adobe Systems, 5
Advanced Photo System (APS) cameras, 116
advertising photography, 80
Airbrush checkbox, 5
Aldus Gallery Effect, 68
Aligned box, 90–91, 93
Alt/Option key, 136
Amount slider, 28, 41, 67, 217
amplitude, 220
Angled Strokes filter, 212
Anti-alias box, 108–110
Anti-aliased parameter, 105, 107
Applications Programming Interface (API), 188
Applied filters, 197
APS (Advanced Photo System) cameras, 116
artificial color systems, 143
Artistic filter, 68
Artistic folder, 198
aspect ratio, 86
Attenuating filters, 191
Auto button, 165
Auto Color Correction tool, 158
Auto Divide feature, 2
Auto Levels button, 185
automatic white-balance control, 163

B

Background eraser, 131
background layers, 128
Background Level, 60
bad color, 154
Bas Relief filters, 192
Bayer filter, 175
Beep When Done box, 193
binary information, 145
bit depth, 144–145
bitmap, 152
black-and-white film, 175
black-and-white images, 171–185
- converting color to, 176–185
  - brightness, 184–185
  - hue, 178–179
  - overview, 176–178
  - saturation, 180–184
- creating, 175
- creative use of, 12
- methods for best, 175
- overview, 171
- reasons to use, 171–174

black-and-white mode, 175
black-and-white prints, 175
blank filter, 190

bleaching, 81
blue cast, 157–158
blue pencil, 80
blur effect, 87
Blur filters, 191
blur, motion, 41–43
Blur tool, 46
blurry negative and positive mask, 28
brightness
adjusting, 159–160
in black-and-white images, 184–185
brightness control, 62
Brightness sliders, 35, 39, 55, 72
Brightness/Contrast controls, 72, 125, 162, 185
Brightness/Darkness control, 73
Brush drop-down menu, 88
Brush palette, 97
brush strokes, 198, 207
Brush tool, 203
built-in effects filter, 48
Burn tool, 72, 114, 132, 139
burning images, 71–72
burning tools, 71–72

C

Calibrate Tab setting, 56
calibration, color, 152
Calligraphic Brushes, 203
Camera RAW plug-in, 52–56
cameras, 15–49
APS (Advanced Photo System), 116
digital, 8, 253–254
formats supported by Photoshop Elements, 53
lens effects, 16–40
compressing distances, 30–33
fisheye lens, 33–36
lens flare, 37–40
overview, 16
perspective control, 16–20
telephoto effects, 24–30
zoom, 20–24
manual zooming control, 20
motion blur, 41–44
overview, 15–16
Photoshop Elements Photo Filters, 47–48
selective focus, 44–46
Single Lens Reflex (SLR), 202
castle example, 129–130
cat example, 132–133
catchlights, 83, 90–91
chalk filters, 224
charcoal filters, 224
Chrome filter, 192
chromes, color transparencies, 81
circular selections, 105–106
clean images, 85
Clear Amount slider, 70
Clone Stamp tool
blending in background, 139
removing dust, 88–90
removing objects, 92–93, 114
removing shadows, 113
repairing images, 96
cloning, unaligned, 91
clouds example, 126
CMY model, 143, 146
Cokin Filter System, 187
color calibration, 152
color correction, 12, 141–169, 153–157
calibrating monitor, 166–169
capturing color images, 150–152
color calibration and gamma curves, 152
color models, 143–150
additive color, 144–146
overview, 143–144
subtractive color, 146–149
faded colors, 157
fluorescent light source, 155–156
incorrect photo-finishing, 156
making easy, 158–166
adjusting hue/saturation/brightness, 159–160
Auto Color Correction tool, 158
color ring arounds and variations, 160–162

overview, 158
Photo filter, 163
Remove Color Cast command, 158–159
replacing color, 165–166
Smart Fix and Quick Fix, 164–165
mixed light sources problems with, 157
overview, 141–143
unexpected blue cast in flash photographs, 157–158
wrong light source, 154–155
Color Dodge mode, 60, 204
Color Halftone filters, 221
color hardcopy output devices, 152
Color Intensity slider, 162
color models, 143–150
additive color, 144–146
overview, 143–144
subtractive color, 146–149
Color Noise Reduction slider, 56
color prints, 229–231
Color radio button, 163
color ring, 160–162
color scanners, 150–151
Color Space setting, 56
color specks effect, 67
color-fixers, 158
Colorize button, 74
colors, 125
See also color correction
bad, 154
balance, 153
channel, 65
component, 148
cool, 154
desaturated, 149
gamut, 143
high, 145
labs, 160
patch, 48
photography, 172
primary, 144
pure, 147, 180
replacing, 165–166
reticulation, 60
saturation of, 149
space, 143
spectrum, 141
subtractive, 143
temperature, 154, 163
transparencies, 81
warm colors, 154
Commission Internationale L'Eclairage (CIE), 143
component colors, 148
compositing, 10–11
in Elements 3.0, 101–139
See also landscapes, creating
combining compositing and retouching, 136–139
creating simple composite, 111–114
kittens example, 132–135
merging photos, 121–123
other selection tools, 109–111
overview, 101–102
possibilities, 136
selection refresher course, 104–109
toolkit, 102–104
images, 101, 123
techniques, 103
toolkit for, 102–104
compositional skills, 8
compressing distances, 30–33
computer color systems, 143–144
cone cells, 141
contrast controls, 61–62, 162
Contrast sliders, 35, 55
Contrast-enhancing filters, 192
Control Panels folder, 167
controls. ***See names of specific controls***
Convert selections, 105
cool colors, 154
correcting colors. ***See*** **color correction**
correction method, 18
Craquelure filter, 208
crawling selection border, 104

cropping, 76, 85–86
Crosshatch filter, 224
cross-screen filters, 203–204
cross-shaped star, 203
CRT phosphors, 142
Crystallize filter, 222
cursor arrow keys, 95
cutting film, 10
cyan dye, 80

D

daguerreotype photos, 171
Dark Strokes filter, 209
Darken Amount control, 99
Darken layer, 206
darkening images, 94
darkroom techniques, 51–77
automatically cropping and straightening photos, 76
film development techniques, 56–70
grainy images, 66–70
high-contrast images, 61–65
overview, 56
reticulation, 58–60
solarization, 56–58
manipulating digital negatives, 52–56
overview, 51–52
printing techniques, 70–75
dodging/burning, 71–72
overview, 70
sepia toning, 74–75
vignetting, 73–74
darkrooms, digital, 7
defects, retouching, 83–84
Density slider, 60, 163
Depth feature, 55
depth-of-field, 44–45
desaturated color, 149
Despeckle filters, 87
Detection Width parameter, 107
Diffuse filter, 222–223
Diffuse Glow filter, 68–70
digital cameras, 253–254
black-and-white mode, 175
lenses, 188
manual zooming control, 21
microprocessor-driven, 8
digital darkroom, 7
Digital Darkroom program, 191
digital negatives, 52–56
distances, compressing, 30–33
distortion filters, 191, 217–220
Dodge tool, 46, 72
double catchlights, 83
drawing filters, 214–215
drop-down dialog box, 97
Dry Brush filter, 209
dual catchlights, 90–91
dust, 80, 82, 87–90
Dust & Scratches filters, 87–88
dye sublimation printers, 147, 238–240

E

Edge Brightness control, 216
Edge Contrast parameter, 107
Edge Width control, 216
edgy filters, 215–217
Edit selections, 105
editing
image-editing programs, 101
pre-digital image, 80
Effects palette, 35
electronic flash exposure, 20
Elements 3.0. *See* compositing, in Elements 3.0
Elliptical Marquee tool, 34, 41, 73, 105, 114
Emboss filters, 192, 217
empty layer, 84
emulsion, photosensitive, 142
Eraser tool, 95
Exposure slider, 55, 72
extra color, 157
extracting objects, 131–132
Eyedropper tool, 166

F

Facet filter, 192, 222
faded colors, 157
Feather option, 107–108, 111
feathered edge, 105
File Browser, 6–7
File menu, 54
files. ***See names of specific types of files***
Fill selections, 104
film
black-and-white, 175
choosing, 8–10
cutting, 10
development techniques, 56–70
grainy images, 66–70
high-contrast images, 61–65
overview, 56
reticulation, 58–60
solarization, 56–58
fogged, 156
Kodachrome slide film, 172
lithographic, 61
mistreatment of original, 156
Film Grain filter, 66, 68
Filter drop-down list, 163
Filter Gallery, 60, 193–194,
advantages, 194–195
applied filters, 197
basics of, 195–200
accessing, 197
applying filters, 198–200
overview, 195
prepping images, 196
categories, 197
controls of, 197
interface of, 193
overview, 194–195
preview window, 197
sizing controls, 197
steps, 198–200
thumbnails, 197
Filter menu, 189
filters, 187–225
See also names of specific filters
applying, 193
blank, 190
color, 163
controls, 70
mask, 28
modifying images with, 206–213
See also painting filters
distortion filters, 217–220
edgy filters, 215–217
overview, 206–207
pixelation and stylizing filters, 221–225
sketching/drawing filters, 214–215
overview, 187
rendering, 192
reproducing photographic filters in Photoshop Elements, 200–206
cross-screen, 203–204
overview, 200
polarizing filters, 200–202
split filter, 205–206
types available, 191–192
using, 192–194
warming filters, 157
what they are, 187–191
Find Edges filter, 215
fisheye lens, 33–36, 187
Fixed Aspect Ratio, 106
FlareMaker, 37
flash photographs, 157–158
Flip Selection horizontal and vertical option, 111
fluorescent light source, 155–156
focusing, 8, 44–46
fogged film, 156
Foreground Level, 60
Free Rotate Selection option, 111
freeze action, 41
Frequency parameter, 107

Fresco filter, 210
full color space, 149
full frame fisheye lens, 33
Fuzziness slider, 166

G

Gallery dialog box, 197
Gallery Effects library, 68
gamma correction table, 152
gamma curves, 152, 162
Gamma tool, 152, 166, 168
Gaussian blur, 134–135
Gaussian distribution, 67
ghost image, 116
Gilka, Robert, 101
Glass filter, 224–225
Glow Amount control, 70
Glowing Edges filter, 216
Gradient tool, 181, 206
Grain effect, 66
Grain filter, 66
Grain plug-in, 68
Grain setting controls, 68
Graininess slider, 70
grainy images, 66–70
Graphic Pen filter, 214
grayscale data, 144
grayscale images, 171
grease pencil, 84
Grid tool, 18–20
Grow option, 111

H

Halftone Pattern filter, 221
Halftone Screen filters, 221
halftoning systems, 148
hardcopy prints, 227–254
color prints as proofs, 229–231
getting set up, 242
output options, 231–240
See also inkjet printers
dye sublimation printers, 238–240
laser printers, 232–233
other printer types, 240
overview, 231–232
overview, 227
printers and digital cameras, 253–254
printing multiple photos, 250–251
reasons to use, 227–229
retouching, 81
tips for best digital prints, 252
typical print session, 242–250
using professional services, 240–241
Healing Brush tool, 88, 90, 96–98, 202
Height box, 106
HELP files, 55
hemispherical view, 33
high color, 145
high-contrast images, 61–65
high-contrast lighting, 85
higher-edge selection, 107
Highlight Area slider, 68
histograms, 63, 154, 162
HLS mode, 149
home-made dodging tool, 71
horizontal/vertical scale, 220
HSB color model, 159
HSB mode, 149
Hue sliders, 37, 58, 74, 165, 178
hue-lightness-saturation (HLS), 143
hues, 149
adjusting, 159–160
in black-and-white images, 178–179
saturated, 149
Hue/Saturation adjustment layer, 181
Hue/Saturation controls, 135
Hue/Saturation dialog box, 74, 143, 160, 185
hue-saturation-brightness color model, 149
hue-saturation-value (HSV), 143

I

ICC profile, 166
Illustrator program, 5
Image box, 166

image editor, 2–3, 17
Image Enhancement filters, 191
image-editing programs, 101
incandescent illumination, 48
Increase Blue thumbnail, 162
Ink Outlines filter, 214
inkjet printers, 233–238
how they work, 236–238
overview, 233–234
saving money with, 234–236
Intensity slider, 68
interior (tungsten) illumination, 154
Intersect with Selection icon, 108
Invert command, 189
ISO (sensitivity) options, 8
ISO speed setting, 25, 85

J

JPEG files, 52

K

Keep As Layers option, 123
Knoll, John, 5
Knoll, Thomas, 5
Kodachrome slide film, 172

L

labs, color, 160
landscapes, creating, 123–130
adding castle, 129–130
adding clouds, 126
bringing seashore inland, 126–128
overview, 123–125
laser printers, 232–233
Lasso tool, 106–107
Layer command, 132
layer feature, 84
Layer Mask thumbnail, 181
Layer thumbnail, 181
Layers palette, 193, 215
LCD monitors, 144
LCD panel, 116
LCD pixels, 142, 144
LCD viewfinder, 202
LED monitors, 144
LED pixels, 144
Lens Blur effect, 4
Lens Tab setting, 56
lenses
digital camera, 188
effects, 16–40
compressing distances, 30–33
fisheye lens, 33–36
lens flare, 37–40
overview, 16
perspective control, 16–20
telephoto effects, 24–30
zoom, 20–24
long, 25, 44
optical, 25
perspective control, 17
short focal length lens, 44
Levels controls, 65, 72
Levels dialog box, 62–63
light sources
fluorescent, 155–156
problems with mixed, 157
problems with wrong type, 154–155
ultraviolet, 157
Light/Dark Balance slider, 214
Lighten Shadows controls, 185, 196
Lighten thumbnail, 162
lightening images, 94
lighting, 125, 164
linear array, 151–152
Linear Gradient, 206
lithographic film, 61
Load button, 167
Load/Save selection option, 111
long telephoto lens, 25
Luminance Smoothing/Color Noise Reduction slider, 56

M

Magic Wand tool, 58, 109–110, 126, 131
Magnetic Lasso tool, 106–107, 129, 131
manual shutter speed, 44
manual zooming control, 20–21
Marquee tools, 105
mask filter, 28
Mask selections, 104
Mask tool, 92
***Mastering Digital Photography*, 41**
***Mastering Digital SLR Photography*, 52**
mathematical algorithm, 190
Measure button, 168
megapixel, 25
Merge drop-down list, 70
Merge Visible, 138
mergers, 85
merging images, 121
Mezzotint filter, 67
microprocessor-driven digital cameras, 8
midtone, 63
Midtone Contrast slider, 185, 196
Midtones radio button, 162
Mode changing operation, 176
Mode controls, 193
models, color. *See* color models
monitors
  calibrating, 166–169
  LCD monitors, 144
  LED monitors, 144
Monochromatic box, 67
monochrome images, 12, 176
motion
  adding motion blur, 41–43
  dynamics of, 41
motion-zoom, 20
Move tool, 112, 119
Movie Prime choice, 39
multiple photos, 250–251
Multiply layer, 206

N

negatives
  digital, 52
  retouching, 80
  tungsten-balanced color, 154
neophyte action, 41
neutral white, 144
New Layer box, 181
New Page icon, 198
Niépce, Nicéphore, 7
Nikon fisheye, 33
Noise filters, 191
nonanti-aliased edge, 105
Normal box, 123

O

objects
  on desktops, 132–135
  moving, 94–95
  removing, 92–94, 114, 131–132
octagonal photo umbrella, 83
Opacity sliders, 90, 93, 128, 215
Options bar, 21
Options palette, 99
outtake photos, 102
oval selections, 105–106
overexposure solarization, 57
Overlay merging mode, 135

P

Paint Daubs filter, 210
painting filters, 207–213
  Angled Strokes, 212
  Craquelure, 208
  Dark Strokes, 209
  Dry Brush, 209
  Fresco, 210
  overview, 207–208
  Paint Daubs, 210
  Palette Knife, 212–213

Pointillize, 213
Poster Edges, 210–211
Spatter, 211
Watercolor, 212
Palette Knife filter, 212–213
panning, for motion blur, 41
panorama photos, 114–117
parallel louvers, 201
patch, color, 48
Pattern box, 98
Pen Pressure parameter, 107
pencils
blue pencil, 80
grease pencil, 84
Perspective choice, 123
perspective control, 16–20
Photo Coloring System, 81
Photo Filter feature, 47–48, 163
photo umbrella, octagonal, 83
PhotoDeluxe, 6
photofinishing, 116, 156
photographic filters
cross-screen reproducing, 203–204
polarizing filters reproducing, 200–202
reproducing, 200–206
split filter reproducing, 205–206
photographic techniques, 15–16
Photomerge, 122
photo-quality printers, 102
photosensitive emulsion, 142
Photoshop 2.5, 6
Photoshop Album, 1
Photoshop compatible plug-ins, 6, 188–189, 192
Photoshop CS program, 53, 55–56
Photoshop LE program, 6
picture-manipulation procedures, 79
pigments, 146
Pinch filter, 218–219
pixel movers, 217
Pixel Size setting, 56
Pixelate menus, 207
pixelated, 207
Pixelation filters, 192, 221–225
pixels, 63, 109
LCD, 142, 144
LED, 144
plug-ins, 6, 188–189, 192
Plug-Ins folder, 191
Pointillize filters, 192, 213
polarizing filters, 200–202
Polygonal Lasso tool, 106, 129, 132
Poster Edges filter, 198, 210–211
Posterize command, 65
potassium ferricyanide bleach, 71
pre-digital image editing, 80
prepping images, 196
Preserve Luminosity box, 163
Preview box, 166
Preview button, 163
Preview window, 193, 197
primary colors, 144
print session, 242–250
printers, 253–254
See also inkjet printers
dye sublimation, 147, 238–240
laser printers, 232–233
photo-quality, 102
professional services, 240–241
sublimation/thermal dye transfer, 147
thermal dye sublimation, 148
types of, 240
printing techniques, 70–75
dodging/burning, 71–72
overview, 70
sepia toning, 74–75
vignetting, 73–74
prints. *See* hardcopy prints
professional services, printers, 240–241
programming interface, 191
proof print, 80
proofs, color prints as, 229–231
psychedelic look, 57
Pupil Size parameter, 99

Q

Quick Fix command, 164–165, 185

R

Radial Blur dialog box, 22, 41
radio buttons, 162
Radius slider, 28, 43, 88
Range drop-down list, 72
RAW format, 1, 52, 54, 163
RAW plug-in, 54–56
RAW Support, 3.0, 53–54
real-world image, 183
Rectangular Marquee tool, 85, 105, 108, 136
rectangular selections, 105–106
Red Eye Brush tool, 99
red eyes, 99
reflection, creating, 134–135
Remove Color Cast command, 158–159
Remove Color command, 185
Replace Color facility, 165
replacing color, 165–166
Resolution setting, 56
Reticulation dialog box, 60
reticulation process, 56, 58–60
retouching, 10, 79–99
with blue pencil, 80
canceling red eyes, 99
combining with compositing, 136–139
new way of, 81–84
old way of, 80–81
overview, 79
project for, 85–95
avoiding retouching, 85
cropping, 85–86
darkening and lightening, 94
fixing dual catchlights, 90–91
moving objects over, 94–95
overview, 85
removing dust, 87–90
removing unwanted objects, 92–94
repairing images with healing brush, 96–98
RGB colors, 62, 141, 143, 147, 180
Ripple dialog box, 218
Ripple filters, 218
Rotate Preview button, 55

S

Sabattier effect, 57
saturation, 149
adjusting, 55, 159–160
in black-and-white images, 180–184
Save selections, 105
scale, 125
scanned transparencies, 82
scanners, 6, 150–151
scratches, retouching, 87–90
seamless merger, 101
seashore landscape example, 126–128
Select All option, 111
Select menu, 111
Select Similar option, 111
Selection 90 Degrees Left option, 111
Selection 90 Degrees Right option, 111
Selection 180 Degrees option, 111
Selection Brush, 22, 44, 94, 105
selections, 104–109
combining, 104–109
with Lasso tool, 106–107
making rectangular, square, oval, and circular, 105–106
tips for, 108
selective focus, 44
sensitivity options, 8
sepia toning, 74–75
shadow-midtone-highlights option, 162
Shadows slider, 55
sharpening images, 27–28, 55, 125, 165, 193
sharpest film setting, 25
short focal length lens, 44
shutter, manual, 44
Shutter Priority mode, 25
Single Lens Reflex (SLR) camera, 202
sizing controls, 197
sketching/drawing filters, 214–215

sky mask, 126
sliders. ***See*** **names of specific sliders**
Smart Fix command, 164–165
Smudge tool, 126
Snap To Image box, 123
soft eraser brush, 112, 120
soft-edged brush, 93
softer-edged selection, 107
solarization, 56–58
Source box, 98
Spatter filter, 211
Sphere filter, 219
Spherize filter, 35, 219
Spin, blur type, 41
split filter, 205–206
split-field colorization, 12
Sponge filter, 214
spotting dust spots, 80
Spray Radius slider, 211
Sprayed Strokes thumbnail, 198
square selections, 105–106
sRGB setting, 143
Step by Step (Assistant) button, 167
Stippled effect, 68
straightening photos, 76
Stroke Detail control, 212
Stroke Length slider, 214
Stroke Size slider, 212
Style drop-down list, 106
Styles palette, 35
Stylize menus, 207
stylizing filters, 221–225
sublimation/thermal dye transfer printers, 147
Subtract eyedropper tools, 166
Subtract from Selection icon, 108
subtracting selections, 104–109
subtractive color, 143, 146–149
subtractive output devices, 147
subtractive system, 146
Sumi-e filter, 215
Surface Controls dialog box, 224
System folder, 166
System Preferences, 166

T

target gamma, 168
telephoto distortion, 30
telephoto effects, 24–30
telephoto lens, 24–25, 37
temperature, color, 154, 163
Temperature slider, 55
texture, 68, 125, 191
thermal dye sublimation printers, 148
three-color system, of newspapers, 147
threshold level, 61
Threshold slider, 29, 88
thumbnails
Filter Gallery, 197
Increase Blue, 162
Layer Mask, 181
Lighten, 162
Sprayed Strokes, 198
TIFF format, 52
Tint slider, 55
Tolerance control, 109–110, 131
toning, sepia, 74–75
Tool Palette, 105
Tool Tip box, 86
tools
See also names of specific tools
compositing, 102–104
selecting, 109–111
Trace Contours filter, 216
transferring skills, 7–12
basic composition, 8
choosing right film, 8–10
color correction, 12
compositing, 10–11
creative use of black-and-white, 12
darkroom techniques, 10
filters, 12
lens selection, 8
overview, 7–8
retouching, 10
selective focus, 8
transforming selections, 111
transitions, 125

transparencies, 81–82
Transparent gradient, 206
transparent layer, 135
tripod, 117
tungsten illumination, 154–155
Twirl filter, 219
two-dimensional array, 151–152
two-dimensional color space, 144

U

ultraviolet light, 157
unaligned cloning, 91
Undo feature, 56, 104, 194–195
Uniform distribution, 67
Unsharp Mask filter, 28–29, 46
Use All Layers box, 109

V

variations, 160–162
vertical axis measure, 63
***View of Toledo* (picture), 118**
View shadows/highlights slider, 56
Viewing Angle option, 125
vignetting, 73–74

W

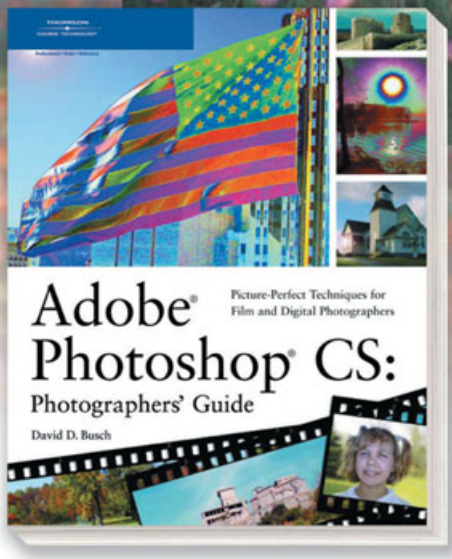
Watercolor filter, 212
Wave filter, 219–220
wavelength, 220
white balance, 155, 163
white, neutral, 144
wide-angle lens, 32
wide-angle setting, 16–17
Width box, 106
Wind filter, 223
Windows Control Panel, 166
wireframe representation, 219

Z

zero saturation, 150
Zigzag filter, 220
Zoom tool, 55, 88, 92
zoom-blur effect, 21–23
zooming, 20–24, 198
    blurs, 20
    digital, 25
    lens, 16, 37
    manual controls, 20–21
    settings, 4, 25

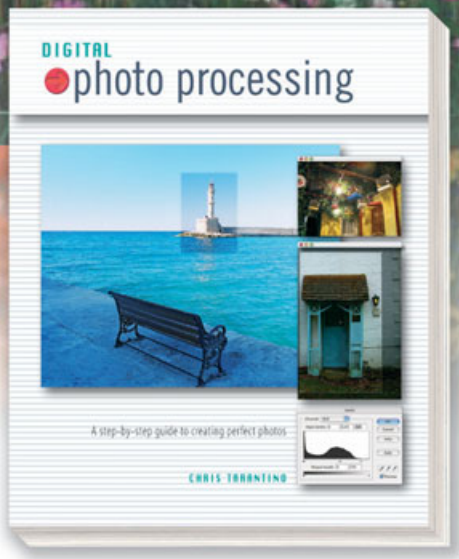
THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

Capture your special moments with the perfect photograph



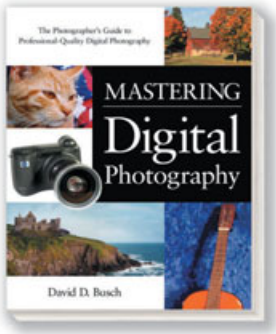
Adobe® Photoshop® CS: Photographers' Guide
ISBN: 1-59200-172-6 ■ **$39.99**

Whether you are a digital or conventional camera buff, this full-color book is the ideal guide for diving into the most important elements of Photoshop CS. Examine Photoshop from a photographer's perspective and learn how to fine-tune your photos as you transform them from quick snapshots into truly compelling images.

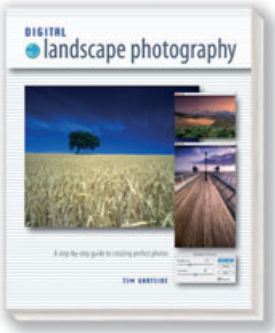


Digital Photo Processing
ISBN: 1-59200-106-8 ■ **$29.99**

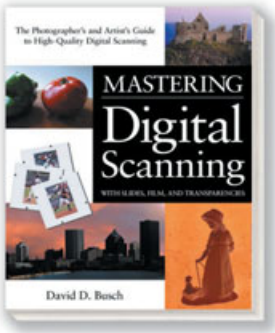
Move beyond the standard 'getting rid of dust and scratches' approach to retouching and instead examine techniques such as removing unwanted elements, adding items, changing positions, and distorting images. Take prints of old family photographs, badly shot digital images, and other hopeless cases and turn them into high quality digital images suitable for printing or posting online.



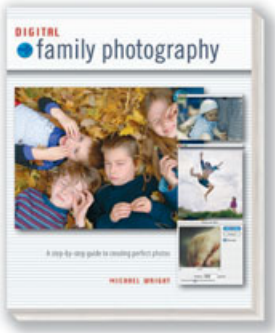
Mastering Digital Photography
ISBN: 1-59200-114-9 ■ **$39.99**



Digital Landscape Photography
ISBN: 1-59200-107-6 ■ **$29.99**



Mastering Digital Scanning with Slides, Film, and Transparencies
ISBN: 1-59200-141-6 ■ **$39.99**



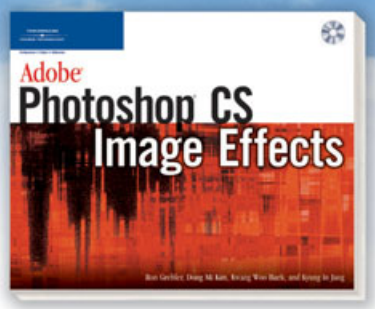
Digital Family Photography
ISBN: 1-59200-108-4 ■ **$29.99**

THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

Available at your favorite bookstore or call **1.800.354.9706**
Order online at **www.courseptr.com**

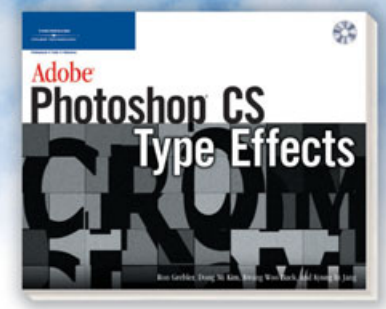
THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

Your one stop shop for Photoshop!



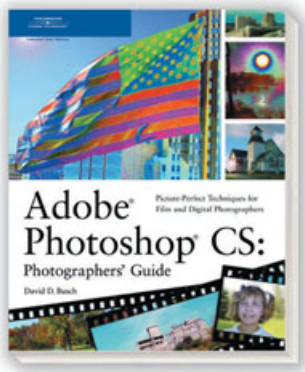
Adobe® Photoshop® CS Image Effects
ISBN: 1-59200-364-8 ■ $39.99

Through twenty-two stunning, full-color artistic projects and clear step-by-step explanations of how to complete them, *Adobe® Photoshop® CS Image Effects* will help you master the advanced image effect techniques of Photoshop CS. Use Photoshop CS to apply a variety of effects to your images, including the faded texture of crumbling bricks, the illuminated effect of dancing light, and a hand-drawn effect using brushed ink and watercolors. Master Photoshop's diverse filters and graphic editing features to create extraordinary image effects. All of the original artwork and source code that you need to complete your projects is included on the book's CD-ROM.



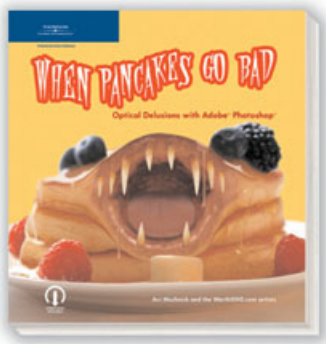
Adobe® Photoshop® CS Type Effects
ISBN: 1-59200-363-X ■ $39.99

Master the advanced type effect techniques of Photoshop CS. Use Photoshop CS to apply a variety of effects to your text, including a spiral effect for a CD, a tiled mosaic effect, and a unique magnifying glass effect. *Adobe Photoshop CS Type Effects* includes twenty stunning, full-color artistic projects and clear step-by-step explanations for completing them. All of the original artwork that you need to complete each project is included on the book's CD-ROM.



Adobe® Photoshop® CS: Photographers' Guide
ISBN: 1-59200-172-6 ■ $39.99

Photography and Photoshop go hand in hand. If you feel there isn't enough photography in the average Photoshop book, and there isn't enough Photoshop in the average photography book, then the book you're looking for is right in your hands. Whether you are a digital or conventional camera buff, this full-color book is the ideal guide for diving into the most important elements of Photoshop CS. Examine Photoshop from a photographer's perspective and learn how to fine-tune your photos as you transform them from quick snapshots into truly compelling images.



When Pancakes Go Bad: Optical Delusions with Adobe Photoshop
ISBN: 1-59200-524-1 ■ $29.99

Learn how to have fun with photos—swapping pictures of historical inventions with modern-day appliances or combining images of animals to produce unrealistic characters. This book is infused with humor and behind-the-scenes tutorials that impart useful, easy-to-understand tips in a lighthearted manner. Organized into chapters by the general theme of the images, it is packed with fun and interesting photos that will keep you entertained until the end.

THOMSON
COURSE TECHNOLOGY
Professional ■ Trade ■ Reference

Call 1.800.354.9706 to order
Order online at www.courseptr.com